BRITISH AMERICAN FOOTBALL ASSOCIATION

FOOTBALL RULES AND INTERPRETATIONS

2020 EDITION

Original material © BAFA 2020
ISBN: 978-0-244-86661-7

Foreword

The rules are revised each year by IFAF to improve the sport's level of safety and quality of play, and to clarify the meaning and intent of rules where needed. The principles that govern all rule changes are that they must:

- be safe for the participants;
- be applicable at all levels of the sport;
- be coachable;
- be administrable by the officials;
- maintain a balance between offense and defence;
- be interesting to spectators;
- not have a prohibitive economic impact; and
- retain some affinity with the rules adopted by NCAA in the USA.

IFAF statutes require all member federations to play by IFAF rules, except in the following regards:

1. national federations may adapt Rule 1 to meet local needs and circumstances, provided no adaption reduces the safety of the players or other participants; BAFA takes advantage of that to allow (for example) 90-yard fields and reduced end zones that are our solution to using rugby pitches and the like;
2. competitions may adjust the rules according to (a) the age group of the participants and (b) the gender of the participants;
3. competition authorities have the right to amend certain specific rules (listed on page 39);
4. national federations may restrict the above so that the same regulations apply to all competitions under their jurisdiction.

These rules apply to all contests involving BAFA-affiliated teams and take effect from 1st March 2020. (***Exception:*** Competitions that began before 1st March 2020 will continue to use 2019 rules until the end of their competition).

For brevity, male pronouns are used extensively in this book, but the rules are equally applicable to female and male participants.

BAFA has established a Rules Committee to discuss and decide future changes to this book. The Committee is also our liaison to IFAF on rules matters. You may make suggestions for changes at any time, but to be eligible for consideration for the following year they must be received by 1st September.

Jim Briggs (Editor)
on behalf of the
BAFA Rules Committee

Those who find it necessary to write to the editor for interpretations of rules or play situations will receive prompt replies if they number their questions and email them to **rules@britishamericanfootball.org**.

The editor would like to thank the following people who assisted in the production of this edition of the rulebook (GB except where stated):

Michael Bilica (USA)
Tom Blakeson
Amir Brooks
Steve Egan
James Ford-Bannister
Steven Hall
Perttu Hautala (Finland)
Thomas Hofbauer (Austria)
Chris Jarvis
James Kilbane
Lewis Lebolt (Sweden)
Ali May
Richard McEwan
Paul Mercer (Australia)
Richard Moger
Russell Newton
Peter Parsons
Ian Sneddon
Shawn Sombati
Leanne Spencer
Paul Sutton
Pete Thom
Frank Thomson
Paul Todd
Mark Wilson

Cover image by Betty Brooks

Table of Contents

Rules changes....4
Points of emphasis....6
The Football Code....10
BAFA Regulations....13
1 Basic principles....13
2 Registration....17
3 Code of conduct....19
4 Regulations on organisations....26
5 Game regulations....29
6 Competition complaints and appeals....30
7 Procedures for regulatory cases....31
8 Procedures for appeals....33
9 Grievance Procedure....34
Rules and Interpretations....39
Rule 1 — The Game, Field, Players and Equipment....41
Rule 2 — Definitions....58
Rule 3 — Periods, Time Factors and Substitutions....77
Rule 4 — Ball in Play, Dead Ball, Out of Bounds....97
Rule 5 — Series of Downs, Line to Gain....103
Rule 6 — Kicks....107
Rule 7 — Snapping and Passing the Ball....122
Rule 8 — Scoring....139
Rule 9 — Conduct of Players and Others Subject to the Rules....148
Rule 10 — Penalty Enforcement....170
Rule 11 — The Officials: Jurisdiction and Duties....179
Rule 12 — Video judge....180
Rule 13 — Standards for Game Management....184
Summary of penalties....197
Officials' Signals....208
Appendix A — Guidelines for Game Officials for Serious On-Field Player Injuries....211
Appendix B — Guidelines for Game Officials and Game Management To Use Regarding Lightning....212
Appendix C — Concussions....214
Appendix D — Field Diagrams....216
Appendix E — Equipment: Additional Details....222
BAFRA Terms and Conditions....227
Index of Rules and Interpretations....234

Rules changes

Major changes

The list below shows rule number, description of the change, and page number in this book.

Major changes are marked by a box like this. New or modified text is marked in blue (grey when printed in monochrome).

1-2-6	Displaced pylons	46
1-4-4-a-4	Age guidance for youth helmets	51
2-3-7	Blind-side block defined	59
2-34-1-a	Tackle box centred on middle lineman	76
3-1-3-e	Extra period becomes a try down beginning with the fifth	78
3-1-3-i	Mandatory break during extra periods	78
3-3-2-g-1	Running clock starts on ready for play on free kick	85
6-1-10-b	Illegal wedge now 2+ players	110
6-1-10-d	No foul for illegal wedge if no return	110
6-5-1-a	Fair catch on free kick	119
6-5-3-a	Invalid signal on free kick	120
9-1-18	Blind-side block now a foul	158

New Approved Rulings

A.R. 1-4-8:IV A.R. 3-4-3:VII A.R. 6-1-2:IX A.R. 7-2-4:III A.R. 9-1-18:I
A.R. 13-4-1:I

Editorial changes

The following list shows those rules that have been subject to editorial change, i.e. deletions, corrected errors, clarifications due to interpretation and items rewritten for readability. The list also includes those Approved Rulings altered to conform with rule changes. New or modified text is marked in blue (grey when printed in monochrome).

1-2-1-a-2-b	1-2-1-a-2-d	1-2-1-k
1-3-2-b	2-4-1-a	2-4-3-a-1
2-19-2-b	2-27-14-g	A.R. 3-3-2:XII
A.R. 3-3-2:XIII	3-3-7-a	4-1-2-b-2 Exception 2
4-1-2-b-3 Exception 2	A.R. 4-1-2:II	4-1-3-g
A.R. 4-1-3:IX	4-2-4-d	6-5-1-e
A.R. 6-5-3:VI	A.R. 9-1-4:III	A.R. 9-1-4:X
9-1-6-b-1	A.R. 9-1-6:VI	A.R. 9-1-6:IX
9-1-11-b	A.R. 9-1-16:VII	10-1-1-a
A.R. 10-2-3:IV	12-2-2-a-11	

Summary of differences between NCAA and IFAF rules

NCAA Rule	IFAF difference
1-2-5-f	Procedure for dealing with missing goals.
1-4-11	Drones prohibited.
2-11-3	Definition of batting includes the head.
2-16-10-a	Punter needs only be 7 yards deep; kicker/holder need only be 5 yards deep to count as a scrimmage kick formation.
2-27-12	Whether a disqualified player is suspended for the next game is matter for the disciplinary authority.
2-34-1	Tackle box centred on middle lineman.
3-1-1	Pre-game warmups not subject to the rules. During coin toss, teams must remain in the team area.
3-2-4	Play clock reset only if it drops below 20 seconds before ball ready.
3-2-5	No minimum time for a play after spiking.
3-3-2	Running clock.
3-3-7	No short timeouts.
3-3-8	Two-minute warning cannot happen before 2'00.
4-1-2-b	Ball may belong to recovering team after inadvertent whistle. Ball may belong to Team B after inadvertent whistle on scrimmage kick. Ignore inadvertent whistle if ball goes out of bounds (or would have become dead in other ways) in immediate continuing action.
4-1-3	Ball is dead if players in vicinity believe it is.
6-1-7-b/8-6-2	All touchbacks are from the 20-yard line.
7-2-5	Fumble/backward pass at rest awarded according to forward fumble principles.
9-1-3&4/9-5-1	No half-game suspensions.
9-1-6-a	Larger area for unrestricted blocking below the waist.
9-1-7-c	Spot of foul for blocking out of bounds is spot on nearest sideline.
9-2-2	Additional unfair tactics. Two players in same position can wear the same number.
9-2-2-e	No disqualification for illegal cleats.
9-2-7	Referee may require persons to be removed from the playing enclosure.
9-6	Flagrant unsportsmanlike conduct fouls can be reviewed for additional sanctions.
12	Video judge rule.

This list ignores differences that address field limitations, NCAA competition structures (e.g. conferences) or equipment restrictions. It also ignores minor wording changes that do not have significant effect on the way the game is played.

Points of emphasis

For 2020, the Rules Committee wishes coaches, players and officials to take particular note of the following points.

Officiating mechanics

IFAF has adopted, on the recommendation of the Rules Committee, a change to Rule 11-2-2 regarding officiating mechanics. Officiating responsibilities and mechanics are specified in the current edition of the *Manual of Football Officiating*, published by IAFOA. Officials are responsible for knowing and applying the material in the Manual.

The purpose of the rule change is to standardise officiating mechanics, especially across different size crews. The IAFOA manual is the only one that covers crew sizes from 3 to 8.

The Rules Committee felt that it was best for officials working international games to do the same things that they do regularly in their domestic games (as far as possible). Since domestic games are frequently officiated by 4 or 5-man crews, or in some countries using larger crews is limited to special occasions, it is important that the responsibilities and tasks associated with the officiating positions change as little as possible. The one exception to this principle is obviously that on larger crews, the responsibilities of the crew can be spread out over more people and each individual official can therefore have less to do.

It is a recipe for disaster for officials who are working in their national competitions for most weeks of the year to have to switch to a somewhat arbitrarily different set of mechanics for the one or two weeks of the year when they work international competition.

We hope that in due course all national federations and/or officiating organisations will choose to standardise their mechanics and so facilitate the effectiveness of their officials in international competitions. We recognise that this will be difficult for organisations in USA, Canada and Japan to adopt.

The IAFOA manual is the one previously known as the "BAFRA" manual. An IAFOA Mechanics Committee has been established, based on the existing international advisory committee that has determined recent versions.

What IFAF is doing here is simply standardising the way that games are officiated. No other major international sport has different positioning requirements for its officials. American football outside the USA (and Canada and Japan for historic reasons) should be no different.

Sideline control

The Rules Committee requires competitions and teams to enforce strictly the rules regarding the team area and coaching box (Rule 1-2-4-a, back of the limit lines between the 25-yard lines), and the space between the limit lines (Rules 1-2-3-a and 1-2-3-c, up to 18 feet outside the sidelines and the end line) and the sidelines. These field-level locations must be kept clear of persons who have no game responsibilities.

The field level is not for spectators. It must be reserved for those who are performing a service associated with action on the field of play and for administration of the game. Simply put, no job means no sideline pass.

Each team is limited to 25 persons in its team area, not including squad members in full uniform, who shall be wearing a team credential. (Full uniform is defined as equipped in accord with BAFA rules and ready to play.)

Persons who are directly involved in the game include (Rules 1-1-6 and 1-2-4-b): coaches, team managers, medical and athletic training staff members, athletics communications staff members, and game operations staff members (e.g. chain crew, ball persons, official media liaisons, technicians responsible for coach-to-press box communications).

Editorial changes to Rules 9-2-1 and 9-2-5 make it clear that coaches and other team personnel may not come on to the field to protest officiating decisions or to communicate with players or officials without permission of the referee. Coaches and other personnel must be behind the coaching line while the ball is alive and during the immediate action after the ball becomes dead.

Teams are recommended to clearly separate spectator areas from the field. If there is no spectator seating, a rope or similar marker should be used to keep spectators back from the field. This should be no closer to the boundary lines than 24 feet. Game management should ensure that this is enforced.

Protection of defenseless players

In 2009, we introduced a separate rule prohibiting forcible contact with the helmet and targeting a defenseless opponent. These actions are now in two rules: Targeting and Making Forcible Contact With the Crown of the Helmet (Rule 9-1-3) and Targeting and Making Forcible Contact to Head or Neck Area of a Defenseless Player (Rule 9-1-4). Use of the helmet as a weapon and intentional (targeted) contact to the head or neck area are serious safety concerns. The penalties for fouls under both 9-1-3 and 9-1-4 include automatic disqualification. We continue to emphasise that coaches and officials must be diligent to ensure that players understand and abide by these rules.

Rule 2-27-14 defines and lists characteristics of a defenseless player.

Helmets

The helmet is intended to protect the player from head injuries. It must therefore be fitted properly so that it does not come off through play. Coaches, equipment managers and trainers must be diligent in seeing that players wear the helmets properly, and officials must firmly enforce the rules requiring chin straps to be tightly secured. The rules (Rule 3-3-9) now call for the player whose helmet comes off to leave the game for one down, unless this is the direct result of a foul. The player may remain in the game if his team is granted a charged timeout.

Safety and medical considerations

BAFA strongly encourages coaches and officials to be diligent in ensuring that players wear mandatory equipment. It is especially important that equipment and pads cover body parts for which they were designed. Particular attention is drawn to wearing uniform pants that cover the knees, which are easily abraded when exposed. With the change made in 2018, players, coaches and athletic equipment managers should ensure that the player's pants are fitted properly. Since 2018, pants and knee pads must cover the knee to be legal. If an official discovers illegal equipment, or a player failing to wear mandatory equipment properly, that official should inform the player that he must leave the game for at least one down and is not allowed to return until the equipment is made legal. The player may be allowed to return without missing a down if his team takes a charged team timeout, but only if he corrects the equipment issue as well.

Football players are especially susceptible to methicillin-resistant staphylococcus aureus (MRSA), which is resistant to commonly used antibiotics. MRSA results in lost playing time. More seriously, it has caused the deaths of several football players in recent years. MRSA is typically transmitted through body-to-body contact from an infected wound or via an object (e.g. towel) that has come in contact with the infected area. It is not transmitted through the air, is not found on mud or grass, and cannot live on artificial turf.

BAFA recommends observing common medical precautions to reduce the incidence of MRSA infections, including:

- Proper wearing of all required padding and uniform equipment.
- Keep hands clean by washing thoroughly with soap and water, or by using an alcohol-based hand sanitizer routinely.
- Immediate showering after all physical activity.
- Avoid whirlpools or common tubs when having an open wound.
- Proper washing of athletics gear and towels after each use.
- Referring all active skin lesions to the athletic trainer.
- Covering all skin lesions appropriately before participation.

Concussions

Coaches and medical personnel should exercise caution in the treatment of a participant who exhibits signs of a concussion. See Appendix C for detailed information.

Game management

The Rules Committee remains concerned that while the quantity of American football being played in Britain is on the increase, the quality of it in terms of facilities for games is often not. The Committee is particularly concerned that an increasing number of teams:

- do not have balls, ball boys, chains and chain crew available at the appointed time prior to kickoff (Rules 1-3-2-e and 13-4-1)
- provide the equipment and personnel listed above, but that they are of questionable quality;
- provide the personnel but they are too young to do the job properly;
- provide the personnel but change them during the game;
- do not mark all the field and team area markings required by rule (Rules 1-2-1, 1-2-3-a and 1-2-4-a), or the lines are faint or crooked.

We have taken three steps to address the situation:

1 BAFRA officials will continue to do game management and/or field audits to identify both the problem teams and those taking the most effective action.
2 We have formalised in the rules the provision for competitions to take action against teams for game management breaches - such action is termed "sanctions" (Rule 13-7).
3 We have changed Rule 13-4-1-c to make it mandatory that officials' assistants under the age of 14 are not used, and that those under 18 must be supervised by a responsible member of game management.

We appreciate that some teams find it difficult to recruit gameday personnel, and sometimes have to balance the desire for a prestigious venue with lack of total control over field markings. However, any team can take steps to improve its facilities and performance, and we encourage them to do so.

We are also concerned that some teams wish to run the chains on the side of the field opposite to that specified by rule (Rule 1-2-7). This is not such a trivial change as some people may think. It is very disruptive to the positioning mechanics of the game officials, much of whose positioning is dictated by the position of the chains and the expectation that this will be on the opposite side of the field to that designated as the press box for penalty signalling and other purposes. Unless the total playing enclosure does not permit, the chains MUST be run on the side of the field opposite the designated press box.

Sportsmanship

After reviewing a number of plays involving unsportsmanlike conduct, we are firm in our support of the unsportsmanlike conduct rules as they are currently written and officiated. Many of these fouls deal with players who inappropriately draw attention to themselves in a premeditated, excessive or prolonged manner. Players should be taught the discipline that reinforces football as a team game.

BAFA reminds head coaches of their responsibility for the behaviour of their players before and after, as well as during, the game. Players must be cautioned against pre-game unsportsmanlike conduct on the field that can lead to confrontation between the teams. Such action can lead to penalties enforced on the opening kickoff, possibly including disqualification of players. Repeated occurrence of such unsportsmanlike behaviour by a team may result in punitive action by BAFA against the head coach and his team.

The Football Code

Introduction

Football is an aggressive, rugged contact sport. Only the highest standards of sportsmanship and conduct are expected of players, coaches and others associated with the game. There is no place for unfair tactics, unsportsmanlike conduct or maneuvers deliberately designed to inflict injury.

The British American Football Coaches Association (BAFCA) Code of Ethics states:

a. The Football Code shall be an integral part of this code of ethics and should be carefully read and observed.
b. To gain an advantage by circumvention or disregard for the rules brands a coach or player as unfit to be associated with football.

Through the years, the rules committee has endeavoured by rule and appropriate penalty to prohibit all forms of unnecessary roughness, unfair tactics and unsportsmanlike conduct. But rules alone cannot accomplish this end. Only the continued best efforts of coaches, players, officials and all friends of the game can preserve the high ethical standards that the public has a right to expect in the sport. Therefore, as a guide to players, coaches, officials and others responsible for the welfare of the game, the committee publishes the following code:

Coaching ethics

Deliberately teaching players to violate the rules is indefensible. The coaching of intentional holding, beating the ball, illegal shifting, feigning injury, interference, illegal forward passing or intentional roughing will break down rather than aid in the building of the character of players. Such instruction is not only unfair to one's opponents but is demoralising to the players entrusted to a coach's care and has no place in the game.

The following are unethical practices:

a. Changing numbers during the game to deceive the opponent.
b. Using the football helmet as a weapon. The helmet is for the protection of the player.
c. Targeting and initiating contact. Players, coaches and officials should emphasize the elimination of targeting and initiating contact against a defenseless opponent and/or with the crown of the helmet.
d. Using nontherapeutic drugs in the game of football. This is not in keeping with the aims and purposes of amateur athletics and is prohibited.
e. "Beating the ball" by an unfair use of a starting signal. This is nothing less than deliberately stealing an advantage from the opponent. An honest starting signal is needed, but a signal that has for its purpose starting the team a fraction of a second before the ball is put in play, in the hope that it will not be detected by the officials, is illegal. It is the same as if a sprinter in a 100-metre dash had a secret arrangement with the starter to give him a tenth-of-a-second warning before firing the pistol.
f. Shifting in a way that simulates the start of a play or employing any other unfair tactic for the purpose of drawing one's opponent offside. This can be construed only as a deliberate attempt to gain an unmerited advantage.
g. Feigning an injury for any reason is unethical. An injured player must be given full protection under the rules, but feigning injury is dishonest, unsportsmanlike and contrary to the spirit of the rules. Such tactics cannot be tolerated among sportsmen of integrity.

The British American Football Coaches Association has stated:

1. In his relationship with players under his care, the coach should always be aware of the tremendous influence he wields, for good or bad. The coach should never place the value of a win above that of instilling the highest desirable ideals and character traits in his players. The safety and welfare of his players should always be uppermost in his mind, and they must never be sacrificed for any personal prestige or selfish glory.
2. In teaching the game of football, the coach must realise that certain rules exist that are designed to protect the player and provide common standards for determining a winner and a loser. Any attempt to beat these rules, to take unfair advantage of an opponent, or to teach deliberate unsportsmanlike conduct, have no place in the game of football, nor has any coach guilty of such teaching any right to call himself a coach. The coach should set the example for winning without boasting and losing without bitterness. A coach who conducts himself according to these principles need have no fear of failure, for in the final analysis, the success of a coach can be measured in terms of the respect he has earned from his players and from his opponents.
3. The diagnosis and treatment of injuries is a medical problem and should under no circumstances be considered a province of the coach.
4. Under no circumstances should a coach authorise the use of drugs. Medicines, stimulants, or drugs should be used only when authorised and supervised by a physician. Coaches should be aware that the willful oversight of drug abuse by players under their care may be construed as condoning such action. Coaches should be acquainted with, and remain aware of the current BAFA policy on drugs.

Talking to an opponent

Talking to an opponent in any manner that is demeaning, vulgar, abusive or "trashy" or intended to incite a physical response or verbally put an opponent down is illegal. Coaches are urged to discuss this conduct frequently and support all officials' actions to control it.

Talking to officials

When an official imposes a penalty or makes a decision, he is simply doing his duty as he sees it. He is on the field to uphold the integrity of the game of football, and his decisions are final and conclusive and should be accepted by players and coaches.

The BAFCA Code of Ethics states:

a. On- and off-the-record criticism of officials to players or to the public shall be considered unethical.
b. For a coach to address, or permit anyone on his bench to address, uncomplimentary remarks to any official during the progress of a game, or to indulge in conduct that might incite players or spectators against the officials, is a violation of the rules of the game and must likewise be considered conduct unworthy of a member of the coaching profession.

Holding

Illegal use of the hand or arm is unfair play, eliminates skill and does not belong in the game. The object of the game is to advance the ball by strategy, skill and speed without illegally holding your opponent. All coaches and players should thoroughly understand the rules for proper offensive and defensive use of the hands. Holding is a frequently called penalty; it is important to emphasize the severity of the penalty.

Sportsmanship

The football player or coach who intentionally violates a rule is guilty of unfair play and unsportsmanlike conduct; and whether or not he escapes being penalised he brings discredit to the good name of the game, which is his duty as a player or coach to uphold.

BAFA Rules Committee &
British American Football Coaches Association

BAFA Regulations

Issue 4.3 — In effect from 1st April 2020. Incorporating what was previously called the BAFA Disciplinary Code and the BAFA Rules on Member Organisations.

Prologue — The Spirit of American Football

The BAFA Regulations set out BAFA's expectations for the conduct of its members (both individuals and organisations).

They are deliberately couched as a set of principles rather than specific fixed procedures. The expectation is that regulatory committees that implement them will apply common sense and good judgement, and that above all else the spirit of the sport will be upheld at all times.

All participants in the sport, but especially coaches, players and officials, should expect to show appropriate levels of respect towards each other. Those participating in a situation that is physically confrontational by the nature of the sport should play hard and fair while the ball is live, but show restraint and care for their opponents at other times.

For brevity, male pronouns are used extensively in these Regulations, but the Regulations are equally applicable to female and male participants.

1. Basic principles

1.1. Scope and definitions

1. The BAFA Regulations shall be governed by the Arbitration Act 1996 (the Act) and amount to a binding arbitration agreement for the purposes of Section 6 of the Act.
2. The BAFA Regulations apply to and bind:
   (a) BAFA participants, i.e.:
      (i) players
      (ii) coaches
      (iii) officials
      (iv) directors, officers or employees of BAFA organisations
      (v) anyone affiliated with a BAFA organisation at a BAFA event, including persons subject to the rules (Rule 1-1-6) and other game persons
      (vi) any other person participating in any activity sanctioned directly or indirectly by BAFA, whether or not they have explicitly registered with BAFA
   (b) BAFA organisations, i.e.:
      (i) the organisations that are members of BAFA
      (ii) affiliated leagues or competitions
      (iii) clubs and their team(s)
      (iv) any other organisation that is involved in arranging any activity sanctioned directly or indirectly by BAFA, whether or not they are directly or indirectly affiliated to BAFA
3. A BAFA game is defined to be:
   (a) a regular season or playoff game played by teams in affiliated leagues or competitions
   (b) any other game played in Great Britain where at least one of the teams represents a BAFA organisation
   (c) any "all-star" or exhibition game played in Great Britain involving BAFA participants

4. A BAFA event is defined to be:
   (a) a BAFA game
   (b) a controlled scrimmage
   (c) a training session organised by a BAFA organisation
   (d) any national programme or other representative team event, including those held overseas
   (e) any activity overseas where the organisation or participant is representing Great Britain, BAFA or a BAFA organisation
   (f) any other activity, including meetings, which is clearly related to American football or associated with BAFA
5. For the purposes of these Regulations:
   (a) an employee is someone who carries out work for a BAFA organisation, whether paid or voluntary
   (b) an officer is someone who has a formal or informal role acting on behalf of a BAFA organisation, including directors, members of a management committee, or equivalents
   (c) an accused is a participant or organisation against whom/which a disciplinary charge has been made
   (d) an appellant is a participant or organisation who wishes to appeal against disciplinary action taken against them
   (e) a match official is a person appointed to supervise a game according to Rule 1-1-4
   (f) a sideline person is anyone who is permitted in the team area during a game, including coaches, trainers and other individuals directly involved in the game, but not including officials' assistants or medical personnel not associated with a team
   (g) a game person is anyone affiliated with a team during a game, including game management personnel of any type, officials' assistants and anyone else who is involved in assisting the team or event organisation
6. By its very nature, these Regulations must relate to football-related matters and cannot and will not be available for private civil, criminal or personal disputes which have as their substance matters unconnected with or only marginally connected with the sport, or where the substance of the dispute exists outside the participation within the sport. However, BAFA reserves the right to widen the remit of disciplinary matters in two types of case:
   (a) where a participant's conduct may reasonably be regarded as bringing the game (i.e. the sport itself) into disrepute, taking account of any undue negative impact or publicity
   (b) where a participant's conduct may reasonably be regarded as leading to an increased risk to the safety of any participant, or loss of or damage to property

1.2. Jurisdiction

1. Clubs may be responsible for the discipline of their own members, but must notify BAFA if they take disciplinary action against a member that:
   (a) incurs a fine of more than £25
   (b) imposes a suspension of more than one game
   (c) is a second or subsequent offence within a 12 month period
   (d) the member wishes to appeal against
2. Regardless of whether a club takes disciplinary action or not, BAFA may also instigate proceedings independently or in co-operation with the club. If BAFA instigates

proceedings, it may decide to instead accept the finding and (if appropriate) sanction imposed by a club, or it may decide to consider the case afresh. BAFA may also order a club to cease disciplinary action against a member, in the interests of justice.

3. Where the jurisdiction in a case may reasonably be within the purview of more than one BAFA organisation, the BAFA Disciplinary Officer shall decide which organisation or a BAFA Disciplinary Committee shall have jurisdiction taking into account the primary role of the accused participant or organisation in connection with the breach and the seriousness of the offence.
4. Where a case falls into the jurisdiction of another American football organisation (e.g. IFAF), it will not normally be reconsidered by a BAFA Regulatory Committee.
5. For the avoidance of doubt, BAFA regulatory proceedings may progress in parallel with criminal and/or civil court action.
   (a) Where BAFA is notified of an incident involving a participant which may amount to a breach of its regulations, it will commence an investigation immediately with a view to bringing disciplinary proceedings in a timely fashion. In light of the mutual dependency of participants within the game, it is essential that sporting justice and the imposition of any sporting sanction take place as soon as possible.
   (b) BAFA will co-operate with the police and other legal and regulatory authorities and may suspend its investigation on request.
   (c) BAFA acknowledges the principles set out in the 2015 agreement between the Crown Prosecution Service, National Police Chiefs' Council, the Football Association and the Football Association of Wales on the appropriate handling of incidents falling under both criminal and football regulatory jurisdiction.

1.3. Principles of natural justice

1. BAFA, as the national governing body of American Football in Britain, will be the final arbiter of discipline within the sport played in Britain.
2. All proceedings undertaken by BAFA against a BAFA participant or a BAFA organisation may be conducted at the BAFA Disciplinary Officer's discretion either by hearing or correspondence, and shall conform to the following principles of natural justice:
   (a) the accused should be given reasonable notice about the proceedings including details of the accusation
   (b) all persons involved in making a decision should declare any personal interest they may have in the proceedings
   (c) all decision-makers should be unbiased, non-discriminatory and act in good faith
   (d) proceedings should be conducted so they are fair to all the parties
   (e) each party to a proceeding is entitled to ask questions and contradict the evidence of the opposing party
   (f) any decision-maker should take into account relevant considerations and extenuating circumstances, and ignore irrelevant considerations
   (g) justice should be seen to be done
   (h) the accused will be found guilty only if the disciplinary authority finds that, in the balance of probabilities, the evidence proves the offence
   (i) the balance of probabilities is a sliding scale: the more serious the allegation, the less likely it is that the event occurred and hence the stronger the evidence needed that it did occur
   (j) where matters are dealt with by personal hearing, the accused is given a reasonable opportunity to attend the hearing and participate in it, accompanied by a friend (who is not legally qualified) if they so wish

(k) where matters are dealt with by correspondence, the accused or a friend (who is not legally qualified) is given reasonable opportunity to view the evidence and respond to the allegations, except in safeguarding cases, where the evidence may be redacted or summarised to protect the confidentiality of informants

(l) where the accused is a child or an adult at risk, the accused must have an appropriate adult copied into all correspondence and attend any hearing

(m) where the accused refuses to answer questions or provide reasonable explanation for their actions, that refusal may be used against them

(n) penalties taken against a guilty party shall be proportionate to the offence

(o) where the accused admits to the offence at the first available opportunity, a more lenient penalty is imposed

(p) where any breach is proven to be motivated by or aggravated by one or more aggravating factors, a more serious penalty is imposed

(q) penalties for repeat offenders should be more serious than for a first offence

3. Where a case is dealt with by a BAFA organisation, the accused has the right of appeal to a BAFA Appeal Committee on the grounds that:
   (a) significant evidence was not available to the disciplinary authority (although the appellant would have to show why any new evidence was significant to the case and why it was not submitted originally)
   (b) the penalties imposed are unreasonably severe
   (c) the procedure undertaken for disciplinary or appeal matters was unfair or discriminatory to a significant extent
4. Proceedings dealt with by a BAFA organisation that do not conform to the principles of Regulations 1.3.2 or 1.3.3 may be appealed to a BAFA Appeal Committee. However, a technical breach of these principles that in the balance of probabilities did not affect a decision or the outcome of a process shall be disregarded.
5. BAFA shall have the power to require of any participant upon reasonable notice:
   (a) his or her attendance to answer questions and provide information; and/or
   (b) the production of documents, information or other material in whatever form held
6. The BAFA Disciplinary Officer or anyone authorised by him shall have the power to enter the site of any BAFA event in order to make an investigation or to collect evidence.
7. Proceedings will not normally be commenced more than 6 months after any event to which it relates. Where the accused has taken steps to conceal the breach, the 6 months will be counted from when the breach came to light.
8. All BAFA organisations shall recognise penalties imposed by BAFA and other BAFA organisations.
9. BAFA may recognise the disciplinary rules and sanctions of any other sporting body (or institution which may be involved in the management of a team) so that any person suspended or banned by any other sporting or relevant professional body may be suspended or banned concurrently by BAFA. Before imposing any such concurrent suspension or ban, however, a BAFA Disciplinary Committee will grant the person the opportunity to offer an explanation.
10. The BAFA Disciplinary Officer may provide an opinion on the interpretation of this Code. Such an opinion shall be binding unless subsequently overridden by a decision of the BAFA Board.
11. The BAFA Disciplinary Officer may from time to time determine procedures to be followed that are not otherwise specified in these Regulations. Such procedures shall be binding on all participants.

2. Registration

2.1. Registrable categories

1. All persons in the following registrable categories shall be registered and pay the appropriate fee before participating in a BAFA event:
   (a) players
   (b) coaches
   (c) officials
   (d) officers of a BAFA organisation
   (e) sideline person

2.2. Fit and proper person

1. BAFA reserves the right to prohibit someone who is not a fit and proper person from carrying out any or all of the following restricted roles:
   (a) BAFA director
   (b) BAFA employee or volunteer
   (c) Officer of a BAFA organisation (including leagues and clubs)
   (d) Coach
   (e) Official
2. Persons may be prohibited for one or more of the following reasons:
   (a) criminal record, particularly for crimes of violence, crimes of dishonesty, or crimes against children or vulnerable people
   (b) safeguarding reasons
   (c) they have been prohibited by law from being a director
   (d) they are subject to a bankruptcy order, individual voluntary arrangement or other insolvency order
   (e) they have been director of an organisation (BAFA or non-BAFA) while it has suffered two or more unconnected events of insolvency
   (f) they have been a director of two or more organisations (BAFA or non-BAFA) that, while they have been director, has suffered an event of insolvency
3. The fit and proper person test will apply to persons applying for or holding any of the following positions:
   (a) BAFA director
   (b) Director of BAFRA or BAFCA
   (c) the BAFA Disciplinary Officer and other members of the BAFA disciplinary team and BAFA regulatory panel
4. In addition, the fit and proper person test will apply to persons applying for or holding any other restricted role if the BAFA Disciplinary Officer is in possession of information that leads him to believe that a person may reasonably fail the test.
5. If the test is applied to a person, they must make a self-declaration. If they fail to make a declaration they will be prohibited.
6. The contents of a self-declaration, in addition to any other relevant information known to BAFA, will be considered by a Registration Committee.
7. In making a decision, the Panel will consider the following factors:
   (a) Any BAFA policy on the registration of ex-offenders
   (b) The seriousness of any offence and its potential relevance to the role
   (c) The length of time since any offence occurred

(d) Any relevant information offered by the applicant about the circumstances which led to the offence being committed
(e) Whether the offence was a one-off, or part of a history of offending
(f) The degree of remorse, or otherwise, expressed by the applicant and their motivation to change

8. If a person fails the test and is prohibited, they may appeal against the decision. See Regulation 8 Appeal Procedure.

2.3. Safeguarding

1. BAFA may bar an individual by imposing restrictions on their involvement in American football on such terms as may be determined by BAFA in accordance with these regulations.
2. Child means a person under the age of eighteen years as defined by the Children Act 1989. Children means more than one child.
3. Adult at risk means any adult who is or may be in need of community care services, or sufferers of mental health disorders, learning or physical disability, sensory impairment, age or illness and who is or may be unable to take care of him/herself or unable to protect him/herself against significant harm, abuse, neglect or exploitation.
4. The Safeguarding Review Panel (SRP) are appointed by BAFA to implement this Regulation. The SRP is made up of a panel of a minimum of 3 individuals. The members can come from the board of directors, senior volunteers with responsibility for safeguarding and expert independent members as appointed by the board.
5. An adult who works in regulated activity with children or adults at risk in American football must:
   (a) have an enhanced Disclosure and Barring Service (DBS) check or membership of the Protecting Vulnerable Groups (PVG) Scheme in Scotland processed through BAFA within four weeks of their employment or appointment
   (b) provide any further detail, explanation or clarification of that disclosure as may be required by BAFA
   (c) provide, on request from BAFA, references that attest to their suitability to be involved in working in regulated activity in American football
6. While awaiting their disclosure, a person may temporarily work on a paid or voluntary basis with children provided that they are supervised at all times during any activity with children by a person who is DBS/DS cleared.
7. Any person who fails to comply with BAFA's disclosure process or is not cleared by the enhanced DBS/PVG process may be prohibited from participating in American football by being barred under this regulation.
8. An individual may be barred from any BAFA event or activity on such terms and conditions as the SRP considers appropriate on a case by case basis.
9. A bar may be imposed when the SRP receives:
   (a) notification that an individual has been charged with an offence;
   (b) notification that an individual is the subject of an investigation by the police, social services or any other authority relating to an offence;
   (c) notification that an individual has been convicted of, or made the subject of a caution in respect of, an offence;
   (d) notification of the outcome of an investigation by the police, social services or any other authority relating to an offence; and/or
   (e) any other information which causes the SRP to believe that a person poses or may be a risk of harm to another person.

10. In determining whether a bar should be imposed the SRP shall give consideration to, but not limited to, the following factors:
    (a) whether a person may be at risk of harm;
    (b) whether the matters or offences alleged are of a serious nature; and/or
    (c) whether a bar is necessary or desirable to protect a person or persons from harm.
11. If the SRP bars an individual they will be promptly notified by BAFA. The notification shall be copied to those who need to know on a confidential basis including any relevant authorities. The notification shall:
    (a) set out the reasons why the bar has been imposed;
    (b) advise that the individual has 14 days from the date of the notification in which to appeal the decision under Regulation 8; and
    (c) that BAFA will notify the relevant statutory authorities once the appeal period has passed or if any appeal is unsuccessful.
12. A bar may be imposed for:
    (a) an interim period (before, during and pending the outcome of an investigation); or
    (b) a specified period (if, after further investigation, the conduct is such that it merits a sanction and/or criminal proceedings or investigations are underway); or
    (c) indefinite period (if it is considered that the conduct and potential ongoing risk to a person or persons is such that it is considered necessary, reasonable and proportionate).
13. The SRP may review a bar at any time if it chooses to do so. When imposing a bar, the SRP may specify that the bar will be reviewed after a certain period of time determined by the SRP, or upon a certain event (such as the completion of an investigation by another agency, or a criminal prosecution).
14. An individual who has been barred for an indefinite period may also request that a bar be reviewed at the stated review point stipulated in the bar notification, and BAFA will review the bar if it is satisfied that there is new evidence not previously considered by BAFA which shows that the risk posed to a person or persons by the individual has reduced.
15. The SRP can decide to end a bar at any time if it decides that the circumstances justify this. Such ending of a bar is effective upon the SRP confirming this in writing. If a bar is for a fixed term, the bar will lift at the expiry of that term (unless ended earlier by BAFA under these regulations).

3. Code of conduct

3.1. Bring the game into disrepute

1. A BAFA participant shall at all times act in the best interests of the game and shall not act in any manner which is improper or brings the game into disrepute, including but not limited to:
    (a) participating in a game in a registrable category without being registered with BAFA (Exception: participants representing a team from outside Great Britain) or participating while suspended
    (b) being disqualified from a game
    (c) being removed from the playing enclosure during a game under the provisions of Rule 9-2-7
    (d) misconduct before, during or after a BAFA event, including violent conduct, serious foul play, threatening, abusive, indecent or insulting words or behaviour or any breach of playing rules where the penalty imposed by rule is judged to be insufficient

(e) committing a criminal offence
(f) involvement in betting on any game or competition in which the participant has any involvement, or providing information to any other person that is not publicly available in relation to betting
(g) selling, offering or exposing for sale, either directly or indirectly, a ticket for a game in excess of the face value of the ticket
(h) incurring financial or other costs to the sport as a result of their disregard for BAFA policies and procedures
(i) making or accepting payments to participants that are not explicitly permitted, or causing or encouraging others to do so
(j) discriminating by reason of ethnic origin, colour, race, nationality, religion, age, gender, sexual orientation, disability, parental or marital status, pregnancy, class or social background, trade union membership or political belief
(k) persistent criticism, disputing or questioning by a participant of calls made by a match official
(l) conduct by a coach that is contrary to the BAFCA Code of Ethics
(m) conduct by an official that is contrary to the BAFRA Code of Ethics
(n) breaching the BAFA safeguarding policy, including failing to report a safeguarding concern
(o) breaching the WADA World Anti-Doping Code
(p) making inappropriate and unauthorised public statements (including on social media) about matters relating to British American football
(q) attempting to breach these Regulations
(r) inciting or abetting anyone to breach these Regulations
(s) obstructing or showing disrespect for any proceedings held under these Regulations
(t) an officer or employee of a BAFA organisation permitting their organisation to breach any provision of Regulation 3.1.2 below

2. A BAFA organisation shall at all times act in the best interests of the game and shall not act in any manner which is improper or brings the game into disrepute, including but not limited to:
(a) a breach of any provision of Regulation 3.1.1 by a director, officer or employee of the organisation while acting on behalf of the organisation
(b) making a verbal or written agreement in the reasonable knowledge that it cannot or will not be kept
(c) failing unreasonably to provide game management facilities for a BAFA game that meet the minimum requirements of Rules 1 and 13
(d) failing to keep proper financial, membership or other relevant records as required by law or BAFA policy
(e) failing to ensure that a participant associated with the organisation complies with a penalty or order imposed pursuant to these Regulations
(f) a breach of Regulation 4.
(g) a breach of any provision of Regulation 3.1.1 by a member or a supporter of a club or similar organisation, where that breach was reasonably preventable or mitigable by the BAFA organisation
(h) having a director or officer (or equivalent) who is not registered with BAFA
(i) permitting an individual to participate in a game in a registrable category without being registered with BAFA and/or without appearing on the team's roster

3. An aggravating factor in any breach is any reference to any one or a combination of:
   (a) ethnic origin
   (b) colour
   (c) race
   (d) nationality
   (e) religion
   (f) age
   (g) gender
   (h) sexual orientation
   (i) disability
   (j) parental or marital status
   (k) pregnancy
   (l) class or social background
   (m) trade union membership
   (n) political belief

3.2. Penalties

1. All fines specified in these Regulations are reduced in youth, junior and student leagues but with no reduction applicable to appeal and any other administrative fees.
2. All fines and fees shall be paid to BAFA.
3. A club is responsible for the payment of any fine or fee incurred by a participant registered with it. It is then up to the club whether or not to reclaim the money from the individual, but that process is not part of the BAFA Regulations. (A club may regard an unpaid amount by a participant as a club debt and prevent that person registering for another club.)
4. A club must pay all fines and fees within 28 days of becoming due (and regardless of whether an invoice is issued or not). A fine for a disqualification or a person removed from the playing enclosure becomes due on the day of the offence. Other fines/fees become due when notified to the club.
5. A 50% discount is automatically applicable for a fine resulting from a fixed penalty provided BAFA receives full payment within 14 days of the offence. The full fine is due after 14 days.
6. Where a fine or fee relates to a suspended participant or organisation, that person or organisation's suspension will automatically continue until the fine or fee is paid. If not paid within 28 days, the fine or fee will be automatically doubled and the person or organisation suspended for a further one game. A further one game suspension will be added for each further 28 days the fine or fee remains unpaid.

3.3. Fixed penalty offences

1. The following breaches of the Code of Conduct may be regarded as fixed penalty offences:
   (a) participating in a game without being registered with BAFA
   (b) permitting an individual to participate in a game without appearing on a team's roster
   (c) being disqualified from a game
   (d) being removed from the playing enclosure during a game under the provisions of Rule 9-2-7
   (e) misconduct before, during or after a BAFA event, including violent conduct, serious foul play, threatening, abusive, indecent or insulting words or behaviour

2. In the event of any of the above, the BAFA Disciplinary Officer may determine that the breach was so severe that the case should be dealt with under full disciplinary proceedings.
3. The fixed penalty offences involve suspensions and fines as follows:

Offence	Suspension	Fine if paid within 14 days	Fine (paid within 28 days)	Fine if not paid within 28 days
First offence	Minimum 1 game	£20	£40	£80
Second offence	Minimum 2 games	£50	£100	£200
Third offence	Minimum 12 months	£100	£200	£400

4. A player is given an automatic playing suspension. Any other participant is given an automatic game day suspension.
5. A fixed penalty shall be considered as "spent" 12 months after it takes place.
6. Fixed penalties arising from disqualifications and being removed from the playing enclosure will have immediate effect and fines will become immediately due unless an appeal is lodged with the BAFA Disciplinary Officer within the limits set in Regulation 8. Any appeal not so notified will be void.
7. Fixed penalties arising for other reasons will take effect from when notified to the relevant club and fines will become immediately due unless an appeal is lodged with the BAFA Disciplinary Officer within the limits set in Regulation 8. Any appeal not so notified will be void.
8. The appeal may be made either by the participant himself or on his behalf by his organisation.
9. Appeals against a fixed penalty may only be made on the grounds that:
   (a) the person penalised was not the one who committed the breach (mistaken identity), or
   (b) no breach was committed (there must be evidence that, in the balance of probabilities, the breach did not take place, or (in the case of a disqualification) the match officials misapplied a rule)
   (c) while a breach was technically committed, the penalty was clearly disproportionately severe
10. All appeals must be supported by video or other evidence.
11. Appeals will be considered by an Appeal Committee, normally within no less than 3 and no more than 14 days of the fixed penalty, provided all parties have had a reasonable opportunity to submit evidence.
12. Serving the suspension and payment of the fine means that no further proceedings may then be brought against the participant in respect of the breach.
13. A team that permits a suspended person to participate will normally forfeit the game and be subject to disciplinary action.

3.4. Penalties for other breaches

1. A disciplinary authority may impose one or more of the following penalties against a BAFA participant:
   (a) issue them with a written warning concerning their conduct
   (b) issue a fine, which can be of no more than £100 for a first offence
   (c) issue a playing or game day suspension for a stipulated number of games

(d) issue a total suspension from all or certain specified BAFA events for a stipulated period of time or number of games
(e) prohibit them serving as an officer of a BAFA organisation for a stipulated period of time
(f) issue them with a compensation order requiring them to make restitution for their breach
(g) reduce, remove or suspend for a period of time any BAFA-related qualification or membership category, or BAFA's recognition of a qualification issued outside the sport

2. A disciplinary authority may impose one or more of the following penalties against a BAFA organisation:
   (a) issue it with a written warning concerning their conduct
   (b) issue a fine of no more than £500 for a first offence
   (c) if a club, disqualify any of its teams from a competition (or part thereof), suspend it from playing games, deduct a stipulated number of league points, prohibit it from entering international competition or playing overseas for a stipulated period of time, or prohibit it from organising or attending BAFA events for a stipulated period of time
   (d) suspend it from a parent organisation for a stipulated period of time
   (e) impose any of the penalties listed in 3.4.1 above on any of the officers of the organisation
   (f) issue them with a compensation order requiring them to make restitution for their breach
3. An individual or organisation not affiliated to BAFA may be excluded from BAFA affiliation for a period of time and/or have any of the above penalties imposed on them as a condition of future registration.
4. Any penalty may be deferred for a stipulated period. The penalty will become applicable if the accused is found guilty of any further offence within that period, unless there is a good reason not to impose it. Deferred penalties will normally only be used where there is evidence of extenuating circumstances that mitigate the accused's actions or intentions.
5. A written warning alone may be imposed only for a first offence and where the offence is determined to be minor.
6. The penalty for a second offence in any category will normally be double the penalty for a first offence. The penalty for a third offence in any category will normally be treble the penalty for a first offence. The penalty for a fourth offence will normally involve a period of suspension from the sport for a number of years.
7. For appeals against disqualifications and appeals against other disciplinary decisions, a participant's penalty shall normally be doubled where a disciplinary or appeal authority denies an appeal and believes that the appeal was made:
   (a) on unreasonable or substantially mistaken grounds; or
   (b) substantially in order to permit a participant to participate in a game for which he was otherwise suspended; or
   (c) for vexatious reasons.

3.5. Suspensions

1. There are four types of suspension:
   (a) A playing suspension is where a player is suspended from playing in a game. While suspended, he may stand in his team area during the game, provided that he is not in uniform (exception - he may wear a jersey in his team's colours) and that he is wearing any necessary credentials. Note: a playing suspension cannot be imposed on any participant who is not a player.
   (b) A game day suspension is where a participant is suspended from any participation in a game. While suspended, he may not enter the playing enclosure (as defined in Rule 2-31-5), communicate in any way with anyone who is in the playing enclosure, or otherwise draw the attention of anyone in the playing enclosure from two hours before kickoff until two hours after the game has finished.
   (c) A total suspension is where a participant is suspended from any participation in a BAFA event. Unless stated otherwise, this includes all games played by the participant's team or any other team, any coaching activity, any officiating activity, or any activity at a BAFA event. While suspended, for a game he may not enter the playing enclosure (as defined in Rule 2-31-5), communicate in any way with anyone who is in the playing enclosure, or otherwise draw the attention of anyone in the playing enclosure from two hours before kickoff until two hours after the game has finished. While suspended, for any other BAFA event, he may not enter the site of the event or otherwise draw the attention of anyone at the event from two hours before the event's start until two hours after the event's finish.
   (d) An organisational suspension is where an organisation is prohibited from playing games, entering international competition, or playing overseas or organising or participating in other BAFA events.
2. The general principle is that a participant who is suspended (or any club or other organisation with which they are affiliated) cannot influence to their advantage the game(s) in which the suspension shall be served.
3. Normally, a suspension for a stipulated number of games applies to the next scheduled game(s).
   (a) This will normally be the next game on the team's schedule.
   (b) However, suspensions resulting from a competitive game (i.e. a regular season or playoff game) will apply only to competitive games.
   (c) If there is any question as to a team's schedule, the one notified to BAFRA will take precedence.
4. A suspension for a stipulated period of time applies to all relevant BAFA events that occur before the period of suspension ends.
5. Schedules cannot be rearranged to alter the game(s) for which a suspension is served. The recognised schedule at the time of the incident that led to the suspension shall apply.
   (a) If a regular season or playoff fixture is arranged to take place before the date of the game, the suspension will apply to the original game and the person will be eligible to participate in the re-arranged game.
   (b) Further, if a fixture is cancelled at any time up to its kickoff, the suspension will carry forward to the next scheduled game.
6. A suspended participant who has not completed a suspension, and who wishes to transfer organisation, carries their suspension with them to their new organisation. If there is a hiatus between the end of membership of one organisation and the beginning of membership of the other, and during this time, the new organisation plays games, these games shall be counted towards meeting the suspension unless the BAFA Disciplinary Officer

rules this to be unfair. If a suspended participant is registered with more than one organisation (e.g. more than one team in the same club or more than one team in different competitions), the suspension shall normally be served with the team he was with when the suspension was imposed, but the BAFA Disciplinary Officer has the power to vary this in the interests of justice.

3.6. Pro tem suspension

1. In cases where the BAFA Disciplinary Officer believes that a serious breach of these Regulations has been committed, he may at his discretion impose pro tem a suspension (of any of the four types) on a participant or organisation, if he believes any of the following conditions hold:
   (a) There are reasonable grounds to believe a suspension will reduce the risk of a further breach being committed.
   (b) There are reasonable grounds to believe a suspension will reduce the risk to the safety of any participant.
   (c) The police or another agency is investigating the case with a view to criminal charges or civil proceedings in court.
   (d) The incident in question resulted in serious harm to an individual.
   (e) The incident in question resulted in a large amount of damage to property.
2. Appeals against a pro tem suspension may be made to the BAFA Disciplinary Officer, who may revoke or amend the terms of the suspension if he is persuaded it is unreasonable.
3. Where a pro tem suspension is imposed, the period of such suspension shall be counted as "time served" if a suspension is subsequently imposed by a Disciplinary Committee. If the Disciplinary Committee does not impose a suspension, there is no compensation due to the accused.

3.7. Parole

1. Applications for parole from a suspension may be made at any time after half the period of suspension has been served. A participant suspended for a period of more than 5 years (including "for life") may appeal for reinstatement at any time after 5 years of their sentence has elapsed.
2. An application will be considered by an Appeal Committee and its decision will be final for a period of at least one year.
3. An application will only be successful if it:
   (a) shows evidence of remorse
   (b) provides details of how the individual or organisation will be reintegrated back into football while minimising the risk of reoffending
   (c) provides a plan for how the conduct of the individual or organisation will be monitored during their period of parole
4. An individual or organisation may be granted parole on such terms and conditions as the Appeal Committee considers appropriate on a case by case basis.
5. An individual or organisation that breaches the terms or conditions of their parole is subject to having their suspension reinstated.
6. A period of parole will normally end when the original term of suspension was scheduled to end, if there has been no further breach. A Disciplinary Committee may extend the period of parole when imposing penalties for a breach committed during a period of parole.

4. Regulations on organisations

4.1. Introduction

1. A BAFA organisation is required to conform to the following regulations.
2. Where a BAFA organisation itself has member organisations, these regulations apply recursively to the relationship between the BAFA organisation and its member organisations.
3. Where an organisation changes any details as required or requested below, it must give notice to BAFA within 28 days. Such notice will be deemed given when received and acknowledged by a designated BAFA officer.

4.2. Corporate governance

1. A BAFA organisation must on request notify BAFA of the organisation's governance arrangements, and provide BAFA copies of all governance documents including but not exclusive to constitutions, articles and memoranda of association, byelaws, rules, regulations, etc.
2. A BAFA organisation must on request notify BAFA of the officers of the organisation (e.g. directors) and their contact details.
3. A BAFA organisation must prohibit anyone acting as a director or officer who is prohibited by BAFA.
4. A BAFA organisation must on request report to BAFA giving details of its implementation of these regulations.
5. A BAFA organisation must implement risk management policies and procedures that are compatible with any BAFA risk management policy in force at the time.

4.3. Human resources and welfare

1. A BAFA organisation must ensure persons acting in any appointed capacity on behalf of the organisation abide by all rules, regulations and guidelines for conduct.
2. A BAFA organisation must ensure all persons acting in a coaching capacity are qualified members of BAFCA.
3. A BAFA organisation must abide by any BAFA Equality Policy.
4. A BAFA organisation must implement child protection policies and procedures that are compatible with any BAFA safeguarding policy in force at the time.

4.4. Financial management

1. A BAFA organisation must on request notify BAFA of the organisation's financial year.
2. A BAFA organisation must have an independent examination or audit of its accounts performed at least once a year.
3. A BAFA organisation must on request provide BAFA with a copy of its most recent accounts.
4. A BAFA organisation must on request report to BAFA any financial problems (e.g. unpaid debtors or creditors above £500 outstanding for more than 2 months).

4.5. Marketing and communication

1. A BAFA organisation must maintain the integrity and reputation of BAFA in all communications.
2. A BAFA organisation must not make public statements that are contrary to BAFA regulations.
3. A BAFA organisation must not engage in sponsorship or similar arrangements that are judged by BAFA to be contrary to the interests of the sport.

4.6. Regulations and discipline

1. A BAFA organisation must implement disciplinary policies and procedures that are compatible with any BAFA Regulations in force at the time.
2. A BAFA organisation that takes disciplinary action against a member must comply with Regulation 1.3.2.

4.7. Games and playing rules

1. A BAFA organisation must conduct all contests according to the BAFA playing rules in force at the time, unless they are granted exemption in writing by the Chair of the BAFA Rules Committee or his deputy.
2. BAFA may sanction teams that do not comply with football-playing rules that do not have a designated penalty.
3. A BAFA organisation must use only BAFRA officials wherever possible, unless they are authorised by the BAFRA Director of Operations or his deputy.
4. When given notice at least 24 hours before the scheduled kickoff time that BAFRA cannot provide officials for a game:
   (a) The BAFA organisation acting as (home) game management must appoint at least 3 persons who meet the minimum officiating requirement (as defined in Rule 13-9-6-d) to officiate the game.
   (b) Their opponents (the away team) may also appoint additional persons.
   (c) In the event that the total number of persons appointed is in excess of 8, each team will appoint 4 persons.
   (d) If the opponent provides at least 2 persons, the game management team's requirement drops to a minimum of 2 persons.
   (e) Under no circumstances may the game commence, nor proceed if suspended, if there are fewer than 3 officials or persons who meet the officiating requirement (Rule 13-5-5).
5. A BAFA organisation must not schedule any games on dates that clash with National Programme games or mandatory training camps, unless they are authorised in writing by the BAFA Director of Operations or his deputy.
6. A BAFA organisation must not schedule any games on dates that clash with BAFA "designated events" (e.g. the BAFRA Convention), unless they are authorised in writing by the organisers of the designated event.
7. Any game played in violation of the provisions of Regulation 4.7 will normally be forfeit by the responsible team(s).

4.8. International participation

1. A BAFA organisation must seek BAFA's prior approval for the organisation of any team, game or other event where the name "United Kingdom", "Great Britain", "Britain", "England", "Scotland", "Wales", "Northern Ireland", "National", "International", "Europe" or derivations therefrom is used.
2. A BAFA organisation must seek BAFA's prior approval for the use of the nickname "Lions", "Crusaders", "Chieftains", "Dragons", "Giants", "Bulldogs", "Allstars" or derivations therefrom by a member team, club or other organisation. Existing teams using these names (on 3rd October 2008) shall be allowed to continue to do so. [Birmingham Lions]
3. A BAFA organisation must seek BAFA's prior approval for teams to participate in any game:
   (a) outside Great Britain or
   (b) involving a team from outside Great Britain

Approval is unlikely to be granted if the game or opponent does not have recognition from an IFAF member governing body or equivalent.

4. A BAFA organisation must ensure that all player transfers to or from countries outside Great Britain must abide by the rules of the IFAF International Transfer Card.

4.9. Liaison with external bodies

1. A BAFA organisation must on request keep BAFA informed of discussions with:
   (a) IFAF or its affiliated or successor bodies
   (b) any professional sports organisation
   (c) other UK sports governing bodies or their offshoots
   (d) other representative bodies
2. A BAFA organisation must not enter into any contracts or agreements with any of the bodies listed above without prior consultation with BAFA.
3. A BAFA organisation must on request inform BAFA of any application made for public funding.
4. A BAFA organisation must seek BAFA's prior approval for any funding application to any scheme which requires NGB approval.
5. A BAFA organisation must on request inform BAFA of any sponsorship agreement valued at £1000 or more.
6. A BAFA organisation must seek BAFA's prior approval for any agreement made with an external body where that may have an effect on the sport as a whole or another BAFA organisation.

4.10. Disputes between BAFA organisations

1. If any difference of opinion shall arise between BAFA organisations relating to the performance by either party of its obligations or entitlements, such dispute shall be referred in the first instance to be resolved by mediation at each party's equal expense.
2. If not resolved by this means within 30 Business Days, then it (or any remaining issue/s arising from any such dispute or difference on which agreement cannot be reached) shall be referred to be dealt with and determined by arbitration, the costs of which shall be borne and payable by the party against whom any relevant award is then made.
3. Any such mediation or arbitration shall be referred to and conducted by such person as shall be appointed by agreement between the parties or in the absence of such agreement:
   (a) In the case of a referral for mediation, by the Chairman or governing body for the time being of the ADR or CEDR group (or its or their equivalent at any given time).
   (b) In the case of a referral for arbitration, by the Chairman or governing body for the time being of the Royal Institute of Chartered Arbitrators (or its equivalent at any given time).
4. Any person so appointed to arbitrate shall act as an expert and their decision shall accordingly be binding for all purposes on the parties.
5. Any such referral for mediation or arbitration shall be deemed to be commenced by either party giving notice to the other requiring such a referral.

5. Game regulations

5.1. Registration and rosters

1. All players, coaches, sideline persons and match officials participating in a BAFA game must be registered with BAFA at the time of the game (Exception: participants representing a team from outside Great Britain). Regulation 2 covers the registration process.
2. Teams shall provide the referee with a roster of their players, coaches and other sideline persons (showing BAFA registration number, forename, surname and jersey number or sideline role) before each game. A player may appear on the roster under more than one jersey number to enable him to change number during the game (informing the referee when he does so).
3. The roster must clearly state the names and (where required) registration numbers of all team coaches, and indicate who is the head coach.
4. Persons serving a suspension or for whom an appeal has been lodged must be included and clearly marked. If a suspended person is not so marked, he may not be considered as having served the suspension. It is a team's responsibility to know who is suspended and to correctly mark them.
5. Additions to the roster shall not be permitted after the game has kicked off. Competitions may set an earlier deadline.
6. The referee shall provide each team with a list of the match officials.
7. The game shall not commence until all lists have been provided and meet the requirements above.
8. The game shall not commence (or proceed if suspended) if there are fewer than 3 licensed officials (or licensed coaches acting as officials).
9. The game shall not commence (or proceed if suspended) if each team does not have at least one licensed coach.
10. If a squad member in uniform does not appear on his team's roster then, upon discovery, he shall be disqualified from the game.

5.2. Incident reports

1. The referee (or another match official) for each game shall report all incidents of:
   (a) disqualified players
   (b) persons removed under Rule 9-2-7
   (c) persons not appearing on the roster
   (d) allegations that teams played unregistered or suspended players
   (e) breach of mandatory game management requirements as set out in Rules 1 and 13
2. Any match official (including an assessor who has been officially appointed to attend the game) may report any incident of:
   (a) misconduct by any BAFA participant (including suspected breaches of this code)
3. The referee (or another match official) or an authorised officer of a BAFA organisation† may, after viewing a video (or other record) of a BAFA event, report any incident of:
   (a) foul play that in their opinion should have resulted in disqualification of a player, including a player called for a foul for initiating contact/targeting an opponent (under

† The list of authorised persons is:
BAFA Disciplinary Officer or his deputy
BAFRA President or his deputy
BAFCA President or his deputy
BAFA Director of Operations or his deputy

Rules 9-1-3 or 9-1-4) or a flagrant personal foul or flagrant unsportsmanlike conduct that game officials did not call
   (b) a person participating in the game who did not appear on the roster
   (c) a person participating in the game while suspended
   (d) misconduct by any BAFA participant (including suspected breaches of this code)
   (e) a player who is disqualified from the game due to a flagrant personal foul or flagrant unsportsmanlike conduct so serious that it may merit an additional penalty
4. Any match official who has made a report (or an authorised officer of BAFRA acting on their behalf) may, with the consent of the BAFA Disciplinary Officer, withdraw a report submitted as above if, after viewing a video (or other record) of a game, it is realised that the report was submitted in error, or that the foul committed was not on reflection flagrant enough to warrant disqualification.
5. Referees' reports shall normally be made in the first instance by 8pm on the Monday following a weekend game, or within 48 hours of any other game. Further reports must be submitted to arrive normally within 7 days. Reports arising from viewing video must be submitted normally within 7 days of the video becoming available to the viewer.
6. Reports shall be made to the BAFA Disciplinary Officer.

6. Competition complaints and appeals

1. Complaints about the governance or administration of a BAFA-sanctioned competition shall be directed to the competition authority in the first instance. If the complainant is not satisfied with the response, or does not receive a response within 72 hours (or 14 days outside the competition period), then the following appeal procedure may be used.
2. An authorised officer of a club or team in a BAFA-sanctioned competition may lodge an appeal on behalf of their club against a decision made by the competition authority. A joint appeal on behalf of several clubs or teams can also be made.
3. An appeal may be made against (but is not limited to) decisions about:
   (a) qualification or entry into competition
   (b) fixture arrangement
   (c) eligibility of teams and personnel
   (d) results where they have been determined by the competition authority
   (e) the imposition of sanctions
4. An appeal can be made about a decision impacting one team directly but that affects the appealing team(s) indirectly.
5. An appeal is likely to be upheld if it can be shown that:
   (a) the competition authority did not correctly apply a BAFA rule, regulation or its own competition regulations
   (b) the competition regulations or policies under which the decision were made are not in accordance with BAFA rules, regulations or in the best interests of the game as a whole
6. An appeal is likely to be rejected if it can be shown that:
   (a) there is no impact on a match result, league table or the outcome of the competition
   (b) the affected team(s) approved the decision or the process by which the decision was made
   (c) the decision was made by a qualified match official in the context of a BAFA game
7. A competition appeal that relates to the conduct of an individual or club and which could be considered as a breach of Regulation 3 will be dealt with as a disciplinary case.
8. Appeals are dealt with under the procedure set out in Regulation 8.

7. Procedures for regulatory cases

7.1. General principles

1. A BAFA regulatory proceeding is a proceeding of a sports association and not of a Court.
2. The Convener shall normally be the BAFA Disciplinary Officer or one of his deputies.
3. Once notified of a matter, and having assured that the matter is within BAFA's jurisdiction, the Convenor shall constitute a Regulatory Committee to deal with the case. A Regulatory Committee may be a Disciplinary Committee, a Registration Committee, a Safeguarding Committee, or an Appeal Committee considering matters within the scope of Regulation 8.
4. The Convenor shall:
   (a) appoint a chair of the Committee
   (b) appoint at least two other persons to be members of the Committee
   (c) in consultation with the chair and the accused/appellant, decide whether the matter is best dealt with by hearing or correspondence
5. The chair and members of the Committee shall be persons who have had no previous major involvement in the matter under consideration. They shall not be excluded solely because they have heard a case against the accused/appellant before.
6. The chair or members of the Committee shall declare any sporting, personal or other relationship they have or had with any party to the case, and the accused/appellant may raise any objections to their involvement, but will not normally be excluded from consideration of a case unless that relationship is/was particularly close or the objection is a serious one. The BAFA Disciplinary Officer's decision is final.
7. The Convenor is not a member of the Regulatory Committee, but shall attend any hearing and be copied in on all correspondence relating to a matter. The Convenor's advice may be sought by the Committee or any party on interpretation of these regulations or any other matter relating to the proceedings.
8. Any BAFA Regulatory Committee business will normally be conducted by correspondence. Exceptionally, the BAFA Disciplinary Officer may decide that business will be conducted by means of a hearing attended by relevant parties. In either case, any reasonable technology may be used to facilitate the business and the input of the participants provided the principles of natural justice are maintained.
9. The costs of conducting a hearing or correspondence shall be borne by BAFA except:
   (a) where the costs of the hearing or correspondence are caused or increased due to a request or action by the accused/appellant; AND
   (b) the Committee finds against the accused/appellant

   In such cases, the Committee may order that the accused/appellant shall pay all or part of the costs.
10. All Regulatory Committee matters shall be dealt with as soon as is practically possible.

7.2. Procedures for reviewing cases

1. The BAFA Disciplinary Officer may, in exceptional circumstances where in his view a sanction imposed by a disciplinary authority is wholly inappropriate, appeal against the sanction imposed.
2. Additionally, in exceptional circumstances, where a participant or organisation has been cleared of the charges faced, the BAFA Disciplinary Officer shall have the right to appeal against that finding.

7.3. Appointments

1. The BAFA Disciplinary Officer and his deputies shall be appointed from time to time by the BAFA Board.
2. Where the BAFA Disciplinary Officer is unavailable for a significant period of time, or involved in a case as a complainant, one of his deputes shall act for him. The BAFA Board may make a temporary appointment if neither the Disciplinary Officer nor any of his deputies is available or able to act.
3. Members of the BAFA Regulatory Panel shall be appointed from time to time by the BAFA Board. Members of the Regulatory Panel may have specialisms in
   (a) discipline
   (b) registration
   (c) safeguarding
   (d) competitions
4. A Regulatory Committee shall, wherever practicable, include at least one member with the relevant specialism.
5. Wherever practicable, the chair and members of a BAFA Regulatory Committee shall be persons who have been trained in the Regulations and their application.

7.4. Notices

1. Any notice or other communication required to be given by a party pursuant to these Regulations must be given in writing and must be sent by first class post or transmitted by facsimile or e-mail. If sent by first class post, the notice or other communication shall be deemed to have been given on the "Working Day" following the day it is sent. If transmitted by facsimile or email before 5pm (London time) on a Working Day, the notice of communication shall be deemed to have been given on that Working Day. If transmitted on a non-Working Day, or at or after 5pm (London time) on a Working Day, the notice or other communication shall be deemed to have been given on the next Working Day.
2. A party's last-known residence, place of business, email address or facsimile number shall be a valid address for the purpose of any notice or other communication unless notification of a change to such address has been communicated to BAFA.
3. BAFA reserves the right to publicise the results of disciplinary cases via the media or its own publications. Such notices will normally be maintained for at least one year and no more than two years.

7.5. Evidence

1. All relevant data will be retained during any investigation and data collected during an investigation will be retained as supporting evidence in any regulatory process.
2. Evidence used in a regulatory cases will be retained for up to seven years or two years beyond the end of a suspension (whichever is longer) and then destroyed. This information will be kept for the purpose of informing decisions on repeat offences.
3. All retained evidence will be held securely. It will only be accessible by the BAFA Disciplinary Officer and his deputies.

8. Procedures for appeals

8.1. Scope of the appeal procedure

1. This procedure applies to the following:
   - appeals against fixed penalties issued in accordance with Regulation 3.3
   - appeals against other cases brought in accordance with the Code of Conduct (Regulation 3)
   - appeals against registration and safeguarding decisions (Regulation 2)
   - appeals against decisions made by competition authorities (Regulation 6)
   - applications for parole (Regulation 3.7)
   - appeals arising from decisions made under any other BAFA policy, procedure, rule or regulation

8.2. Form and deadline for appeals

1. A notice of appeal shall be notified to BAFA within the following timescale:

for appeals against fixed penalties arising from disqualification or removal from a game	before 9pm on the third day following the game
for appeals against other fixed penalties	before 9pm on the third day following notification in writing of the fixed penalty
for appeals against other disciplinary decisions	within 14 days following notification in writing of the verdict
for appeals against registration and safeguarding decisions	within 14 days following notification in writing of the decision
for appeals against decisions made by competition authorities	before 9pm on the third day following notification in writing of the decision or when no response has been received within 72 hours of a complaint to the competition authority
applications for parole	at any time after half a suspension has been served or after 5 years of a longer suspension
for other appeals	within 14 days following notification in writing of the decision

2. This notice must be in writing and contain or be accompanied by:
   (a) the appellant's name, address and relevant contact details (and date of birth if under 18)
   (b) what the appellant is appealing against, and what remedy they request
   (c) if applicable, an application to stay the execution of the decision appealed against, together with reasons
   (d) a £50 administration fee, which will be retained if the appeal is unsuccessful
3. Within 10 days of sending the notice, the appellant must submit a statement of appeal (failing which the appeal will be deemed to be withdrawn) containing or accompanied by:
   (a) a statement of the facts and relevant elements of the Regulations upon which the appellant is relying
   (b) copies of any evidence upon which the appellant is relying
4. Appeals that do not relate to any subsection of Regulation 8.2.7 (below), or specific appeal provisions of other Regulations, will be void.

5. Where an appeal is made against the decision(s) of a Regulatory Committee, that Committee shall make a submission to the Appeal Committee justifying its decision(s).
6. An Appeal Committee will be formed from members of the BAFA Regulatory Panel, excluding any involved previously in the case in question.
7. An Appeal Committee shall not substitute its judgement for that of any Regulatory Committee (or the SRP acting as a Regulatory Committee), except that it may:
   (a) Order that a Regulatory Committee shall reconsider a case in the light of new evidence that could not reasonably have been available to the Regulatory Committee at the time it considered the case.
   (b) Determine that the procedure in a regulatory case was conducted so incorrectly as to bring into reasonable doubt the finding of a case, and order that the case be reconsidered either by the original Regulatory Committee or by a new one.
   (c) Determine that the sanction imposed in a case was unreasonably severe or unreasonably lenient, and order that the case be referred back to the Regulatory Committee for a reasonable sanction to be imposed. (The Appeal Committee may recommend a reasonable sanction, or recommend a range within which a sanction would be thought reasonable).
8. A BAFA Appeal Committee shall not normally consider any case dealt with by a BAFA organisation until it has been dealt with by the final appeals process of that BAFA organisation. This can be waived with the agreement of the BAFA organisation concerned.
9. Any appeal against the decision of any BAFA Appeal Committee shall be made within 28 days to a tribunal of arbitrator(s) appointed in accordance with the Arbitration Rules (as amended from time to time) of Sport Resolutions (UK) (a trading name of The Sports Dispute Resolution Panel Ltd - Company No. 3351039). The Appeal shall be governed by the Arbitration Act 1996 and Sport Resolutions (UK)'s Appeal Arbitration Rules, which Rules are deemed to be incorporated by reference to this clause. The decision of the tribunal shall be final and binding on all concerned. BAFA may require an appellant to pay all or part of its costs should the arbitrator find against the appellant.

9. Grievance Procedure

9.1. Purpose and scope

1. The key aim of a grievance procedure is to provide an internal mechanism for dealing with concerns raised by any participant about their treatment whilst involved in BAFA sanctioned activity. It should aim to deal with these issues quickly, fairly, and at the lowest level possible within the organisation. The most satisfactory solution to a problem results when agreement is reached between a member and their immediate contact (possibly Head Coach or Team Manager). A genuine effort should therefore be made to resolve the matter at the first stage in a prompt and amicable way.
2. The scope of the procedure applies to BAFA participants plus the parents, guardians or representatives for children or adults at risk who are BAFA participants.
3. Examples of issues that may give rise to a grievance are listed below:

- Health and safety
- Relationships
- Coaching/Training practices
- Unfair treatment e.g. discrimination, bullying, harassment
- Any other form of unfair discrimination

9.2. Procedure

9.2.1. First Stage (Informal Resolution)

1. Raise the grievance with a person who has influence over the alleged perpetrator.
2. Most routine complaints and grievances are best resolved informally in discussion with a person with influence over the situation who is closest to the situation (possibly for example a Head Coach or Team Manager). Dealing with grievances in this way can often lead to speedy resolution of problems.
3. N.B. Even though this is an informal stage it may be helpful for both the complainant and the person who deals with it to keep a note of such a meeting.
4. Where the grievance cannot be resolved informally it should then be dealt with under the formal grievance procedure.

9.2.2. Second Stage (Formal Resolution)

1. The individual must put their grievance in writing. In particular they must detail the key issues that they are unhappy with and say if they want the matter dealt with in writing or at a hearing.
2. The appropriate Commission Lead in the new BAFA structure should deal with the grievance, unless it is against that individual. In this case the BAFA Director responsible for that area should deal with the grievance. The first step should be to immediately acknowledge receipt of the grievance.
3. When appropriate the BAFA Commission Lead/Director should arrange a grievance hearing at which the individual has the right to be accompanied by a friend, colleague or family member (who is not legally qualified). This meeting may be face to face but can if necessary be conducted by videoconferencing. The hearing should be arranged as quickly as possible.
4. It is the responsibility of the person hearing the grievance to respond in writing to the grievance within 7 working days of the hearing or, where no hearing has taken place, within 14 working days of receiving written notice of the grievance. If it is not possible to respond within the specified time period individuals will be given an explanation for the delay and told when a response can be expected.

9.2.3. Third Stage (Review/Appeal)

1. If the individual does not feel the matter has been resolved at stage two, they have the right to ask for a further review of the complaint.
2. In this case if a Commission Lead has dealt with Stage 2 then the BAFA Director responsible for the area concerned will deal with Stage 3. If a BAFA Director has considered Stage 2 then an alternative BAFA Director who has not previously been involved with the case will deal with Stage 3.
3. The individual should raise their grievance in writing within 7 working days of receipt of the decision made at Stage 2 being communicated to them and explain why they are appealing from the previous stage.

9.2.4. Final Decision

1. The Director, who handles the grievance review (Stage 3), must consider whether a review hearing is required. If a hearing is required, the individual must be informed within 7 days of the receipt of the review request when the hearing will take place (and their right to be accompanied).
2. If no hearing is required they must inform the individual in writing of their final decision within 14 working days of receipt of the written request for a review being received. If it

is not possible to respond within the specified time period individuals will be given an explanation for the delay and told when a response can be expected. The Director's decision at Stage 3 is the final stage in the grievance procedure.

9.3. Vexatious/Malicious Grievances

1. Malicious complaints are rare and individuals with genuine grievances are encouraged to bring them forward for resolution through this process.
2. Not all grievances will be upheld through the process. If an individual had genuine concerns and good reasons for bringing the complaint forward however, the rejection of the grievance does not automatically mean the complaint was malicious.
3. In cases where there is doubt about the motivation of a complainant then the benefit of that doubt will be given to the individual and the complaint will be considered to have been genuine.
4. There are unfortunately rare occasions where vexatious or malicious complaints are made. Such misuse of this procedure is in itself a form of bullying and harassment and will not be tolerated. Where there is clear evidence of such abuse of this process therefore BAFA will disallow the grievance and will consider referring the matter to the BAFA Disciplinary Officer for action for a breach of BAFA Regulations.

9.4. Advice and Confidentiality

1. At any stage any individual involved in this process may seek advice on this procedure from a BAFA Director who is not involved in the case. When seeking advice, the individual should request a confidential interview and refer to the Grievance procedure.
2. Those dealing with matters associated with this process will keep anything dealt with entirely confidential. As an organisation, BAFA takes these matters very seriously and all complaints raised through the process will be thoroughly investigated.
3. In order to complete their investigations, the investigating Commission Lead/Director will need to question the person who is the subject of the complaint — that person will be made aware of the details of the complaint against them in order to be able to put their view of the situation.
4. It may also be necessary to question witnesses. In such cases the witnesses will only be made aware of the information that is required to enable them to respond to the investigator's questions.

9.5. Precautionary action in cases of bullying or harassment

1. Where a complaint of bullying or harassment is made, the alleged offender will be removed from any activity involving the complainant on a precautionary basis. It is important that emphasis is given to the precautionary nature of this action — it is not in any way an indication of guilt being apportioned. It does not imply any prejudgement of the case and it must be made clear to all concerned that it is a precautionary measure.
2. In such cases it is essential that the complaint is thoroughly investigated and resolved as quickly as possible. Contact and the offer of support will be maintained with both the complainant and the alleged offender during this period.
3. The precautionary separation will be maintained until the internal grievance procedure is exhausted.

9.6. Disciplinary Action

1. In cases where the outcome of the grievance hearing requires the consideration of disciplinary action, the grievance procedure investigation will constitute the fact finding stage of that process.
2. In such cases the investigating Commission Lead/Director will refer the matter and the appropriate evidence to the BAFA Disciplinary Officer for immediate attention.
3. In cases where disciplinary action is being considered as a result of the outcome of the grievance, the complainant will be told about the intention to deal with the matter through the disciplinary process.

Grievance Procedure Summary

Individual Action	Response	Timescale
Individual verbally raises grievance with the a person with influence over the situation who is closest to the situation (possibly for example a Head Coach or Team Manager)	Coach/Team Manager should discuss matter and seek mutual agreement to resolve the matter	7 working days
If the matter is unresolved the individual should put the grievance in writing to a BAFA Commission Lead/Director asking for it to be dealt with in writing or requesting a hearing.	Commission Lead/Director arranges to hear the grievance in writing or at a hearing (advising the individual of their right to be accompanied) as appropriate.	If a hearing is requested it must be arranged as soon as possible.
Present grievance at grievance hearing or in writing.	Commission Lead/Director listens to/considers the grievance and undertakes any necessary further investigation and based on the evidence makes a decision. Prepares and sends written response to the Grievance and advises of right to seek a further review if the individual is not satisfied. If appropriate after the decision on the grievance is made the Commission Lead/Director instigates disciplinary action by referring the matter to the BAFA Disciplinary Officer.	Within 7 working days from grievance hearing. A response must be given within 14 working days of receipt of written grievance if it is dealt with in writing.

Individual Action	Response	Timescale
Individual notifies the Commission Lead/Director of request for review in writing and give reasons for their request for the decision to be reviewed.		Within 7 working days of receipt of the Stage 2 decision letter
	Commission Lead/Director to arrange review at Stage 3	Within 7 working days of receipt of review request letter
Individual presents reasons for requested review at hearing or in writing	Director conducts review (including if necessary further investigation) and considers findings. Sends written response of final decision to employee	Within 7 working days of review hearing or within 14 days of receiving the request for a review if it is dealt with in writing.

Important

If during any stage of investigation BAFA determines an act to be potentially unlawful, we withhold the right to immediately suspend the Grievance process and request the complainant to approach the appropriate law enforcement agency (with our support). This is necessary because any further action from BAFA may hinder a potential criminal investigation. If legal proceedings do not result from the complaint BAFA will recommence the grievance process at the request of the complainant.

Rules and Interpretations

Rules

BAFA Football Rules and Interpretations have been designated as either administrative rules or conduct rules. Typically, administrative rules are those dealing with preparation for the contest. Conduct rules are those that have to do directly with the playing of the contest. Some administrative rules (as indicated) may be altered by the mutual consent of the competing teams. Others (as indicated) are unalterable. No conduct rule may be changed by mutual consent. All BAFA-affiliated teams are required to conduct their competitive contests according to these rules.

Administrative rules that may be altered by mutual consent of the competing teams include (denoted ∅ in the text):

1-2-5-f-3	1-2-5-f-4	1-4-12-a	3-2-1-b	3-2-2-a	13-5-5-c

Some rules may be altered by game management without mutual consent of the opponents. These are contained in Rules (denoted □ in the text):

1-2-1-f	1-2-1-g	1-2-1-h	1-2-1-i	1-2-1-j	1-2-1-k	1-2-4-e
1-2-4-h	1-2-5-c	1-2-7-c	1-2-7-d	1-2-7-f	3-2-4-a	3-2-4-b
13-3-1	13-3-2	13-4-1-d	13-6-3-a	13-6-3-b		

Some rules may be altered by game management without consent, but only if it is not feasible to meet the rule. Teams are encouraged to meet the standards specified by rule wherever possible. These are contained in Rules (denoted § in the text):

1-2-1-a-2	1-2-1-a-4	1-2-1-b	1-2-1-c	1-2-1-d	1-2-3-a	1-2-3-c
1-2-5-a	1-2-5-b	1-2-6	1-2-9-d	1-3-2-b	1-4-13	3-2-1-c

Some administrative rules allow competitions to stipulate in their regulations what course of action is to be followed. (A national federation may decide the policy for all competitions under its jurisdiction.) These are Rules (denoted ∇ in the text):

1-3-2-e-3	1-4-5-b-1	3-1-3	3-2-1	3-3-2	3-3-3-c	3-3-3-d
3-3-8-b-3	13-4-1-a	13-9-3				

Other administrative rules may not be altered. The referee shall make a report to the appropriate authority if these rules are infringed (denoted # in the text):

1-1-1-a	1-1-2	1-1-3-a	1-1-3-b	1-1-4	1-1-5	1-1-6
1-1-7-a	1-1-7-b	1-1-7-c	1-2-1-a-1	1-2-1-a-3	1-2-1-a-5	1-2-1-a-6
1-2-1-e	1-2-1-l	1-2-1-m	1-2-1-n	1-2-1-o	1-2-2	1-2-3-b
1-2-4-a	1-2-4-b	1-2-4-c	1-2-4-d	1-2-4-f	1-2-4-g	1-2-5-a-1
1-2-5-c	1-2-5-d	1-2-5-e	1-2-5-f	1-2-7	1-2-7-a	1-2-7-b
1-2-7-e	1-2-8-a	1-2-8-b	1-2-8-c	1-2-8-d	1-2-8-e	1-2-9-a
1-2-9-b	1-2-9-c	1-2-9-e	1-3-1-a	1-3-1-b	1-3-1-c	1-3-1-d
1-3-1-e	1-3-1-f	1-3-1-g	1-3-1-h	1-3-1-i	1-3-2-c	1-3-2-d
1-3-2-e	1-3-2-e-1	1-3-2-e-2	1-3-2-i	1-4-5-b-1	1-4-9	1-4-9-a
1-4-9-b	1-4-9-c	1-4-9-d	1-4-9-e	1-4-11-a	1-4-11-a-1	1-4-11-a-2
1-4-11-a-3	1-4-11-b	1-4-11-c	1-4-11-d	1-4-11-e	1-4-11-g	1-4-12
3-2-1-d	3-2-1-e	11-1-1	11-2-1	13-1-1-a	13-1-1-b	13-1-1-c
13-1-2-a	13-1-2-b	13-2-1-a	13-2-1-b	13-2-1-c	13-2-1-d	13-2-2

13-3-3-b	13-3-3-c	13-3-4	13-4-1	13-4-1-c	13-4-3-b	13-4-4
13-5-1-a	13-5-1-b	13-5-2-a	13-5-3	13-5-5-a	13-5-5-b	13-5-5-d
13-5-6-b	13-6-1-a	13-6-1-b	13-6-2-a	13-6-2-b	13-7-1	13-7-1-a
13-7-1-b	13-7-1-c	13-7-2	13-7-2-b	13-7-2-c	13-7-2-d	13-8-1-a
13-8-1-b	13-9-1	13-9-2	13-9-4	13-9-5	13-9-6	13-9-7
13-9-8-a	13-9-8-b	13-9-8-c				

All other rules are conduct rules and may not be altered.

Interpretations

A rule interpretation, also known as an approved ruling (A.R.), is an official decision on a given statement of facts. It serves to illustrate the spirit and application of the rule.

The Football Code, which appears in the Official Football Rules and Interpretations, should be studied carefully so the accepted conduct and practices are understood by all persons associated with British American football.

Jim Briggs, Rules Editor

RULE 1

The Game, Field, Players and Equipment

SECTION 1. General Provisions

The Game

ARTICLE 1. a. # The game shall be played between two teams of not more than 11 players each, on a rectangular field and with an inflated ball having the shape of a prolate spheroid.

b. A team legally may play with fewer than 11 players, but a foul for an illegal formation occurs if the following requirements are not met:

1. When the ball is free-kicked, at least four Team A players are on each side of the kicker (Rule 6-1-2-c-3).
2. At the snap, at least five players wearing jerseys numbered 50 through 79 are on the offensive scrimmage line and no more than four players are in the backfield (Rules 2-21-2, 2-27-4 and 7-1-4-a) (***Exception:*** Rule 7-1-4-a-5). (**A.R. 7-1-4:IV-VI**)

Goal Lines

ARTICLE 2. # Goal lines, one for each team, shall be established at opposite ends of the field of play, and each team shall be allowed opportunities to advance the ball across the other team's goal line by running, passing or kicking it.

Winning Team and Final Score

ARTICLE 3. a. # The teams shall be awarded points for scoring according to rule and, unless the game is forfeited, the team having the larger score at the end of the game shall be the winning team.

b. # When the referee declares that the game is ended, the score is final.

Game Officials

ARTICLE 4. # The game shall be played under the supervision of the game officials.

Team Captains

ARTICLE 5. # Each team shall designate to the referee not more than four players as its field captain(s). One player at a time shall speak for his team in all dealings with the officials.

Persons Subject to the Rules

ARTICLE 6. # a. All persons subject to the rules are governed by the decisions of the officials.

b. Those persons subject to the rules are: everyone in the team area, players, substitutes, replaced players, coaches, athletics trainers, cheerleaders, band members, mascots, public-address announcers, audio and video system operators, and other persons affiliated with the teams.

c. The names of everyone in the team area shall appear on a roster form which shall be given to the referee before kickoff.

Teams Subject to the Rules

ARTICLE 7. a. # Teams that are members of BAFA or affiliated competitions shall conduct all contests in Great Britain under the official football-playing rules of the Association (***Exception:*** games played under the auspices of an international organisation).

b. # BAFA-affiliated officiating organisations shall use the current Manual of Football Officiating published under the jurisdiction of IAFOA.

c. # Teams not complying with football-playing rules that do not have a designated penalty are subject to competition and/or BAFA sanctions.

SECTION 2. The Field

Dimensions and Markings

ARTICLE 1. The field shall be a rectangular area with dimensions, lines, zones, goals and pylons as indicated in Appendix D.

a. Where it is not possible to fully mark the field as indicated:
   1. # The marking of the following lines is mandatory: sidelines, end lines, goal lines, yard lines at 5-yard intervals, hash marks.
   2. § Where the size of the stadium does not permit a full-sized field to be marked:
      (a) The end zones must be a minimum of 7 and a maximum of 13 yards in depth and equal in size.
      (b) It is strongly recommended that the end zones be marked to the depth of 10 yards specified by rule, and that if necessary to accommodate this, the distance between the goal lines should be reduced to 90 yards or less.
      (c) The distance between the goal lines must be a whole multiple of 10 yards.
      (d) If the marked end zones are found to be less than 7 yards deep, the referee shall order the 5-yard line be used as the goal line and the length of the field of play reduced accordingly.
   3. # The field of play shall be marked to a length of not less than 80 yards. The field of play shall be marked to a width of 160 feet.
   4. § Where the size of the stadium does not permit a full-sized field to be marked, game management may use an *IFAF yard* as the unit of measurement.
   5. # An IFAF yard is normally 36 inches (91.44cm) long, but may be shortened to no less than 34.12 inches (86.67cm) only if necessary to fit a 100-yard field of play plus two 10-yard end zones within the available playing surface.
   6. # If the length of the field is reduced by an IFAF yard factor, all other field dimensions and markings stated in these rules shall be reduced commensurately (***Exception:*** The length of the hash marks and the width of lines). The length of the yardage chain (Rule 1-2-7) shall also be reduced to correspond to the markings on the field.

b. § All field-dimension lines shown should be white and 4 inches in width. (***Exceptions:*** Sidelines and end lines may exceed 4 inches in width, goal lines may be 4 or 8 inches in width, and Rule 1-2-1-h).

c. § Twenty-four-inch short yard-line extensions, four inches inside the sidelines and at the hash marks, are mandatory and all yard lines shall be four inches from the sidelines (Rule 2-12-6).

d. § A solid white area between the sideline and the coaching line is recommended.

e. # White field markings or contrasting decorative markings (e.g. team names) are permissible in the end zones but shall not be closer than four feet to any line.

f. □ Contrasting colouring in the end zones may abut any line.

g. □ Only these contrasting decorative markings are allowed: competition logo, and team name and logo. These are permissible within the sidelines and between the goal lines, under these conditions: (See Appendix D):

1. The entirety of all yard lines, goal lines and sidelines must be clearly visible. No portion of any such line may be obscured by decorative markings.
2. No such markings may touch or enclose the hash marks or numbers.
3. A single decorative marking, centered on the midfield line, and a maximum of four smaller flanking decorative markings are allowed.

h. □ Goal lines may be of one contrasting colour from the white lines.

i. □ Advertising is permissible on the field, providing it meets the requirements of Rules 1-2-1-e, 1-2-1-f and 1-2-1-g.

j. □ White field yard-line numbers not larger than 6 feet in height and 4 feet in width, with the tops of the numbers nine yards from the sidelines, are recommended.

k. □ White directional arrows next to the field numbers (except at midfield) indicating the direction toward the nearest goal line are recommended. The arrow is a triangle with an 18-inch base and two sides that are 36 inches each.

l. # The two hash marks are 60 feet from the sidelines. Hash marks and short yard-line extensions should measure 24 inches in length.

m. # Nine-yard marks 12 inches in length, every 10 yards, shall be located nine yards from the sidelines. They are not required if the field is numbered according to Rule 1-2-1-j.

STOP, REPORT & SANCTION – Under no circumstances may the game commence, nor proceed if suspended. BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **One or both sidelines is incomplete.**
- **One or both goal lines is incomplete.**
- **One or both end lines is incomplete.**
- **One or more yard lines across the field every 5 yards is incomplete.**
- **The hash marks are incomplete.**
- **The short yard-line extensions at the sideline are incomplete.**

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **End zones smaller than 7 yards or bigger than 13 yards in depth, or where the end zones are not of equal size.**
- **Field of play less than 80 yards in length.**
- **Field of play not a multiple of 10 yards in length.**
- **Field of play not 160 feet in width.**
- **White field markings closer than four feet to an end zone line.**
- **Absence of nine-yard marks if the field is not numbered according to Rule 1-2-1-j.**

n. # In an indoor stadium, the roof shall be no less than 90 feet above the field.

o. # If played in a stadium with a retractable roof, game management shall decide 90 minutes before kickoff whether to play the game with the roof open or closed. The roof must be closed if (from 90 minutes before the game until the end of the game) precipitation or lightning is within the vicinity of the stadium, the temperature drops below 40°F (4°C), or wind gusts are greater than 40 miles per hour (64 km/h). Once the roof is closed, it is not allowed to be reopened during the game.

Marking Boundary Areas

ARTICLE 2. # Measurements shall be from the inside edges of the boundary markings. The entire width of each goal line is in the end zone.

Limit Lines

ARTICLE 3. a. § Limit lines should be marked with 12-inch lines and at 24-inch intervals 18 feet outside the sidelines and the end lines, except in stadiums where the total field surface does not permit. In these stadiums, the limit lines shall not be less than six feet from the sidelines and end lines. Limit lines should be 4 inches in width and may be yellow. Limit lines designating team areas shall be solid lines.

b. # No person outside the team area shall be inside the limit lines. Game management personnel have the responsibility and the authority to enforce this rule.

c. § Limit lines shall also be marked six feet from the team area around the side and back of the team area, if the stadium permits.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **Game management fail to enforce rule regarding persons outside the team area.**
- **Limit lines closer than six feet to any boundary line.**

Team Area and Coaching Box

ARTICLE 4. a. # On each side of the field, a team area behind the limit line and between the 25-yard lines shall be marked for the exclusive use of substitutes, athletics trainers and other persons affiliated with the team. The front of the coaching box shall be marked with a solid line six feet outside the sideline between the 25-yard lines. The area between the coaching line and the limit line between the 25-yard lines should contain white diagonal lines or be marked distinctly for use of coaches (Rule 9-2-5). A 4-inch-by-4-inch mark is recommended at each five-yard line extended between the goal lines as an extension of the coaching line for line-to-gain and down indicator six-foot reference points.

b. # The team area shall be limited to persons named on the team roster including squad members in full uniform and a maximum of 25 other individuals directly involved in the game. All persons in the team area are subject to the rules and are governed by decisions of the officials (Rule 1-1-6). No other credential is valid for the team area.

c. # Coaches are permitted in the coaching box (see Appendix D), which is the area bounded by the limit line and coaching line between the 25-yard lines.

d. # The team areas shall be marked between the 25-yard lines irrespective of the length of the field.

e. □ In stadiums where the playing enclosure does not permit the team areas to be marked on both sides of the field, both teams may share a common sideline. In this case the team areas shall be marked on either side of midfield between the five-yard line and the line five yards from midfield.

f. # No media personnel, including journalists, radio and television personnel, or their equipment, shall be in the team area or coaching box, and no media personnel shall communicate in any way with persons in the team area or coaching box. In stadiums where the team area extends to the spectator seating area, a pass-through area should be made available for media to move from one end of the field to the other on both sides of the field.

g. # Game management personnel shall remove all persons not authorised by rule.

h. □ Practice kicking nets are not permitted outside the team area (***Exception:*** In stadiums where playing enclosures are limited in size, nets, holders and kickers are permitted outside the team area and outside the limit line) (Rule 9-2-1-b-1).

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
- **Absence of coaching line, team area markings, or team area not marked to 25-yard lines.**
- **Media personnel in team area or coaching box.**
- **Persons in team area not wearing proper credentials.**
- **Game management failure to remove unauthorised persons from team area.**
- **Practice kicking nets outside the team area (except where permitted).**

Goals

ARTICLE 5.

a. § Each goal shall consist of two uprights extending at least 30 feet above the ground with a connecting horizontal crossbar, the top of which is 10 feet above the ground. The uprights and crossbar should be white or yellow in colour. The inside of the uprights and crossbar should be in the same vertical plane as the inside edge of the end line. Each goal is out of bounds (see Appendix D).

STOP, REPORT & SANCTION – Under no circumstances may the game commence, nor proceed if suspended. BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
- **Goal posts inbounds.**

1. # Regardless of the position of the goal posts, the size of the end zone or the distance between the goal lines, the snap on a try play shall be made from any point on or behind Team B's 3-yard line (Rule 8-3-2-c).

b. § Above the crossbar, the uprights should be white or yellow and 18 feet, six inches apart inside to inside.

c. # The designated uprights and crossbar shall be free of decorative material (***Exception:*** □ 4-inch-by-42-inch orange or red wind directional streamers at the top of the uprights are permitted).

d. # The height of the crossbar shall be measured from the top of each end of the crossbar to the ground directly below.

e. # Goal posts shall be padded with resilient material from the ground to a height of at least six feet. Advertising is permitted on the goals. One manufacturer's logo or trademark or an advertisement is permitted on each goal post pad. Team and competition logos are allowed. All padding is out of bounds.

f. # The following procedure will be adopted when one or both goals are missing or have been taken down and the original goals are not available for a try or field goal attempt:

1. If a portable goal is available, it shall be erected or held in place at the request of Team A.
2. If a portable goal is not available but one goal is in place:
   (a) On all scrimmage plays, Team B shall defend the end of the field where the goal is situated.
   (b) On all free kick plays, Team A shall defend the end of the field where the goal is situated.
   (c) After a change of possession, the teams will change ends if necessary so that Team B is defending the end where the goal is situated.
   (d) There will be no change of ends at the end of the first or third periods (one minute timeout only). Captains will not have the option to select which goal line to defend at the beginning of a half.
3. ∅ Alternatively, if one goal is (or becomes) missing or unusable, the game may proceed (or resume) without using the other goal, if both head coaches agree. In

these circumstances no further field goals shall be scored. Once stated, the coaches' decisions as to whether to proceed without goals shall be irrevocable.

4. ∅ If no goals are available, the game may be played if both head coaches agree. In these circumstances no field goals shall be scored. If one or both head coaches do not wish to play, then the game shall be abandoned. Once stated, the coaches' decisions as to whether to start/continue shall be irrevocable.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **Uprights less than 20 feet in height.**
- **Crossbar not 10 feet above ground.**
- **Goal not 18 feet six inches wide.**
- **Goal not in plane of end line.**
- **Decorative material on the posts or crossbar (other than streamers).**
- **Padding on goal posts absent or less than six feet in height.**
- **One or both goals missing or taken down.**

REPORT – Coaches agree to play without goals.

Approved Ruling 1-2-5

I. Upon inspection of the field it is noted that goals with offset uprights are being used. The plane of the goal is one yard within the end zone and the post is one yard outside it. **RULING:** Legal. The goal post is not inbounds.

Pylons

ARTICLE 6. § Soft flexible four-sided pylons 4 inches by 4 inches with an overall height of 18 inches, which may include a two-inch space between the bottom of the pylon and the ground, are recommended. They should be red or orange in colour. One manufacturer's logo or trademark is permitted on each pylon. Team logos, competition logos and the name/commercial logo of the title sponsor of the game are also allowed. Any such marking may not extend more than 3 inches on any side. They are placed at the inside corners of the eight intersections of the sidelines with the goal lines and end lines. The pylons marking the intersections of the end lines and hash marks extended shall be placed three feet off the end lines.

a. A displaced pylon is one that is no longer in its proper position. Unless it is obvious that at least some part of the pylon is touching the ground in the 4-inch by 4-inch square that is its proper position, the pylon is no longer a pylon for the purposes of the rules (e.g. Rule 8-2-1-a). A displaced pylon may be restored to its proper position at any time.

b. Touching a displaced pylon that is partially or completely out of bounds makes the ball or player out of bounds (Rule 4-2).

c. A displaced pylon that is completely inbounds is no longer a pylon and is to be considered as part of the playing surface.

d. A displaced goal line pylon that is partially in its proper position is still to be regarded as a goal line pylon for the purposes of the rules.

e. If a goal line pylon cannot be stood upright, it should be positioned so that it lies on the goal line extended out of bounds with its base covering the sideline.

f. If an end line pylon cannot be stood upright, it should be positioned so that it lies on the sideline extended out of bounds with its base covering the end line.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **Illegal pylons that had to be removed.**

Line-to-Gain and Down Indicators

ARTICLE 7. # The official line-to-gain (yardage chain) and down indicators shall be operated approximately six feet outside the sideline, except in stadiums where the total playing enclosure does not permit. These must be operated on the side of the field opposite the press box.

a. # The yardage chain shall join two rods not less than five feet high, the rods' inside edges being exactly 10 yards apart when the chain is fully extended.

b. # The down indicator shall be mounted on a rod not less than five feet high operating approximately six feet outside the sideline opposite the press box.

c. □ An unofficial auxiliary line-to-gain indicator and an unofficial down indicator six feet outside the other sideline are recommended.

d. □ Unofficial red or orange non-slip line-to-gain ground markers positioned off the sidelines on both sides of the field are recommended. Markers are rectangular, weighted material 10 inches by 32 inches. A triangle with an altitude of five inches is attached to the rectangle at the end toward the sideline.

e. # All line-to-gain and down-indicator rods shall have flat ends.

f. □ Advertising is permitted on the down and line-to-gain indicators. One manufacturer's logo or trademark is permitted on each indicator. Team and competition logos are allowed.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **Rods not of minimum height or not with flat ends.**
- **Repeated breakages of the line-to-gain or down indicators.**
- **Failure to provide line-to-gain or down indicators.**

Markers or Obstructions

ARTICLE 8. a. # All markers and obstructions within the playing enclosure shall be placed or constructed in such a manner as to avoid any possible hazard to players. This includes anything dangerous to anyone at the limit lines.

b. # After the officials' pregame inspection of the playing enclosure, the referee shall order removed any hazardous obstructions or markers located inside the limit lines.

c. # The referee shall report to game management personnel any markers or obstructions constituting a hazard within the playing enclosure but outside the limit lines. Final determination of corrective action shall be the responsibility of game management personnel.

d. # After the officials have completed their pregame inspection of the playing enclosure, it is the responsibility of game management personnel to ensure that the playing enclosure remains safe throughout the game.

e. # Yardage line markers must be placed at least 12 feet outside the sidelines and should be collapsible and constructed in such a manner as to avoid any possible hazard to players. Markers which do not conform to this standard shall be removed. Advertising on yardage line markers is permitted.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **Markers that are not constructed and/or placed to avoid hazard and had to be removed.**

Field Surface

ARTICLE 9. a. # No material or device shall be used to improve or degrade the playing surface or other conditions and give one player or team an advantage (***Exception:*** Rules 2-16-4-b and 2-16-4-c).

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot [S27: APS].

b. # The referee may require any improvement in the field necessary for proper and safe game administration.

REPORT – Any improvement effected by the referee.

c. # The referee shall not allow the game to commence if there is any trip hazard inbounds or within six feet of the boundary lines. A trip hazard is defined to be any change of height of one inch or more in the space of one inch or less, with the exception of holes less than two inches in diameter.

STOP, REPORT & SANCTION – Under no circumstances may the game commence, nor proceed if suspended. BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
• Trip hazard(s).

d. § In stadia where discus circles or other objects present a different playing surface, it is strongly recommended that the field of play be shortened to avoid different surfaces in the field of play or end zones.

e. # The referee should make every effort to play the game at the place and time specified, and to make a report to the appropriate authority as soon as possible afterwards. However, if the markings and facilities available on a field are, in the judgement of the referee, so inadequate as to call into question the validity of the game or the safety of players, spectators or officials, then the game shall not proceed unless and until an improvement has been effected.

STOP, REPORT & SANCTION – Under no circumstances may the game commence, nor proceed if suspended. BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
• Markings or facilities inadequate for game to proceed.

SECTION 3. The Ball

Specifications

ARTICLE 1. The ball shall meet the following specifications:

a. # New or nearly new. (A nearly new ball is a ball that has not been altered and retains the properties and qualities of a new ball.)

b. # Cover consisting of four panels of pebble-grained leather without corrugations other than seams.

c. # One set of eight equally spaced lacings.

d. # Natural tan colour.

e. # Two 1-inch white stripes that are 3 to 3¼ inches from the end of the ball and located only on the two panels adjacent to the laces.

f. # Conforms to maximum and minimum dimensions and shape indicated in the accompanying diagram.

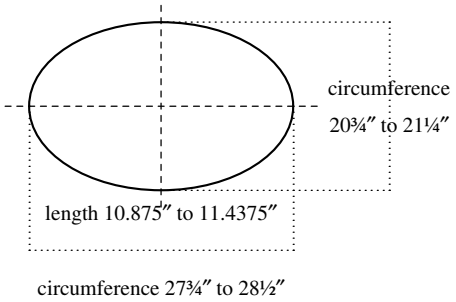


Diagram showing the longitudinal cross section of the standard ball. Maximum and minimum dimensions are used. This diagram is printed in order to secure uniformity in manufacture.

g. # Inflated to the pressure of 12½ to 13½ pounds per square inch (psi).

h. # Weight of 14 to 15 ounces.

i. # The ball may not be altered. This includes the use of any ball-drying or ball-warming substance. Mechanical ball-drying and ball-warming devices are not permitted near the sidelines or in the team area.

Administration and Enforcement

ARTICLE 2. a. The game officials shall test and be sole judge of not fewer than three and not more than six balls offered for play before and during the game. The game officials may approve additional balls if warranted by conditions.

b. § Game◊ management should provide a pressure pump and measuring device.

c. # Unless provided by the competition authority, the home team shall provide a minimum of three legal balls and should notify the opponent of the ball to be used. The opponent may provide one or more legal balls in addition to those supplied by the home team if they wish to do so.

d. # During the entire game, both teams shall use only balls that meet the required specifications and have been measured and tested according to rule.

e. # All balls to be used must be presented to the referee for testing at least 60 minutes before the start of the game. Once the teams have presented the game balls to the referee, they remain under the general supervision of the officials throughout the game.

1. # The referee's first priority is to have three legal balls. If the competition authority or the home team does not provide at least three legal balls, the referee shall inform the away team and offer them the opportunity to provide legal balls. If fewer than three legal balls are provided, the game will proceed with only the legal ball(s) being used. If no legal balls are provided, the referee shall select up to three balls which in his judgement are the best available.

2. # When more than three legal balls are presented, the referee shall select the balls in best condition from those presented by both teams.

3. ∇ Where competition regulations mandate the use of balls of a particular manufacture, and more than three legal balls are presented to the referee, the referee shall only select balls of another manufacture if there are fewer than three legal balls of the mandated manufacture.

f. When the ball becomes dead outside the nine-yard marks/top of numbers, is unfit for play, is subject to measurement in a side zone or is inaccessible, a replacement ball shall be obtained from a ball person. (**A.R. 1-3-2:I-II**)

g. The referee or umpire shall determine the legality of each ball before it is put in play.

h. The following procedures shall be used when measuring a ball:
   1. All measurements shall be made after the ball is legally inflated.
   2. The long circumference shall be measured around the ends of the ball but not over the laces.
   3. The long diameter shall be measured with callipers from end to end but not in the nose indentation.
   4. The short circumference shall be measured around the ball, over the valve, over the lace, but not over the cross lace.

i. # In wet conditions (or if the referee deems that conditions warrant it), game management must provide towels for the ball persons to use to keep the ball dry for both teams. If game management fails to provide sufficient towels, the teams may provide additional ones.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
- **Home team provides fewer than three legal balls.**
- **No towels are provided when conditions warrant it.**
- **Balls do not have white stripes.**

Approved Ruling 1-3-2

I. On fourth down, kicker A1 enters the field with an approved game ball and asks the referee to substitute it for the ball used during the previous down. **RULING:** Substitution of the ball is not permitted. [Cited by 1-3-2-f]

II. The referee selected from those offered before the game two of the home team's balls and one of the away team's. After a change of possession, the away team asks for its ball to be used in place of one of the other two. **RULING:** The request is denied. Once the referee has selected the game balls to be used, neither team may request that a particular ball be used in a particular situation. [Cited by 1-3-2-f]

Marking Balls

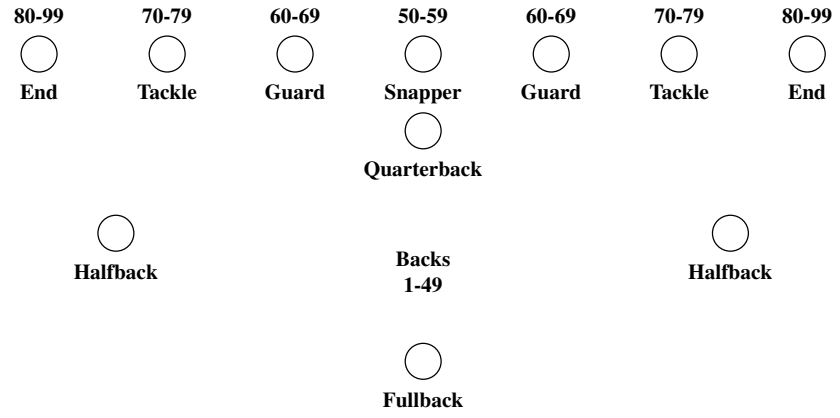
ARTICLE 3. Marking a ball indicating a preference for any player or any situation is prohibited.

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Fifteen yards from the previous spot [S27: UC-UNS].

SECTION 4. Players and Playing Equipment

Recommended Numbering

ARTICLE 1. It is strongly recommended that offensive players be numbered according to the following diagram that shows one of many offensive formations:



Players' Numbering

ARTICLE 2. a. All players shall be numbered 1 through 99. Any number preceded by zero (“0”) is illegal.

b. No two players of the same team shall participate in the same down wearing identical numbers.

c. Markings in the vicinity of the numbers are not permitted.

PENALTY – [a-c] Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot [S23: IPN].

d. When a player enters the game after changing his jersey number, he must report to the referee, who then informs the opposing head coach and announces the change. A player who enters the game after changing his number and does not report commits a foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. (**A.R. 1-4-2:I**)

PENALTY – [d] Live-ball foul. 15 yards from the previous spot [S27: UC-UNS]. Flagrant offenders shall be disqualified [S47: DSQ].

Approved Ruling 1-4-2

I. The Team A player who started the game wearing jersey number 77 enters the game wearing number 88. **RULING:** The player must report to the referee who, without stopping the game or play clock, uses his microphone to announce the change and the relevant flank official informs the opposing head coach. If A88 fails to report it is a foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. [Cited by 1-4-2-d]

Mandatory equipment

ARTICLE 3. All players must wear the following mandatory equipment:

a. Helmet.

b. Hip pads.

c. Jersey.

d. Knee pads.

e. Mouthpiece.

f. Pants.

g. Shoulder pads.

h. Socks.

i. Thigh guards.

Specifications: Mandatory Equipment

ARTICLE 4. a. *Helmets*.

1. The helmet must be fitted with a facemask and a secured four- or six-point chin strap, all points of which must be secured whenever the ball is in play.
2. Helmets for all players of a team should be of the same colour and design.
3. Helmets must carry a warning label regarding the risk of injury and a manufacturer's or reconditioner's certification indicating satisfaction of National Operating Committee on Standards for Athletic Equipment (NOCSAE) test standards. Reconditioned helmets shall show recertification to indicate satisfaction with the NOCSAE test standard.
4. So called "youth" helmets are designed for very young players. It is strongly recommended that players should be wearing "adult" helmets from the age of 12-14 upwards.

b. *Hip pads*. Hip pads must include a tailbone protector.

c. *Jersey*. See Rule 1-4-5.

d. *Knee pads*. Knee pads must be covered by pants. Furthermore, the pants and knee pads must cover the knees. No pads or protective equipment may be worn outside the pants. (See Appendix E.)

e. *Mouthpiece*. The mouthpiece must be an intra-oral device of any readily visible colour. It must not be white or transparent. It must be made with FDA-approved base materials (FDCS) and cover all upper teeth. It is recommended that the mouthpiece be properly fitted.

f. *Pants*. Players of a team should wear pants of the same colour and design.

g. *Shoulder pads*. There are no specifications for shoulder pads. (See Appendix E.)

h. *Socks*. Players of a team must wear socks or leg coverings that should be identical in colour and design. (***Exception:*** Unaltered knee braces, tape or a bandage to protect or prevent an injury, and barefoot kickers)

i. *Thigh guards*. There are no specifications for thigh guards. (See Appendix E.)

Approved Ruling 1-4-4

l. A player or players of a team wear(s) tights (with stirrups) that cover their legs. **RULING:** Legal. All other squad members of this team also must wear tights or knee-length socks of the same colour. All squad members of a team should wear socks or leg coverings that are identical in colour and design. All squad members of a team may wear short socks of the same colour and design.

Jersey Design, Colour and Numerals

ARTICLE 5. a. Design

1. The jersey must have sleeves that completely cover the shoulder pads. It must not be altered or designed to tear. The jersey should be full-length and tucked into the pants or made even with the waist line. It must cover all pads worn at or above the waist. Vests and/or a second jersey worn concurrently during the game are prohibited.
2. Other than the player's numbers, the jersey may only contain:
   - Player's name;
   - Team name;
   - Mascot name;
   - Sleeve stripes;
   - Logo for team, competition mascot, game memorial, or the military;
   - Authorised advertising material;
   - The letter "C" to identify a team captain; or
   - The team's national flag.
3. Any item in paragraph 2 must not exceed 16 square inches in area (i.e., rectangle, square, parallelogram), including any additional material (e.g. patch).
4. A border around the collar and cuffs not more than 1 inch wide is permissible, as is a maximum 4-inch stripe along the side seam (insert from the underarm to pants top).
5. Jerseys may not be taped or tied in any manner.

b. Colour.

1. # ∇ Players of opposing teams shall wear jerseys of contrasting colours. In the event of a clash, the home team shall have first choice of colour (including white). The Competition Authority may determine that the away team shall have first choice of colour. Players on the same team shall wear jerseys of the same colour and design.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

• Both teams are playing in the same predominant jersey colour.

• Players of a team not wearing jerseys of the same colour and design.

(A.R. 1-4-7:III)

2. If a coloured jersey contains white, it may appear only as any of the items listed in paragraph a-2 above.

c. Numerals.

1. The jersey must have clearly visible, permanent Arabic numerals measuring at least 8 and 10 inches in height front and back, respectively. The number must be of a colour that itself is clearly in distinct contrast with the colour of the jersey, irrespective of any border around the number.
2. Teams wearing jerseys/numerals that do not conform to this rule will be asked to change into legal jerseys before the game and before the start of each quarter until the jerseys are changed.

PENALTY – Officials shall charge a team timeout (or a delay penalty if all timeouts have been used) at the start of each quarter the illegal jerseys are worn. (A.R. 1-4-5:I) [S23: IJY]

3. All players of a team should have the same colour and style numbers front and back. The individual bars must be approximately 1½ inches wide. Numbers on any part of the uniform shall correspond with the mandatory front and back jersey numbers.

Approved Ruling 1-4-5

I. The home team is wearing red jerseys with orange numerals. In the judgment of the officials, the numerals and the body of the jersey do not contrast enough to make the numbers readily visible. The referee asks the home team head coach to change to a legal jersey. The head coach tells the referee that his team will not change into different jerseys. The referee informs the head coach that his team will be charged a timeout at the beginning of each quarter that the illegal jerseys are worn. **RULING:** After the ball is declared ready for play for the opening kickoff, the referee charges the home team with a timeout for illegal equipment. For each quarter that they continue to wear the jerseys, the team is charged with a timeout after the ball is declared ready for play and before the ball is put in play for the first play of that quarter. [Cited by 1-4-5 Penalty]

Optional equipment

ARTICLE 6. The following items are legal:

a. *Towels and hand warmers*.

1. Solid colour towels no smaller than 4 inches by 12 inches and no larger than 6 inches by 12 inches with no words, symbols, letters, or numbers. Towels may bear the team logo. They may also contain a single manufacturer's or distributor's normal label or trademark not to exceed 2-¼ square inches in area. Towels that are not a solid colour are not permitted.
2. Hand warmers worn during inclement weather.

b. *Gloves*.

1. A glove is a fitted covering for a hand having separate sections for each finger and thumb, without any additional material that connects any of the fingers and/or thumb, and that completely covers each finger and thumb. There is no restriction on the colour of gloves.
2. Gloves should have a securely attached label or stamp ("NF/NCAA Specifications") indicating voluntary compliance with appropriate test specifications on file with either the Sports and Fitness Industry Association (SFIA) or the National Operating Committee on Standards for Athletic Equipment (NOCSAE), unless made of unaltered plain cloth.

c. *Eye shields*. Eye shields must be clear, not tinted, and made from moulded or rigid material. Eyeglasses and goggles also must be clear and not tinted. No medical exceptions are allowed.

d. *Insignia*.
   1. Persons or events may be memorialised by an insignia with an area not greater than 2.25 square inches on the uniform or helmet.
   2. Team decals and advertising are allowed on helmets.

e. *Eye shade*. Any shading under a player's eyes must be solid black with no words, numbers, logos or other symbols.

f. *Game information*. Any player may have written game information on the wrist or arm.

Illegal equipment

ARTICLE 7. Illegal equipment includes the following (see Appendix E for additional details):

a. Equipment worn by a player that could endanger other players.

b. Tape or any bandage other than that used to protect an injury, subject to the approval of the umpire.

c. Hard, abrasive or unyielding equipment that is not completely covered and padded, subject to the approval of the umpire.

d. Cleats that extend more than ½ inch from the base of the shoe (See Appendix E for full specifications).

e. Any equipment that could confuse or deceive an opponent.

f. Any equipment that could provide an unfair advantage to any player.

g. Adhesive material, paint, grease or any other slippery substance applied to equipment or on a player's person, clothing or attachment (***Exception:*** Eye shade (Rule 1-4-6-e)).

h. Uniform attachments other than towels (Rule 1-4-6-a).

i. Rib pads, shoulder pad attachments and back protectors that are not totally covered. (**A.R. 1-4-7:II**)

j. Visible bandannas worn on the field outside the team area. (**A.R. 1-4-7:I**)

k. Jerseys that do not conform with Rule 1-4-5.

l. Non-standard overbuilt facemask. (**A.R. 1-4-7:IV**) (See Appendix E for examples.)

m. Equipment that has been modified in a way that reduces the protection of the player wearing it or any other participant.

Approved Ruling 1-4-7

I. A33 is wearing a bandanna under his helmet, with part of the bandanna protruding from underneath the back of the helmet. **RULING:** Illegal equipment. Bandannas may be worn under the helmet as long as no part of the bandanna is visible when the helmet is in place. The visible bandanna is considered a uniform attachment (1-4-7-h). A33 must leave the game for at least one down and may not return until the bandanna is removed or completely hidden under the helmet. Team A may request a team timeout, if one is available, to prevent A33 from missing a down, but the bandanna must be hidden or removed. [Cited by 1-4-7-j]

II. At the end of a down, B55's shoulder pad has become exposed and is not covered by the jersey. **RULING:** Illegal equipment. Because the pad became exposed through play, B55 is not required to leave the game. The pad must be covered by the jersey before the ball is next put into play. [Cited by 1-4-7-i, 1-4-8-c]

III. Both teams come onto the field before the game wearing coloured jerseys. The visiting team has not obtained written agreement from the home team to wear non-white jerseys, or if such agreement has been obtained the competition authority has not certified that the jerseys are of contrasting colours. **RULING:** Provided the jersey colours do not clash, legal. If they do clash, the home team has first choice of colour unless the Competition Authority has determined otherwise. Report as a game management issue. Neither team is penalised any yardage. [Cited by 1-4-5-b-1]

IV. As Team A is about to break its huddle, the referee notices that A35 is wearing an overbuilt facemask. **RULING:** A35 must leave the game for one down to get a legal facemask. Team A may use an available charged timeout in order that A35 not miss a down, but he may not play with the illegal facemask. [Cited by 1-4-7-I]

V. Each member of the offensive line is wearing a towel, all of which are white, 4" by 12", with a small team logo. The snapper's towel also has a large skull-and-cross-bones symbol. **RULING:** It is legal for any player to wear a towel. The towels are all legal except the snapper's. He must leave the game for at least one down and may not return until the towel is removed or replaced with one that is legal. Team A may keep him in the game by using a charged timeout, but he may not wear the illegal towel. (Rules 1-4-6-a and 1-4-8)

Mandatory and Illegal Equipment Enforcement

ARTICLE 8. a. No player wearing illegal equipment or failing to wear mandatory equipment shall be permitted to play. (***Exception:*** Rule 1-4-5-c).

b. If an official discovers illegal equipment, or if a player is not wearing mandatory equipment, the player must leave the game for at least one down and is not allowed to return until the equipment is made legal. The player may be allowed to return without missing a down if the team takes a charged team timeout, but in any event he may not play with illegal equipment or without mandatory equipment.

c. If equipment becomes illegal through play, the player is not required to leave the game for one down, but he may not participate until the equipment is made legal. (**A.R. 1-4-7:II**)

Approved Ruling 1-4-8

I. After the ball is ready for play, an official identifies a player(s) who is obviously not wearing a mouthpiece. **RULING:** The player(s) must leave the game for at least one down and may not return until properly equipped with a mouthpiece. The player(s) may remain in the game by spending an available team timeout, but they may not play until properly equipped.

II. Late in the first half, Team B has used its three timeouts. At the end of a play the line judge notices that B44, a player who participated in the previous play, is equipped with an eye shield that is either tinted or not clear. **RULING:** Equipment violation. B44 must leave the game for at least one down and may not return if he is wearing an illegal eye shield.

III. When the ball is dead after a scrimmage down, the umpire notices that linebacker B55 has an exposed back pad at waist level, which apparently became exposed through play during the previous down. **RULING:** B55 is not required to leave the game, but he must cover the exposed pad with his jersey before the next down.

IV. An official discovers a player wearing illegal equipment or not wearing mandatory equipment. **RULING:** The official notifies the player that he must leave the game. The official is not to stop either the game clock or the play clock. If possible, the referee will use his microphone to make a brief announcement identifying the player and his team and the reason why he must leave the field. This announcement should be made from the referee's position to officiate the next play, and must not delay the start of the next play.

Coaches' Certification

ARTICLE 9. # The head coach or his designated representative shall certify in writing to the umpire before the game that all players:

a. # Have been informed what equipment is mandatory by rule and what constitutes illegal equipment.

b. # Have been provided with the equipment mandated by rule.

c. # Have been instructed to wear and how to wear mandatory equipment during the game.

d. # Have been instructed to notify the coaching staff when equipment becomes illegal through play during the game.

e. # Are not in the Concussion Protocol prior to Stage 6.

Prohibited Signal Devices

ARTICLE 10. Players may not be equipped with any electronic, mechanical or other signal devices for the purpose of communicating with any source (***Exceptions:***

1. A medically prescribed hearing aid of the sound-amplifier type for hearing-impaired players.
2. A device for transmission or reception of data specifically and only for the purposes of health and safety.)

PENALTY – Administer as a dead-ball foul, 15 yards at the succeeding spot. Player is disqualified. [S7, S27, S47: UC-UNS/DSQ].

Prohibited Field Equipment

ARTICLE 11. Jurisdiction regarding the presence and location of communication equipment (cameras, sound devices, etc.) within the playing enclosure resides with game management personnel.

a. # Motion pictures, any type of film, facsimile machines, videotapes, photographs, writing-transmission machines and computers may be used by coaches or for coaching purposes any time during the game or between periods.
   1. # Game management is responsible for assuring identical television capability and identical video and Internet connectivity in the team area and in the coaches' booths of both teams.
   2. # Teams are responsible for their own computers or other coaching equipment.
   3. # A monitor is permitted on the sideline only to assist team or game management medical personnel in the diagnosis and treatment of participants.

b. # Only voice communication between the press box and team area is permitted. Where press-box space is not adequate, only voice communication may originate from any area in the stands between the 25-yard lines extended to the top of the stadium. No other communication for coaching purposes is permitted anywhere else, including the use of any communication equipment (e.g. mobile phones or radios) for voice, text, image or any other type of message from inside or outside the playing enclosure by or to any person subject to the rules.

c. # Media communication equipment, including cameras, sound devices, computers and microphones, is prohibited on or above the field, or in or above the team area (Rule 2-31-1).

   Exceptions:

   1. Camera equipment attached to a goal support behind the uprights and crossbar.
   2. Camera(s) embedded in any pylon.
   3. A camera, with no audio component, may be attached to the cap of any official with prior approval of the official and the participating teams.

NOTE: Cameras worn by officials solely for the purposes of officiating development may be worn by any official without requiring the permission of the participating teams.

   4. A camera, with no audio component, may be attached to cables that extend over the team area and field of play, including the end zones.
   5. A team videographer may be in the team area as one of that team's 25 credentialed individuals. This video may not be used during any live broadcast or digital stream of the game.

d. # Microphones attached to coaches during the game for media transmission are prohibited.

e. # No one in the team area or coaching box may use any artificial sound amplification to communicate with players on the field.

f. Any attempt to record, either through audio or video means, any signals given by an opposing player, coach or other team personnel is prohibited.

g. # No drones (unmanned aerial vehicle) may be used inside the playing enclosure. If a drone violates this space, the referee shall order the game stopped until such time as the drone is removed from the space.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **Prohibited field equipment used.**
- **Prohibited media equipment used.**
- **Artificial sound amplification used.**
- **Recording opponent's signals.**
- **Drone inside the playing enclosure.**

Coaches' Phones

ARTICLE 12. # Coaches' phones and headsets are not subject to playing rules penalties before or during the game.

a. ∅ A competition may develop a policy to provide guidance in handling situations dealing with failure of coaches' headsets.

Referee microphone

ARTICLE 13. § A microphone is strongly recommended for the referee to be used for all game announcements. It is strongly recommended that it be a lapel-type microphone. The microphone must be controlled by the referee. It may not be open at other times. Officials' radio communication systems are not subject to the rules before or during the game. (***Exception:*** A system that interferes with a media broadcast is not permitted.)

RULE 2

Definitions

SECTION 1. Approved Rulings and Official's Signals

ARTICLE 1. a. An Approved Ruling (A.R.) is an official decision on a given statement of facts. It serves to illustrate the spirit and application of the rules.

b. An official's signal [S] refers to the Official Football Signals 1 through 47.

SECTION 2. The Ball: Live, Dead, Loose, Ready For Play

Live Ball

ARTICLE 1. A live ball is a ball in play. A pass, kick or fumble that has not yet touched the ground is a live ball in flight.

Dead Ball

ARTICLE 2. A dead ball is a ball not in play.

Loose Ball

ARTICLE 3. a. A loose ball is a live ball not in player possession during:

1. A running play.
2. A scrimmage or free kick before possession is gained or regained or the ball is dead by rule.
3. The interval after a legal forward pass is touched and before it becomes complete, incomplete or intercepted. This interval is during a forward pass play, and any player eligible to touch the ball may bat it in any direction.

b. All players are eligible to touch, catch or recover a fumble (***Exceptions:*** Rules 7-2-2-a Exception 2 and 8-3-2-d-5) or a backward pass.

c. Eligibility to touch a kick is governed by kick rules (Rule 6).

d. Eligibility to touch a forward pass is governed by pass rules (Rule 7).

When Ball is Ready for Play

ARTICLE 4. A dead ball is ready for play when:

a. With the 40-second play clock running, an official places the ball at a hash mark or between the inbounds marks and steps away to his position.

b. With the play clock set at 25 seconds, or at 40 seconds after an injury to or loss of helmet by a defensive team player, the referee sounds his whistle and either signals to start the game clock [S2] or signals that the ball is ready for play [S1]. (**A.R. 4-1-4:I and II**)

SECTION 3. Blocking

Blocking

ARTICLE 1. a. Blocking is obstructing an opponent by intentionally contacting him with any part of the blocker's body.

b. Pushing is blocking an opponent with open hands.

c. Continuous contact is a block where contact with an opponent is maintained for more than one second.

Below Waist

ARTICLE 2. a. A block below the waist is a block in which the force of the initial contact is below the waist of an opponent who has one or both feet on the ground. When in question, the contact is below the waist (Rule 9-1-6).

b. A blocker who makes contact above the waist and then slides below the waist has not blocked below the waist. If the blocker first contacts the opposing player's hands at the waist or above, it is a legal "above the waist" block (Rule 9-1-6).

Chop Block

ARTICLE 3. A chop block is a high-low or low-high combination block by any two players against an opponent (not the ball carrier) anywhere on the field, with or without a delay between blocks; the "low" component is at the opponent's thigh or below. (**A.R. 9-1-10:I-IV**) It is not a foul if the blockers' opponent initiates the contact. (**A.R. 9-1-10:V**)

Block in the Back

ARTICLE 4. a. A block in the back is contact against an opponent occurring when the force of the initial contact is from behind and above the waist. When in question, the contact is at or below the waist (see Clipping, Rule 2-5) (Rule 9-3-6). (**A.R. 9-3-3:I-VII**) (**A.R. 10-2-2:XII**)

b. The position of the blocker's head or feet does not necessarily indicate the point of initial contact.

Frame (of the Body)

ARTICLE 5. The frame of a player's body is at the shoulders or below other than the back (Rule 9-3-3-a-1-c Exception).

Free-blocking zone

ARTICLE 6. a. The free-blocking zone is a rectangle centred on the middle lineman of the offensive formation and extending five yards laterally and three yards longitudinally in each direction. (See Appendix D.)

b. The free-blocking zone disintegrates when the ball leaves the zone.

Blind-side block

ARTICLE 7. A blind-side block is an open field block against an opponent that is initiated from outside the opponent's field of vision, or otherwise in such a manner that the opponent cannot reasonably defend himself against the block.

SECTION 4. Catch, Recovery, Possession

Possession

ARTICLE 1. Possession refers to custody of (a) a live ball as described later in this article or (b) a dead ball to be snapped or free-kicked. It may refer either to player possession or team possession.

a. *Player possession*

The ball is in player possession when a player has the ball firmly in his grasp by holding or controlling it with hand(s) or arms while contacting the ground inbounds.

b. *Team possession*

The ball is in team possession:

1. When one of its players has player possession, including when he is attempting a punt, drop kick or place kick; or
2. While a forward pass thrown by a player of that team is in flight; or
3. During a loose ball if a player of that team last had player possession; or
4. When the team is next to snap or free kick the ball.

c. A team is in legal possession if it has team possession when its players are eligible to catch or recover the ball.

Belongs To

ARTICLE 2. ‘‘Belongs to,’’ as contrasted with ‘‘in possession’’ denotes custody of a dead ball. Such custody may be temporary, because the ball must next be put in play in accordance with rules governing the existing situation.

Catch, Interception, Recovery

ARTICLE 3. a. To catch a ball means that a player:

1. Secures firm control with the hand(s) or arm(s) of a live ball in flight before the ball touches the ground, and
2. Touches the ground in bounds with any part of his body, and then
3. Maintains control of the ball long enough to enable him to perform an act common to the game, i.e., long enough to pitch or hand the ball, advance it, avoid or ward off an opponent, etc., and
4. Satisfies paragraphs b, c and d below.

b. If a player goes to the ground in the act of catching a pass (with or without contact by an opponent), he must maintain complete and continuous control of the ball throughout the process of contacting the ground, whether in the field of play or in the end zone. This is also required for a player attempting to make a catch at the sideline and going to the ground out of bounds. If he loses control of the ball which then touches the ground before he regains control, it is not a catch. If he regains control inbounds prior to the ball touching the ground, it is a catch.

c. If the player loses control of the ball while simultaneously touching the ground with any part of his body, or if there is doubt that the acts were simultaneous, it is not a catch. If a player has control of the ball, a slight movement of the ball, even if it touches the ground, will not be considered loss of possession; he must lose control of the ball in order for there to be a loss of possession.

d. If the ball touches the ground after the player secures control and continues to maintain control, and the elements above are satisfied, it is a catch.

e. An interception is a catch of an opponent's pass or fumble.

f. A catch by any kneeling or prone inbounds player is a completion or interception (Rules 7-3-6 and 7-3-7).

g. A player recovers a ball if he fulfils the criteria in paragraphs a, b, c, and d for catching a ball that is still alive after hitting the ground.

h. When in question, the catch, recovery or interception is not completed.

Approved Ruling 2-4-3

I. B1 attempts to catch a punt (no fair catch signal) that crosses the neutral zone, strikes his shoulder (a muff) and bounces into the air. The ball does not touch the ground. Airborne A1 receives the ball in flight and first returns to the ground out of bounds. **RULING:** Team B's ball at the spot where the ball crossed the sideline. First and 10.

II. On third down, B1 blocks a Team A scrimmage kick that goes into the air and does not cross the neutral zone. The ball does not touch the ground. A1 jumps and grasps the ball in flight and first returns to the ground out of bounds. **RULING:** Team B's ball at the spot where the ball crossed the sideline. First and 10 (Rule 6-3-7).

III. Airborne A3 receives a pass at Team A's 40-yard line. While still airborne, he is contacted by B1 and comes to the ground out of bounds with the ball at Team A's 37-yard line. **RULING:** Incomplete pass (Rule 7-3-7-a). [Cited by 7-3-6, 7-3-7-a]

IV. On second down, A1 fumbles the ball, which strikes the ground and bounces high in the air. B2 receives the ball while off the ground and returns to the ground out of bounds (a) in advance of the spot of the fumble or (b) behind the spot of the fumble. **RULING:** (a) Team A's ball at the spot of the fumble. (b) Team A's ball at the spot where the ball crossed the sideline (Rules 4-2-4-d and 7-2-4).

Simultaneous Catch or Recovery

ARTICLE 4. A simultaneous catch or recovery is a catch or recovery in which there is joint possession of a live ball by opposing players inbounds. (**A.R. 7-3-6:I-II**)

SECTION 5. Clipping

ARTICLE 1. a. Clipping is a block against an opponent in which the force of the initial contact is from behind and at or below the waist (Rule 9-1-5).

b. The position of the blocker's head or feet does not necessarily indicate the point of initial contact.

SECTION 6. Deliberate Dead-Ball Advance

Deliberately advancing a dead ball is an attempt by a player to advance the ball after any part of his person, other than a hand or foot, has touched the ground or after the ball has been declared dead by rule (***Exception:*** Rule 4-1-3-b Exception).

SECTION 7. Down, Between Downs and Loss of Down

Down

ARTICLE 1. A down is a unit of the game that starts after the ball is ready for play with a legal snap (scrimmage down) or legal free kick (free kick down) and ends when the ball becomes dead [***Exception:*** The try is a scrimmage down that begins when the referee declares the ball ready for play (Rule 8-3-2-b)].

Between Downs

ARTICLE 2. Between downs is the interval during which the ball is dead.

Loss of down

ARTICLE 3. "Loss of down" is an abbreviation meaning "loss of the right to repeat a down".

SECTION 8. Fair Catch

Fair Catch

ARTICLE 1. a. A fair catch of a scrimmage kick is a catch beyond the neutral zone by a Team B player who has made a valid signal during a scrimmage kick that is untouched beyond the neutral zone.

b. A fair catch of a free kick is a catch by a Team B player who has made a valid signal during an untouched free kick.

c. A valid or invalid fair catch signal deprives the receiving team of the opportunity to advance the ball. The ball is declared dead at the spot of the catch or recovery. If the catch or recovery precedes the signal, the ball is dead when the signal is first given.

d. If the receiver shades his eyes from the sun without waving his hand(s), the ball is live and may be advanced.

Valid Signal

ARTICLE 2. A valid signal is a signal given by a player of Team B who has obviously signalled his intention by extending one hand only clearly above his head and waving that hand from side to side of his body more than once.

Invalid Signal

ARTICLE 3. An invalid signal is any waving signal by a player of Team B:

a. That does not meet the requirements of Rule 2-8-2 (above); or

b. That is given after a scrimmage kick is caught beyond the neutral zone, strikes the ground or touches another player beyond the neutral zone (**A.R. 6-5-3:III-V**); or

c. That is given after a free kick is caught, strikes the ground or touches another player (***Exception:*** Rule 6-4-1-f).

SECTION 9. Forward, Beyond and Forward Progress

Forward, Beyond

ARTICLE 1. Forward, beyond or in advance of, as related to either team, denotes direction toward the opponent's end line. Converse terms are backward or behind.

Forward Progress

ARTICLE 2. Forward progress is a term indicating the end of advancement by the ball carrier or airborne pass receiver of either team and applies to the position of the ball when it becomes dead by rule (Rules 4-1-3-a, 4-1-3-b and 4-1-3-p; Rules 4-2-1 and 4-2-4; and Rule 5-1-3-a Exception) (**A.R. 5-1-3:I-VI**) (**A.R. 8-2-1:I-IX**) (***Exception:*** Rule 8-5-1-a, (**A.R. 8-5-1:I**)).

SECTION 10. Foul and Violation

Foul

ARTICLE 1. A foul is a rule infraction for which a penalty is prescribed.

Personal Foul

ARTICLE 2. A personal foul is a foul involving illegal physical contact that endangers the safety of another player.

Flagrant Personal Foul

ARTICLE 3. A flagrant personal foul is illegal physical contact so extreme or deliberate that it places an opponent in danger of catastrophic injury.

Violation

ARTICLE 4. A violation is a rule infraction for which no penalty is prescribed. Since it is not a foul, it does not offset a foul.

SECTION 11. Fumble, Muff, Batting and Touching the Ball; Blocking a Kick

Fumble

ARTICLE 1. To fumble the ball is to lose player possession by any act other than passing, kicking or successful handing. (**A.R. 2-19-2:I**) (**A.R. 4-1-3:I**) The status of the ball is a fumble.

Muff

ARTICLE 2. To muff the ball is to touch the ball in an unsuccessful attempt to catch or recover it. Muffing the ball does not change its status.

Batting

ARTICLE 3. Batting the ball is intentionally striking it or intentionally changing its direction with the head, hand(s) or arm(s). When in question, the ball is accidentally touched rather than batted. Batting the ball does not change its status.

Touching

ARTICLE 4. a. Touching a ball not in player possession denotes any contact with the ball. It may be intentional or unintentional, and it always precedes possession and control.

b. Intentional touching is deliberate or intended touching.

c. Forced touching results when a player's contact with the ball is due to (i) an opponent blocking him into it, or (ii) the ball being batted or illegally kicked into him by an opponent. If the touching is forced, by rule the player in question has not touched the ball. (Rules 6-1-4 and 6-3-4)

d. When in question, a ball has not been touched on a kick or forward pass.

Approved Ruling 2-11-4

I. A punt is rolling along the ground near players A44 and B27 who are engaged. (a) The ball bounces against B27's leg and is then recovered by A55 at the B-35. (b) A44 blocks B27 into the ball which is then recovered by A55 at the B-35. **RULING:** (a) Team A's ball, first and 10 at the B-35. The ball rolled into B27's leg but A44's contact did not cause him to touch the ball. Not forced touching. (b) Forced touching because the block by A44 caused B27 to touch the ball. Illegal touching by A55. Team B's ball at that point. [Cited by 6-1-4-a, 6-3-4-a]

Blocking a Scrimmage Kick

ARTICLE 5. Blocking a scrimmage kick is touching the kicked ball by an opponent of the kicking team in an attempt to prevent the ball from crossing the neutral zone (Rule 6-3-1-b).

SECTION 12. Lines

Sidelines

ARTICLE 1. A sideline runs from end line to end line on each side of the field and separates the field of play from the area that is out of bounds. The entire sideline is out of bounds.

Goal Lines and Pylons

ARTICLE 2. The goal line at each end of the field of play runs between the sidelines and is part of the vertical plane that separates the end zone from the field of play. The two goal lines are 100 yards apart (except when the field is shortened according to Rule 1-2-1-a-2). The plane of the goal line extends between and includes the pylons, which are out of bounds. The entire goal line is in the end zone. A team's goal line is that which it is defending.

Approved Ruling 2-12-2

I. Team A's untouched scrimmage kick strikes the ground in the field of play and breaks the plane of Team B's goal line. While the ball is in the air over the end zone, A81, who is either on the one-yard line or in the end zone, bats the ball into the field of play. **RULING:** Violation for illegal touching (Rule 6-3-11). Team B may accept the result of the play or next snap the ball at its 20-yard line (Exception: Rule 8-4-2-b). [Cited by 6-3-11, 6-3-2-a]

End Lines

ARTICLE 3. An end line runs between the sidelines normally 10 (but can be 7-13) yards behind each goal line and separates the end zone from the area that is out of bounds. The entire end line is out of bounds.

Boundary Lines

ARTICLE 4. The boundary lines are the sidelines and the end lines. The area enclosed by the boundary lines is "in bounds", and the area surrounding and including the boundary lines is "out of bounds".

Restraining Lines

ARTICLE 5. A restraining line is part of a vertical plane that limits a team's alignment for free kicks. The plane extends beyond the sidelines. (**A.R. 2-12-5:I**)

Approved Ruling 2-12-5

I. A free kick breaks the plane of Team B's restraining line. While the ball is in the air, A1, who is behind Team B's restraining line, touches the ball. **RULING:** Legal touching (Rule 6-1-3-a-2). [Cited by 2-12-5, 6-1-3-a-2]

Yard Lines

ARTICLE 6. A yard line is any line in the field of play parallel to the end lines. A team's own yard lines, marked or unmarked, are numbered consecutively from its own goal line to the midfield line.

Hash Marks

ARTICLE 7. The two hash marks are 60 feet from the sidelines. Hash marks and short yard-line extensions should measure 24 inches in length.

Nine-Yard Marks

ARTICLE 8. Nine-yard marks 12 inches in length, every 10 yards, shall be located nine yards from the sidelines. They are not required if the field is numbered according to Rule 1-2-1-j.

SECTION 13. Handing the Ball

ARTICLE 1. a. Handing the ball is transferring player possession from one teammate to another without throwing, fumbling or kicking it.

b. Except when permitted by rule, handing the ball forward to a teammate is illegal.

c. Loss of player possession by unsuccessful execution of attempted handing is a fumble by the last player in possession (***Exception:*** The snap (Rule 2-23-1-c)).

d. A backward handoff occurs when the ball carrier releases the ball before it is beyond the yard line where the ball carrier is positioned.

SECTION 14. Huddle

ARTICLE 1. A huddle is two or more players grouped together after the ball is ready for play and before a snap or a free kick.

SECTION 15. Hurdling

ARTICLE 1. a. Hurdling is an attempt by a player to jump with one or both feet or knees foremost over an opponent who is still on his feet (Rule 9-1-13).

b. "On his feet" means that no part of the opponent's body other than one or both feet is in contact with the ground.

SECTION 16. Kicks; Kicking the Ball

Kicking the Ball; Legal and Illegal Kicks

ARTICLE 1. a. Kicking the ball is intentionally striking the ball with the knee, lower leg or foot.

b. A legal kick is a punt, drop kick or place kick made according to the rules by a player of Team A before a change of team possession. Kicking the ball in any other manner is illegal. (**A.R. 6-1-2:I**)

c. Any free kick or scrimmage kick continues to be a kick until it is caught or recovered by a player or becomes dead.

d. When in question, a ball is accidentally touched rather than kicked.

Punt

ARTICLE 2. A punt is a kick by a player who drops the ball and kicks it before it touches the ground.

Drop Kick

ARTICLE 3. A drop kick is a kick by a player who drops the ball and kicks it as it touches the ground.

Place Kick

ARTICLE 4. a. A field goal place kick is a kick by a player of the team in possession while the ball is controlled on the ground by a teammate. (Rule 2-16-9)

b. A free kick place kick is a kick by a player of the team in possession while the ball is positioned on a tee or the ground. It may be controlled by a teammate. The ball may be positioned on the ground and contacting the tee.

c. A tee is a device that elevates the ball for kicking purposes. It may not elevate the ball's lowest point more than one inch above the ground. (**A.R. 2-16-4:I**)

d. No device or material may be used to mark the spot of a scrimmage place kick or to elevate the ball. This is a live-ball foul at the snap. (Rule 6-3-10-d)

Approved Ruling 2-16-4

I. On a free kick to start a game, the kicker uses the toe of a teammate for a tee or builds a tee with a mound of dirt or sod. **RULING:** Illegal kick. Dead-ball foul. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot. [Cited by 2-16-4-c, 4-1-1]

Free Kick

ARTICLE 5. a. A free kick is a kick by a player of the team in possession made under restrictions specified in Rules 4-1-4, 6-1-1 and 6-1-2.

b. A free kick after a safety may be a punt, drop kick or place kick.

Kickoff

ARTICLE 6. A kickoff is a free kick that starts each half and follows each try or successful field goal attempt (***Exception:*** In extra periods). It must be a place kick or a drop kick.

Scrimmage Kick

ARTICLE 7. a. A scrimmage kick is a punt, drop kick or field goal place kick. It is a legal kick if it is made by Team A in or behind the neutral zone during a scrimmage down before team possession changes.

b. A scrimmage kick has crossed the neutral zone when it touches the ground, a player, an official or anything beyond the neutral zone (***Exception:*** Rule 6-3-1-b). (**A.R. 6-3-1:I-IV**)

c. A scrimmage kick made when the kicker's entire body is beyond the neutral zone is an illegal kick and a live-ball foul that causes the ball to become dead (Rule 6-3-10-c).

Return Kick

ARTICLE 8. A return kick is a kick by a player of the team in possession after change of team possession during a down. It is an illegal kick and a live-ball foul that causes the ball to become dead (Rule 6-3-10-b).

Field Goal Attempt

ARTICLE 9. A field goal attempt is a scrimmage kick. It may be a place kick or a drop kick.

Scrimmage Kick Formation

ARTICLE 10. a. A scrimmage kick formation is a formation with no player in position to receive a hand-to-hand snap from between the snapper's legs, and with either (1) at least one player seven or more yards behind the neutral zone; or (2) a potential holder and potential kicker five or more yards behind the neutral zone in position for a place kick. For either (1) or (2) to qualify as a scrimmage kick formation, it must be obvious that a kick will be attempted. (**A.R. 9-1-14:I-III**)

b. If Team A is in a scrimmage kick formation at the snap, any action by Team A during the down is deemed to be from a scrimmage kick formation.

Approved Ruling 2-16-10

I. At the snap Team A has four linemen numbered between 50-79 and three linemen numbered outside this range. A potential kicker is six yards deep but there is no potential holder. **RULING:** Illegal formation. Team A is not in a scrimmage kick formation and does not have the required number of linemen with proper jersey numbers.

SECTION 17. The Neutral Zone

ARTICLE 1. a. The neutral zone is the space between the two scrimmage lines extended to the sidelines. (Rule 2-21-2) Its width is equal to the length of the ball.

b. The neutral zone is established when the ball is ready for play and is resting on the ground with its long axis at right angles to the scrimmage line and parallel to the sidelines.

c. The neutral zone exists until there is a change of team possession, until a scrimmage kick crosses the neutral zone, or until the ball is declared dead.

SECTION 18. Encroachment and Offside

Encroachment

ARTICLE 1. After the ball is ready for play, encroachment occurs when an offensive player is in or beyond the neutral zone after the snapper touches or simulates (hand(s) at or below his knees) touching the ball before the snap. (***Exception:*** When the ball is put in play, the snapper is not encroaching when he is in the neutral zone.)

Offside on a scrimmage play

ARTICLE 2. After the ball is ready for play, offside occurs (Rule 7-1-5) when a defensive player:

a. Is in or beyond the neutral zone when the ball is legally snapped; or

b. Contacts an opponent beyond the neutral zone before the ball is snapped; or

c. Contacts the ball before it is snapped; or

d. Threatens an offensive lineman, causing an immediate reaction, before the ball is snapped (Rule 7-1-2-b-3-Exception, (**A.R. 7-1-3:V Note**)); or

e. Crosses the neutral zone and charges toward a Team A back (**A.R. 7-1-5:III**).

Offside on a free kick play

ARTICLE 3. Offside occurs (Rule 6-1-2) when:

a. A defensive player is not behind his restraining line when the ball is legally free-kicked.

b. One or more players of the kicking team are not behind their restraining line when the ball is legally free-kicked (***Exception:*** The kicker and holder are not offside when they are beyond their restraining line) (Rule 6-1-2).

SECTION 19. Passes

Passing

ARTICLE 1. Passing the ball is throwing it. A pass continues to be a pass until it is caught or intercepted by a player or the ball becomes dead.

Forward and Backward Pass

ARTICLE 2. a. A pass is forward if the ball first strikes the ground, a player, an official or anything else beyond the spot where the ball is released. All other passes are backward passes. When in question, a pass thrown in or behind the neutral zone is a forward rather than a backward pass

b. When a Team A player is holding the ball to pass it forward toward the neutral zone, any intentional forward movement of his hand with the ball firmly in his control starts the forward pass unless the player clearly starts to bring the ball back with firm control to his

body. If a Team B player contacts the forward passer or ball after forward movement begins and the ball leaves the forward passer's hand, a forward pass is ruled regardless of where the ball strikes the ground or a player. (**A.R. 2-19-2:I**)

c. When in question, the ball is passed and not fumbled during an attempted forward pass. (***Exception:*** Games using Video Judge).

d. A snap becomes a backward pass when the snapper releases the ball, other than via a hand-to-hand exchange (**A.R. 2-23-1:I**).

Approved Ruling 2-19-2

I. A1 intends to throw a forward pass, but B1 bats the ball from his hand before A1's hand starts forward. **RULING:** Fumble (Rule 2-11-1). [Cited by 2-11-1, 2-19-2-b]

Crosses Neutral Zone

ARTICLE 3. a. A legal forward pass has crossed the neutral zone when it first strikes the ground, a player, an official or anything beyond the neutral zone inbounds. It has not crossed the neutral zone when it first strikes the ground, a player, an official or anything in or behind the neutral zone inbounds.

b. A player has crossed the neutral zone if his entire body has been beyond the neutral zone.

c. A legal forward pass is beyond or behind the neutral zone where it crosses the sideline.

Catchable Forward Pass

ARTICLE 4. A catchable forward pass is an untouched legal forward pass beyond the neutral zone to an eligible player who has a reasonable opportunity to catch the ball. When in question, a legal forward pass is catchable.

SECTION 20. Penalty

A penalty is a result imposed by rule against a team that has committed a foul and may include one or more of the following: loss of yardage, loss of down, automatic first down, disqualification or subtraction from the game clock (Rule 10-1-1-b).

SECTION 21. Scrimmage

Scrimmage Down

ARTICLE 1. A scrimmage down is the action between the two teams during a down that begins with a legal snap.

NOTE: A try down is a scrimmage down that begins when the referee declares the ball ready for play (Rule 8-3-2-b).

Scrimmage Line

ARTICLE 2. The scrimmage line for each team is established when the ball is ready for play. It is the yard line that defines the vertical plane passing through the point of the ball nearest a team's own goal line.

SECTION 22. Shift

ARTICLE 1. a. A shift is a simultaneous change of position or stance by two or more offensive players after the ball is ready for play before the snap for a scrimmage down. (**A.R. 7-1-3:I-II**) (**A.R. 7-1-2:I-IV**)

b. The shift ends when all players have been motionless for one full second.

c. The shift continues if one or more players are in motion before the end of the one second interval.

SECTION 23. Snapping the Ball

ARTICLE 1. a. Legally snapping the ball (a snap) is handing or passing it backward from its position on the ground with a quick and continuous motion of the hand or hands, the ball actually leaving the hand or hands in this motion (Rule 4-1-4).

b. The snap starts when the ball is moved legally and ends when the ball leaves the snapper's hands; the ball then becomes alive (Rule 4-1-1) (**A.R. 7-1-5:I-II**).

c. If, during any backward motion of a legal snap, the ball slips from the snapper's hand, it becomes a backward pass and is in play (Rule 4-1-1).

d. While resting on the ground and before the snap, the long axis of the ball must be at right angles to the scrimmage line (Rule 7-1-3).

e. Unless moved in a backward direction, the movement of the ball does not start a legal snap. It is not a legal snap if the ball is first moved forward or lifted.

f. If the ball is touched by Team B during a legal snap, the ball remains dead and Team B is penalised. If the ball is touched by Team B during an illegal snap, the ball remains dead and Team A is penalised. (**A.R. 7-1-5:I-II**)

g. The snap need not be between the snapper's legs; but to be legal, it must be a quick and continuous backward motion.

h. The ball must be snapped on or between the hash marks.

Approved Ruling 2-23-1

I. Fourth and goal on Team B's five-yard line. A55's legal snap is muffed by A12 and (a) any player of Team A recovers and advances the ball into the end zone, or (b) a player of Team B recovers and advances the ball. **RULING:** The snap is a backward pass and may be advanced by any player. (a) Touchdown. Since this is a backward pass and not a fumble there is no restriction on a Team A player recovering and advancing the ball. (b) Ball continues in play. [Cited by 2-19-2-d, 7-2-2-a, 8-2-1-a]

SECTION 24. Series and Possession Series

Series

ARTICLE 1. A series comprises up to four consecutive downs that each begins with a snap (Rule 5-1-1).

Possession Series

ARTICLE 2. A possession series is a team's continuous possession of the ball in an extra period (Rule 3-1-3). It may consist of one or more series.

SECTION 25. Spots

Enforcement Spot

ARTICLE 1. An enforcement spot is the point at which the penalty for a foul or the result of a violation is enforced.

Previous Spot

ARTICLE 2. The previous spot is the point at which the ball was last put in play.

Succeeding Spot

ARTICLE 3. The succeeding spot is the point at which the ball is next to be put in play.

Dead-Ball Spot

ARTICLE 4. The dead-ball spot is the point at which the ball became dead.

Spot of the Foul

ARTICLE 5. The spot of the foul is the point at which that foul occurs. If out of bounds between the goal lines, it shall be the intersection of the nearer hash mark and the yard line extended through the spot of the foul. If out of bounds between the goal line and the end line or behind the end line, the foul is in the end zone.

Out-of-Bounds Spot

ARTICLE 6. The out-of-bounds spot is the point at which the ball becomes dead by rule because of going or being declared out of bounds.

Inbounds Spot

ARTICLE 7. The inbounds spot is the intersection of the nearer hash mark line and the yard line passing through either the dead-ball spot or the spot where a penalty leaves the ball in a side zone.

Spot Where Run Ends

ARTICLE 8. The spot where the run ends is the point:

a. Where the ball is declared dead in player possession.
b. Where player possession is lost on a fumble.
c. Where handing of the ball occurs.
d. Where an illegal forward pass is thrown.
e. Where a backward pass is thrown.
f. Where an illegal scrimmage kick is made beyond the line of scrimmage.
g. Where a return kick occurs.
h. Where player possession is gained under provisions of the "momentum rule" (Rule 8-5-1-a Exceptions).

Spot Where Kick Ends

ARTICLE 9. A scrimmage kick that crosses the neutral zone ends at the spot where it is caught or recovered or where the ball is declared dead by rule (Rule 2-16-1-c). (***Exception:*** If inadvertent whistle provisions apply, the end of a kick is where the ball next touches a player, official, the ground or crosses a boundary line after the whistle has blown.)

Basic Spot

ARTICLE 10. The basic spot is a benchmark for locating the enforcement spot for penalties governed by the Three-and-One Principle (Rule 2-33). Basic spots for the various categories of plays are given in Rule 10-2-2-d.

Postscrimmage Kick Spot

ARTICLE 11. The postscrimmage kick spot serves as the basic spot when postscrimmage kick enforcement applies (Rule 10-2-3).

a. When the kick ends in the field of play, other than in the special cases given below, the postscrimmage kick spot is the spot where the kick ends.

b. When the kick ends in Team B's end zone, the postscrimmage kick spot is Team B's 20-yard line.

Special cases:

1. On an unsuccessful field goal attempt, if the ball is untouched by Team B after crossing the neutral zone and is declared dead beyond the neutral zone, the postscrimmage kick spot is:
   (a) The previous spot, if the previous spot is on or outside Team B's 20-yard line; (**A.R. 10-2-3:V**)
   (b) Team B's 20-yard line, if the previous spot is between Team B's 20-yard line and its goal line.
2. When Rule 6-3-11 is in effect, the postscrimmage kick spot is Team B's 20-yard line.
3. When Rule 6-5-1-b is in effect, the postscrimmage kick spot is the spot where the receiver first touched the kick.

SECTION 26. Tackling

Tackling is grasping or encircling an opponent with a hand(s) or arm(s).

SECTION 27. Team and Player Designations

Teams A and B

ARTICLE 1. Team A is the team that is designated to put the ball in play, and Team B is the opponent. The teams retain these designations until the ball is next ready for play.

Offensive and Defensive Teams

ARTICLE 2. The offensive team is the team in possession, or the team to which the ball belongs; the defensive team is the opposing team.

Kicker and Holder

ARTICLE 3. a. The kicker is any player who punts, drop kicks or place kicks according to rule. He remains the kicker until he has had a reasonable time to regain his balance.

b. A holder is a player who controls the ball on the ground or on a kicking tee. During a scrimmage-kick play, he remains the holder until no player is in position to make the kick or, if the ball is kicked, until the kicker has had a reasonable time to regain his balance.

Lineman and Back

ARTICLE 4. a. *Lineman*.

1. A lineman is any Team A player legally on his scrimmage line (Rule 2-21-2).

2. A Team A player is legally on his scrimmage line when he faces his opponent's goal line with the line of his shoulders approximately parallel thereto and either (a) he is the snapper (Rule 2-27-8) or (b) his head breaks the plane of the line drawn through the waistline of the snapper.

b. *Interior lineman*. An interior lineman is a lineman who is not on the end of his scrimmage line.

c. *Restricted lineman*. A restricted lineman is any interior lineman, or any lineman wearing a number 50-79, whose hand(s) are below the knees.

d. *Back*.
   1. A back is any Team A player who is not a lineman and whose head or shoulder does not break the plane of the line drawn through the waistline of the nearest Team A lineman.
   2. A back is also the player in position to receive a hand-to-hand snap.
   3. A lineman becomes a back before the snap when he moves to a position as a back and stops.

Forward Passer

ARTICLE 5. The forward passer is the player who throws a forward pass. He is a forward passer from the time he releases the ball until the pass is complete, incomplete or intercepted, or until he moves to participate in the play.

Player

ARTICLE 6. a. A player is any one of the participants in the game who is not a substitute or a replaced player and is subject to the rules when inbounds or out of bounds.

b. An airborne player is a player not in contact with the ground because he leaps, jumps, dives, launches, is contacted by an opponent or teammate, etc. in other than normal running action.

c. A departing player is a player leaving the field, having been replaced by a substitute.

d. A teammate is a player of the same team

Runner and Ball Carrier

ARTICLE 7. a. The runner is a player in possession of a live ball or simulating possession of a live ball.

b. A ball carrier is a runner in possession of a live ball.

Snapper

ARTICLE 8. The snapper is the player who snaps the ball. He is established as the snapper when he takes a position behind the ball and touches or simulates (hand(s) at or below his knees) touching the ball (Rule 7-1-3).

Substitute

ARTICLE 9. a. A legal substitute is a replacement for a player or a player vacancy during the interval between downs.

b. A legal incoming substitute becomes a player when he enters the field of play or end zones and communicates with a teammate or an official, enters the huddle, is positioned in an offensive or defensive formation, or participates in a play.

Replaced Player

ARTICLE 10. A replaced player is one who participated during the previous down, has been replaced by a substitute and has left the field of play and the end zones.

Player Vacancy

ARTICLE 11. A player vacancy occurs when a team has fewer than 11 players in the game.

Disqualified Player

ARTICLE 12. a. A disqualified player is one who is declared ineligible for further participation in the game.

b. A disqualified player or coach must leave the playing enclosure under the escort of team personnel before the next play after his disqualification. He must remain out of view of the field of play under team supervision for the duration of the game.

Squad Member

ARTICLE 13. A squad member is part of a group of potential players, in uniform, organised for participation in the ensuing football game or football plays.

Defenseless player

ARTICLE 14. A defenseless player is one who because of his physical position and focus of concentration is especially vulnerable to injury. When in question, a player is defenseless. Examples of defenseless players include but are not limited to:

a. A player in the act of or just after throwing a pass.

b. A receiver attempting to catch a forward pass or in position to receive a backward pass, or one who has completed a catch and has not had time to protect himself or has not clearly become a ball carrier.

c. A kicker in the act of or just after kicking a ball, or during the kick or the return.

d. A kick returner attempting to catch or recover a kick, or one who has completed a catch or recovery and has not had time to protect himself or has not clearly become a ball carrier.

e. A player on the ground.

f. A player obviously out of the play.

g. A player who receives a blind-side block. ×

h. A ball carrier already in the grasp of an opponent and whose forward progress has been stopped.

i. A quarterback any time after a change of possession.

j. A ball carrier who has obviously given himself up and is sliding feet-first.

Player Out of Bounds and In Bounds

ARTICLE 15. a. *Out of Bounds*

1. A player is out of bounds when any part of his body touches anything other than another player or a game official on or outside a boundary line.
2. An out-of-bounds player who becomes airborne remains out of bounds until he touches the ground in bounds without simultaneously being out of bounds.

b. *In Bounds*

1. An inbounds player is a player who is not out of bounds.
2. An inbounds player who becomes airborne remains in bounds until he is out of bounds.

Definition of coach

ARTICLE 16. a. A coach is a person subject to the rules who, while in the team area or coaching box, observes the game and/or gives instructions to players and substitutes.

b. A player/coach is regarded as being a coach when in the team area or coaching box and as a player or substitute otherwise.

c. Each team shall designate a coach as its head coach, and identify him on the roster form and to the referee.

SECTION 28. Tripping

Tripping is intentionally using the lower leg or foot to obstruct an opponent below the knees (Rule 9-1-2-c).

SECTION 29. Timing Devices

Game Clock

ARTICLE 1. The game clock is any device under the direction of the appropriate official used to time the duration of the game.

Play Clock

ARTICLE 2. a. Each stadium should have a visual play clock at each end of the playing enclosure. The play clock (if provided) must be capable of counting down from both 40 seconds and 25 seconds. It should automatically default to 40 seconds and start immediately upon being reset by the play-clock operator when any official signals that the ball is dead after a play.

b. Otherwise, the play clock is any device under the direction of the appropriate official used to time the 40/25 seconds between end of the previous play or the ready for play signal and the ball being put in play.

SECTION 30. Play Classification

Forward Pass Play

ARTICLE 1. A legal forward pass play is the interval between the snap and when a legal forward pass is complete, incomplete or intercepted.

Free Kick Play

ARTICLE 2. A free kick play is the action during the interval from the time the ball is legally kicked until it comes into player possession or is declared dead by rule.

Scrimmage Kick Play

ARTICLE 3. A scrimmage kick play is the action during the interval between the snap and when a scrimmage kick comes into player possession or the ball is declared dead by rule.

Running Play and Run

ARTICLE 4. a. A running play is any live-ball action other than that during a free kick play, a scrimmage kick play, or a legal forward pass play.

b. A run is that segment of a running play during which a ball carrier has possession.

c. If a ball carrier loses possession by a fumble, backward pass, or illegal forward pass, the spot where the run ends (Rule 2-25-8) is the yard line where the ball carrier loses possession. The running play includes the run and the loose-ball action before a player gains or regains possession or the ball is declared dead. (**A.R. 2-30-4:I and II**)

d. A new running play begins when a player gains or regains possession.

Approved Ruling 2-30-4

I. A21 catches a forward pass with his knees on the ground. The forward passer is roughed during the pass. **RULING:** A21's catch started a running play, which ended immediately. Penalise 15 yards from the end of the run, first down for Team A. [Cited by 2-30-4-c]

II. Third and 10. A21 catches a forward pass and fumbles when tackled after gaining nine yards. The fumble is recovered by grounded A24 five yards in advance of the fumble. During the pass, the forward passer is roughed. **RULING:** Penalise 15 yards from the spot of recovery by A24 (end of last run), first down for Team A. [Cited by 2-30-4-c]

Result of the Play

ARTICLE 5. The result of the play is the game situation when the ball becomes dead and before the enforcement of penalties for any fouls or violations occurring during the play.

SECTION 31. Field Areas

The Field

ARTICLE 1. The field is the area within the limit lines and includes the limit lines and team areas and the space above it (***Exception:*** Enclosures over the field).

Field of Play

ARTICLE 2. The field of play is the area enclosed by the sidelines and the goal lines.

End Zones

ARTICLE 3. a. The end zone at each end of the field is the rectangle defined by the goal line, sidelines and end line.

b. The goal line and goal line pylons are in the end zone.

c. A team's end zone is the one it is defending. (**A.R. 8-5-1:VII**) (**A.R. 8-6-1:I**)

Playing Surface

ARTICLE 4. The playing surface is the material or substance within the field of play, including the end zones.

Playing Enclosure

ARTICLE 5. The playing enclosure is that area bounded by the stadium, dome, stands, fences or other structures (***Exception:*** Scoreboards are not considered within the playing enclosure). Where there is no stadium, dome or stands, the playing enclosure is any area within sight and/or sound of the field. (Rules 9-2-6-b and 9-2-7)

Side Zone

ARTICLE 6. The side zone is the area between the hash marks and the near sideline.

SECTION 32. Fighting

ARTICLE 1. Fighting is any attempt by a player, coach or squad member in uniform to strike an opponent in a combative manner unrelated to football. Such acts include, but are not limited to:

a. An attempt to strike an opponent with the head, arm(s), hand(s), leg(s) or foot (feet), whether or not there is contact.

b. An unsportsmanlike act toward an opponent that causes any opponent to retaliate by fighting (Rules 9-2-1 and 9-5-1).

SECTION 33. Three-and-One Principle

The Three-and-One Principle of penalty enforcement applies when the penalty statement for a foul does not specify the enforcement spot. Application of this principle is described in Rule 10-2-2-c.

SECTION 34. Tackle Box

ARTICLE 1.

a. The tackle box is the rectangular area enclosed by the neutral zone, the two lines parallel to the sidelines five yards from the middle lineman, and Team A's end line. (See Appendix D.)

b. The tackle box disintegrates when the ball leaves it.

SECTION 35. Targeting

ARTICLE 1. "Targeting" means that a player takes aim at an opponent for purposes of attacking with forcible contact that goes beyond making a legal tackle or a legal block or playing the ball. Some indicators of targeting include but are not limited to:

a. Launch — a player leaving his feet to attack an opponent by an upward and forward thrust of the body to make forcible contact in the head or neck area.

b. A crouch followed by an upward and forward thrust to attack with forcible contact at the head or neck area, even though one or both feet are still on the ground.

c. Leading with helmet, shoulder, forearm, fist, hand or elbow to attack with forcible contact at the head or neck area.

d. Lowering the head before attacking by initiating forcible contact with the crown of the helmet.

RULE 3

Periods, Time Factors and Substitutions

SECTION 1. Start of Each Period

First and Third Periods

ARTICLE 1. a. Prior to the game, during warm-ups, teams must remain in an agreed separate half of the field, normally the half up to the line five yards from midfield to their left, looking from their team area towards the field.

b. Each half shall start with a kickoff.

c. Three minutes before the scheduled starting time, the referee shall toss a coin at midfield in the presence of not more than four field captains from each team and another game official, first designating the field captain of the visiting team to call the coin toss. Before the second half, the referee will obtain the teams' second half options.

d. During the coin toss, each team shall remain in the team area. The coin toss begins when the field captains leave the sidelines and ends when the captains return to the sidelines.

PENALTY – [d] Five yards from the succeeding spot [S19: IPR].

e. The winner of the toss shall choose one of the following options:
   1. To designate which team shall kick off.
   2. To designate which goal line his team shall defend. (***Exception:*** This option is not available if only one goal is being used (Rule 1-2-5-f).)
   3. To defer his selection to the second half.

f. The opponent shall then choose option 1 or 2 above, as available.

g. If the winner of the toss chooses option 3 above, then after the opponent's choice the winner selects the available option (1 or 2 above).

h. For the second half, the loser of the toss, or the winner who chooses option 3 above, shall choose option 1 or 2 above. The opponent then chooses the remaining available option.

Second and Fourth Periods

ARTICLE 2. Between the first and second periods and also between the third and fourth periods, the teams shall defend opposite goal lines.

a. The ball shall be relocated at a spot corresponding exactly, in relation to goal lines and sidelines, to its location at the end of the preceding period.

b. Possession of the ball, the number of the down and the distance to be gained shall remain unchanged.

Extra Periods

ARTICLE 3. The tiebreaker system will be used when a game is tied after four periods. (***Exception:*** ∇ Competitions may adopt regulations to forgo the tiebreaker system if the scores are tied at the end of a regular season game. In that event, the game shall be terminated and the result shall stand as a tie.) BAFA football-playing rules apply, with the following exceptions:

a. Immediately after the conclusion of the fourth quarter, officials will instruct both teams to retire to their respective team areas. The officials will assemble at the midfield line and review the tiebreaker procedures.

b. The officials will escort the captains (Rule 3-1-1) to the centre of the field for the coin toss. The referee shall toss a coin at midfield in the presence of not more than four field captains from each team and another game official, first designating the field captain of the visiting team to call the coin toss. The winner of the toss may not defer the choice and must choose one of the following options:
   1. Offense or defense, with the offense at the opponent's 25-yard line to start the first possession series.
   2. Which end of the field shall be used for both possession series of that overtime period.

c. The loser of the toss shall exercise the remaining option for the first extra period and shall have the first choice of the two options for subsequent even-numbered extra periods.

d. Definition. An extra period shall consist of two possession series with each team putting the ball in play by a snap on or between the hash marks on the designated 25-yard line (unless relocated by penalty); this becomes the opponent's 25-yard line. The snap shall be from midway between the hash marks, unless the offensive team selects a different position on or between the hash marks before the ready-for-play signal. After the ready-for-play signal, the ball may be relocated only after a charged team timeout, unless preceded by a Team A foul or offsetting fouls.

e. Possession series. Each team retains the ball during a possession series until it scores or fails to make a first down. The ball remains alive after a change of team possession until it is declared dead. However, Team A may not have a first down if it regains possession after a change of team possession (**A.R. 3-1-3:I-IX**). Beginning with the fifth extra period, a team's possession series will be one play for a two-point try from the three-yard line, unless relocated by penalty.

   Team A and B designations are the same as defined in Rule 2-27-1.

f. Scoring. The team scoring the greater number of points during the regulation and extra periods shall be declared the winner. There shall be an equal number of possession series, as described in (e) above, in each extra period, unless Team B scores other than on the try. Beginning with the third extra period, teams scoring a touchdown must attempt a two-point try. Although not illegal, a one-point try attempt by Team A will not result in a score (**A.R. 3-1-3:X**).

g. Fouls after a change of team possession are treated specially (Rule 10-2-7). (**A.R. 3-1-3:XI-XIV**)

h. Timeouts. Each team shall be allowed one timeout for each extra period (Rule 3-3-7). Timeouts not used during the regulation periods may not be carried over into the extra period(s). Unused extra period timeouts may not be carried over to other extra periods. Timeouts between periods shall be charged to the succeeding period.

   Radio and television timeouts are permitted only between extra periods (first and second, second and third, etc.). Charged team timeouts may not be extended for radio and television purposes. The extra period(s) begins when the ball is first snapped.

i. In the absence of a media timeout, after the second and fourth extra periods, there will be a two-minute mandatory break period.

Approved Ruling 3-1-3

I. Other than on the try, Team B scores a touchdown after intercepting a forward pass, intercepting or recovering a backward pass or fumble, or returning a blocked field goal attempt. **RULING:** Period and game are ended, and Team B is the winner. [Cited by 3-1-3-e]

II. During the first possession series of a period, Team B intercepts a forward pass, or intercepts or recovers a fumble or a backward pass, and does not score a touchdown. **RULING:** Team A's possession series is ended and Team B starts its series. Team B becomes Team A when the referee declares the ball ready for play. [Cited by 3-1-3-e]

III. During the first possession series of a period, Team A's field goal attempt is blocked and does not cross the neutral zone. Team A recovers the ball and runs for a touchdown. **RULING:** Six points for Team A. Team B begins its possession series after the try. [Cited by 3-1-3-e]

IV. Team A's field goal attempt is blocked and does not cross the neutral zone. A23 recovers the ball and is tackled beyond the line to gain. **RULING:** Team A retains the ball to continue its possession series. First and 10. [Cited by 3-1-3-e]

V. On first, second or third down, Team A's field goal attempt is blocked and does not cross the neutral zone. A23 recovers the ball and is tackled short of the line to gain. **RULING:** Team A's ball, next down. [Cited by 3-1-3-e]

VI. During the first possession series of a period, Team B gains possession and then loses possession to Team A, which (a) scores a touchdown; (b) does not score a touchdown. **RULING:** (a) The score counts. In both (a) and (b), Team A's possession series ends and Team B begins its possession series. [Cited by 3-1-3-e]

VII. During the first possession series of a period, Team A fumbles into Team B's end zone on second down of a series. Team B recovers and downs the ball in its end zone. **RULING:** Team A's possession series is ended. Team B begins its possession series. [Cited by 3-1-3-e]

VIII. During the first possession series of a period, B10 intercepts a forward pass on his six-yard line and downs the ball in his end zone. **RULING:** Safety: two points for Team A. Team A's possession series is over. Team B will put the ball in play, first and 10 on the 25-yard line at the same end of the field. [Cited by 3-1-3-e]

IX. Team A's field-goal attempt is untouched beyond the neutral zone until B17 muffs it at the five-yard line. A75 recovers at the three-yard line. **RULING:** Team A's possession series continues; first down for Team A at the three-yard line. [Cited by 3-1-3-e]

X. On the first possession series of a period, Team A scores a touchdown. On the try, Team B intercepts a pass and returns it for a two-point touchdown. **RULING:** Team B starts its possession series at the 25-yard line with Team A leading in the overtime score 6-2. [Cited by 3-1-3-f]

XI. After the end of the first possession series by Team A, Team B commits a dead-ball foul. **RULING:** Team B starts its possession series on the 40-yard line, first and 10. [Cited by 3-1-3-g]

XII. During the first possession series of a period, A12 throws a forward pass and Team A is flagged for an illegal shift. B25 intercepts the pass, and B38 (a) clips or (b) commits a flagrant personal foul before B25 crosses Team A's goal line. **RULING:** Score not allowed. The fouls cancel and the down is not repeated. Team A's possession series is ended, and (a) Team B begins its possession series at the 25-yard line; (b) B38 is disqualified and Team B begins its possession series at the 40-yard line. [Cited by 3-1-3-g]

XIII. During the second possession series of a period, B25 intercepts a pass and carries the ball across Team A's goal line. During the run, B79 clips at midfield. **RULING:** No touchdown. Either the game is over, or the next period will start with first and 10 at the 25-yard line, since the penalty is not carried over. [Cited by 3-1-3-g]

XIV. During the first possession series B37 intercepts a forward pass and has a clear field to the goal line when he makes an obscene gesture toward the nearest opponent. **RULING:** Team B's score is cancelled and the penalty is carried over. Team B begins its possession series on the 40-yard line, first and 10. (Rules 3-1-3, 10-2-7-a and 10-2-7-b). [Cited by 3-1-3-g]

SECTION 2. Playing Time and Intermissions

Length of Periods and Intermissions

ARTICLE 1. The maximum total playing time in a game shall be 60 minutes, divided into four periods of 15 minutes each, with one-minute intermissions between the first and second periods (first half) and between the third and fourth periods (second half) (***Exception:*** A one-minute intermission between the first and second and the third and fourth periods may be extended for radio and television timeouts).

∇ Competitions may adopt regulations to set the maximum playing time in a game to 60, 48, 40 or 32 minutes, provided the four periods are of equal length.

a. No period shall end until the ball is dead and the referee declares the period ended [S14].
b. ∅ The intermission between halves shall be 20 minutes, unless altered before the game by mutual agreement of the administrations of both teams and the competition authority. Immediately after the second period ends, the referee should begin the intermission by signalling to start the game clock [S2].
c. § It is strongly recommended that game management schedule the kickoff time no later than four hours before darkness (defined as the time of local sunset or the time at which any artificial lights must be switched off).
d. # If a game (delayed by five or more minutes) kicks off less than 3½ hours before darkness, playing time shall be limited to a maximum of 48 minutes. (**A.R. 3-2-1:I**)
e. # If a game (delayed by five or more minutes) kicks off less than 3 hours before darkness, playing time shall be limited to a maximum of 40 minutes. (**A.R. 3-2-1:I**)

REPORT – Playing time shortened due to darkness.

Approved Ruling 3-2-1

I. A game is scheduled with a kickoff time 3 hours before darkness. (a) It kicks off on schedule. (b) The kickoff is delayed by 5 or more minutes. **RULING:** (a) The playing time will be as determined by the competition (60 minutes by default). (b) The playing time will be limited to a maximum of 40 minutes. [Cited by 3-2-1-d, 3-2-1-e]

Timing Adjustments

ARTICLE 2. Before the game starts, playing time and the intermission between halves may be shortened by the referee if he is of the opinion that darkness or other conditions may interfere with the game. The four periods must be of equal length if the game is shortened before its start.

a. ∅ Any time during the game, the playing time of any remaining period or periods and the intermission between halves may be shortened by mutual agreement of the opposing head coaches and the referee. (**A.R. 3-2-2:I**)
b. Timing errors on the game clock may be corrected but only in the period in which they occur.
c. If the referee has positive knowledge of the elapsed time, he will reset and appropriately start the game clock.
d. Timing errors on a play clock may be corrected by the referee. The play clock shall start again (Rule 2-29-2).
e. When the play-clock count is interrupted by circumstances beyond the control of either team (without positive knowledge of game clock elapsed time), a new count shall be started and the game clock shall start per Rule 3-2-4-b.
f. The 40/25-second clock is not started when the game clock is running with fewer than 40 or 25 seconds, respectively, in a period.
g. The game clock should not be stopped if the play clock is started in conflict with paragraph f above.
h. Timing adjustments for games using video review are governed by Rule 12-2-2-a-10.

Approved Ruling 3-2-2

I. At halftime the score is 56-0. The head coaches and the referee agree that the third and fourth quarters should be shortened to 10 minutes each. **RULING:** The remaining quarters may be shortened to 10 minutes each. [Cited by 3-2-2-a]

Extension of Periods

ARTICLE 3. a. A period shall be extended for an untimed down if one or more of the following occurs during a down in which time expires (**A.R. 3-2-3:I-VIII**):

1. A penalty is accepted for a live-ball foul(s). (***Exception:*** Rule 10-2-5-a). The period is *not* extended if the foul is by the team in possession and the statement of the penalty includes loss of down (**A.R. 3-2-3:VIII**).
2. There are offsetting fouls.
3. An official sounds his whistle inadvertently or otherwise incorrectly signals the ball dead.

b. Additional untimed downs will be played until a down is free of the circumstances in statements 1, 2 and 3 of Rule 3-2-3-a (above).

c. If a touchdown is scored during a down in which time in a period expires, the period is extended for the try (***Exception:*** Rule 8-3-2-a).

Approved Ruling 3-2-3

I. During the extension of a period after the ball is ready for play and before the snap, Team A commits a foul. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul. Team A is penalised for the foul and is entitled to complete the down. [Cited by 3-2-3-a]

II. Time expires during Team A's free kick. A1 is offside on the kick. **RULING:** Penalty – Five yards from the previous spot, the end of Team B's run, or the touchback spot, and the period is extended. Repeat the free kick or Team B is awarded an untimed down. [Cited by 3-2-3-a]

III. Time expires during Team A's attempted field goal. Team B was offside. **RULING:** Penalty – Five yards from the previous spot, the period is extended (Rule 10-2-2-d-4-a). [Cited by 3-2-3-a]

IV. A Team A player interferes with the opportunity to catch a kick (not a try) during a down in which time expires. **RULING:** Penalty – 15 yards from the spot of the foul. The period is extended. [Cited by 3-2-3-a]

V. Team A scores a touchdown during a down in which time expires. After the touchdown, but before the try, either team fouls. **RULING:** The period is extended only for the try. The penalty may be enforced on the try or the succeeding kickoff, which is in the next period. [Cited by 10-2-5-c, 3-2-3-a]

VI. Team A scores a touchdown during a down in which time expires. During Team A's successful try, Team B fouls. **RULING:** The period is not extended for the kickoff. Team A may accept the penalty and repeat the try, or decline the penalty and accept the score. Penalties for personal fouls and unsportsmanlike conduct are enforced on the subsequent kickoff or the succeeding spot in extra periods. [Cited by 10-2-5-e, 3-2-3-a, 8-3-3-b-1]

VII. Team A scores a touchdown during a down in which time expires. After the try ends, either team commits a dead-ball foul. **RULING:** The try may be repeated for an accepted penalty if a live-ball foul occurred during the try; the penalty for the dead-ball foul will then also be enforced on the repeated try. The period is not extended to enforce a penalty for a dead-ball foul. If accepted, this penalty must be enforced on the kickoff to start the next period or at the succeeding spot in extra periods [Cited by 10-2-5-e, 3-2-3-a, 8-3-3-d-2, 8-3-5]

VIII. Time expires in the first half on a play in which A12 is beyond the neutral zone when he completes a pass to A88 in Team B's end zone. **RULING:** Team B accepts the penalty to nullify the score, but the period is not extended because the penalty includes loss of down. The first half ends. [Cited by 3-2-3-a-1, 3-2-3-a]

Timing Devices

ARTICLE 4. a. □ *Game clock*. Playing time shall be kept with a game clock that may be either a stop watch operated by the line judge, back judge, field judge or side judge, or a game clock operated by an assistant under the direction of the appropriate judge. The type of game clock shall be determined by the game management.

b. □ *40-Second Clock*.
   1. When an official signals that the ball is dead, the play clock shall begin a 40-second count.
   2. If the 40-second clock does not start or the count is interrupted for reasons beyond the control of the officials or the play-clock operator (e.g. clock malfunction), the referee shall stop the game clock and signal (both palms open in an over-the-head pumping motion) that the play clock should be reset at 40 seconds and started immediately.
   3. In the event that the 40-second clock is running and reads 20 before the ball is ready to be snapped, the referee shall signal that the play clock be set at 25 seconds. If there is a delay in doing this, the referee shall declare a timeout and signal that the play clock be set at 25 seconds. When play is to be resumed, the referee will give the ready-for-play signal [S1] and the play clock shall begin the 25-second count. The game clock will start on the snap unless it had been running when the referee declared a timeout; in that case, it will start on the referee's signal (Rule 3-3-2-f). (**A.R. 3-2-4:I and II**)

c. *25-Second Clock*. If the officials signal the game clock to be stopped for any of the following reasons, the referee shall signal (one open palm in an over-the-head pumping motion) that the clock should be set at 25 seconds:
   1. Penalty administration.
   2. Charged team timeout.
   3. Media timeout.
   4. Injury timeout for a player of the offensive team only. The play clock is set to 40 seconds for an injury to a player of the defensive team.
   5. Measurement.
   6. Team B is awarded a first down.
   7. After a kick down other than a free kick where Team B will next snap the ball.
   8. Scores other than a touchdown (not the try).
   9. Start of each period.
   10. Start of a team's possession series in an extra period.
   11. Video review.
   12. Other administrative stoppage.
   13. An offensive team player's helmet comes completely off through play. The play clock is set to 40 seconds if the helmet comes completely off a player of the defensive team.

   When play is to be resumed, the referee will give the ready-for-play signal [S1] and the play clock will begin its count.

d. *Device malfunction*. If a visual 40/25-second timing device becomes inoperative, both coaches shall be notified by the referee immediately and both clocks shall be turned off.

Approved Ruling 3-2-4

I. When the ball is dead after a running play that ends out of bounds, the 40-second play clock is started. The umpire receives the ball from the line judge, and as he is placing it on the ground, he sees that it is not a legal game ball. He tosses the ball to the line judge who attempts to get a legal ball from the ball boy. **RULING:** If the play clock reads 20 seconds or less before the correct ball is in from the sideline and ready for play, the referee declares a timeout and signals to reset the play clock to 25 seconds. When the correct ball is ready for play he signals to start the play clock and the game clock. [Cited by 3-2-4-b-3]

II. When the ball is dead after a running play that ends in the side zone, the officials have difficulty getting the ball in to the hash mark. As the play clock nears 20 seconds, the umpire

places the ball on the ground, and by the time the officials are ready, the play clock is somewhat below 20 when the umpire steps away. **RULING:** Without stopping the game clock, the referee gives the "pump" signal to indicate that the play clock is to be reset to 25. If the play clock is quickly reset to 25, the game clock does not stop. Only if the play clock operator does not quickly respond to the referee's "pump" signal will the referee declare a timeout, signal for the play clock to be set at 25, and then signal to start both the play and game clocks. [Cited by 3-2-4-b-3]

III. Team A scores a touchdown and the 40-second play clock is started. Without stopping the game, the referee receives positive confirmation from the video judge that the touchdown is good. The play clock displays: (a) 20 or more seconds, or (b) 19 or fewer seconds. **RULING:** The referee (a) signals to clear the centre judge and allow the ball to be snapped. (b) The referee will signal the play clock be reset to 25 seconds, and will then signal to clear the centre judge and allow the ball to be snapped.

IV. Team A scores a touchdown and the 40-second play clock is started. With less than 25 seconds on the play clock, Team A's head coach or team captain requests the ball be moved to the left hash mark. **RULING:** The officials will not honour the request. Team A may call a timeout to relocate the ball unless preceded by a Team A foul or offsetting fouls.

SECTION 3. Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock

Timeout

ARTICLE 1. a. An official shall signal timeout when the rules provide for stopping the clock or when a timeout is charged to a team or to the referee. Other officials should repeat timeout signals. The referee may declare and charge himself with a discretionary timeout for any contingency not elsewhere covered by the rules. (**A.R. 3-3-1:IV**)

b. When a team's charged timeouts are exhausted and it requests a timeout, the officials shall not acknowledge the request (Rule 3-3-4).

c. Once the game begins, players shall not practice with a ball on the field of play or the end zones except during the half-time intermission.

Approved Ruling 3-3-1

I. On third and 2½, A45 fumbles a live ball after gaining three yards. The officials cannot determine who has recovered the fumble, so the line judge signals the clock to stop while the ball is being located. A45 is found to be in possession of the ball and (a) has not made his line to gain or (b) has made his line to gain. **RULING:** The 40-second clock starts when the ball is declared dead. (a) The referee immediately will signal the game clock to start. (b) The game clock will start on the referee's signal when the ball is ready for play.

II. On second and 14, A45 gains six yards and is downed with the ball in his possession. The linesman, mistaking the back stake of the line-to-gain chain for the front stake, erroneously signals the clock to stop. **RULING:** As soon as the error is detected by any official, the signal to start the clock shall be given by the game official detecting the error.

III. Team A fumbles or the ball is loose after a backward pass. Several players dive on the ball, creating a "pile". **RULING:** The covering official(s) shall stop the clock and the 40-second clock shall start. Upon positive knowledge of who recovered, the referee will point in the direction governed by possession and start the game clock (a) immediately if Team A has recovered short of the line to gain (no first down), or (b) on the snap if Team B has recovered. [Cited by 3-3-2-e-8]

IV. A shoelace, padlace, jersey, number or equipment breaks or tears. **RULING:** No referee's discretionary timeout permitted for repair or replacement. [Cited by 3-3-1-a]

Starting and Stopping the Clock

ARTICLE 2. ∇ If the margin in the score becomes more than 34 points, a *running clock session* will start. During a running clock session, the game clock will stop only for reasons marked * below. For other events listed here, the clock will keep running. Competitions may adopt regulations to:

1. forgo the rule in the first half of a game;

2. limit the running clock rule to use after an elapsed time no later than 2 hours 15 minutes after kickoff, but only in games that are broadcast live;
3. reduce the score margin below 34 points.

a. *Free Kick*. After the ball is free-kicked, the game clock shall be started on an official's signal when the ball is legally touched in the field of play, or when it crosses the goal line after being touched legally by Team B in its end zone. It is subsequently stopped on an official's signal when the ball is dead by rule. (**A.R. 3-3-2:VII**)

b. *Scrimmage Down*. When a period begins with a scrimmage down, the game clock shall be started when the ball is legally snapped. On all other scrimmage downs, the game clock shall be started when the ball is legally snapped (Rule 3-3-2-d) or on a prior signal by the referee (Rule 3-3-2-e). The game clock shall not run during a try, during an extension of a period or during an extra period. (**A.R. 3-3-2:I-IV**)

c. *After a Score*. The game clock shall stop on an official's signal after a touchdown, field goal or safety. It shall be started again as in (a) above unless an accepted penalty erases the score or the down is repeated in which cases it shall be started when the ball is legally snapped.

d. *Starts on the Snap*. For each of the following, the game clock is stopped on an official's signal. If the next play begins with a snap, the game clock will start on the snap:
   1. Touchback (provided Team B will next snap the ball).
   2. With fewer than two minutes remaining in a half a Team A ball carrier, fumble or backward pass is ruled out of bounds. (***Exception:*** After a Team A forward fumble goes out of bounds, the clock starts on the referee's signal.)
   3. Team B is awarded a first down and will next snap the ball. (**A.R. 3-3-2:V**)
   4. A forward pass is ruled incomplete.
   5. A team is granted a charged timeout. *
   6. The ball becomes illegal. *
   7. A period ends. *
   8. A legal kick down ends. (**A.R. 3-3-2:VI**)
   9. A return kick is made.
   10. A scrimmage kick is made beyond the neutral zone.
   11. Team A commits a delay-of-game foul while in a scrimmage kick formation.

e. *Starts on the Referee's Signal*. For each of the following reasons, the game clock is stopped on an official's signal. If the next play begins with a snap, the game clock will start on the referee's signal:
   1. Team A is awarded a first down, either through play or by penalty.
   2. A Team A forward fumble goes out of bounds.
   3. Other than with fewer than two minutes remaining in a half, a Team A ball carrier, fumble or backward pass is ruled out of bounds.
   4. To complete a penalty (***Exception:*** Rule 3-4-5-b). *
   5. An injury timeout is allowed for one or more players or an official. (**A.R. 3-3-5:I-V**) *
   6. An inadvertent whistle is sounded.
   7. A possible first-down measurement. *
   8. Both teams cause a delay in making the ball ready for play (**A.R. 3-3-1:III**).
   9. A live ball comes into possession of an official.
   10. A head coach requests a conference or video review. *

11. The referee grants a media timeout. *
12. The referee declares a discretionary timeout. *
13. The referee declares a timeout for unfair noise (Rule 9-2-1-b-5).
14. An illegal pass is thrown to conserve time (**A.R. 7-3-2:II-VII**) (***Exception:*** Rule 3-4-5-b).
15. The referee interrupts the 40/25-second count.
16. A player's helmet comes completely off through play.
17. When either team commits a dead-ball foul. *

f. *Snap Supersedes Referee's Signal*. Whenever one or more incidents that cause the game clock to be started on the referee's signal (Rule 3-3-2-e) occur in conjunction with any that cause it to be started on the snap (Rules 3-3-2-c and 3-3-2-d), it shall be started on the snap. (***Exception:*** Rule 3-4-5 (10-second runoff) supersedes this rule.) (**A.R. 3-3-2:VIII-IX**)

g. *Running clock*.

1. During a running clock session, the clock will always be started on the ready for play rather than the snap. × (**A.R. 3-3-2:X-XI**)
2. If during a running clock session, the margin in the score continues to be more than 34 points, the running clock session will continue. If the margin drops to 34 or fewer points, the running clock session will end immediately on the relevant score and normal clock rules will apply unless and until the margin becomes more than 34 points again. (***Exception:*** If a competition reduces the score margin to start a running clock session below 34 points, the margin to end it will be similarly lower.)

Approved Ruling 3-3-2

I. Fourth and six. Team A's running play, which ends inbounds, gains (a) eight yards or (b) five yards. B1 is offside during the play. **RULING:** (a) Team A's ball. First and 10. The clock starts on the referee's signal. (b) Team A's ball. Fourth and one. The clock starts on the referee's signal. (Rules 3-3-2-e-1 and 3-3-2-e-4) [Cited by 3-3-2-b]

II. Fourth and four. Team A's running play, which ends inbounds, gains (a) six yards or (b) three yards. B1 is offside during the play. **RULING:** (a) Team A's ball. First and 10. The clock starts on the referee's signal. (b) Team A's ball. First and 10 after accepting the penalty. The clock starts on the referee's signal. [Cited by 3-3-2-b]

III. Third and four. Team A's pass is intercepted by B1, who is downed inbounds. B2 was offside during the play. **RULING:** Team A's ball. First and 10. The clock starts on the referee's signal. Although the clock was stopped to award Team B a first down, Team B will not next snap the ball. [Cited by 3-3-2-b]

IV. Late in the second or fourth quarter, ball carrier A37 goes out of bounds. When the game clock is stopped it reads (a) 2:00 or (b) 1:59. **RULING:** (a) If there is a two-minute warning, the game clock will start on the snap. Otherwise, the game clock starts on the referee's signal when the ball is ready for play. (b) The game clock starts on the snap. [Cited by 3-3-2-b]

V. Late in the second or fourth quarter, Team A has second and eight. B44 intercepts a legal forward pass and carries the ball out of bounds. B79 is in the neutral zone at the snap. When the game clock is stopped it reads (a) 2:00, or (b) 1:59. **RULING:** Team A accepts the penalty and retains possession of the ball. In both (a) and (b) if there is a two-minute warning, the game clock will start on the snap. Otherwise, the game clock starts on the referee's signal, because Team B will not next snap the ball. [Cited by 3-3-2-d-3]

VI. Fourth and eight at the A-12, late in the fourth quarter. The punt is blocked and the ball does not cross the neutral zone. At the A-10, back A22 recovers the ball and throws a forward pass to eligible A88 who is tackled at the B-3. The game clock reads 0:03. **RULING:** Team A's ball at the B-3, first and goal. The game clock starts on the snap because of the legal kick play. (Rules 3-3-2-d-8, 3-3-2-e-1, 3-3-2-f) [Cited by 3-3-2-d-8]

VII. Team A kicks off to start the game and the kick receiver (a) makes a fair catch; (b) first touches the ball when he recovers it with his knee on the ground. **RULING:** (a) and (b) No time

runs off the clock. Team B will have first and 10 with the game clock reading 15:00. [Cited by 3-3-2-a]

VIII. Third and five at the B-15 late in the fourth quarter, with Team A trailing 10-7. Quarterback A11 rolls out and is at the B-12 when he throws a forward pass that is incomplete. When the ball is dead the game clock shows 0:13. Team B accepts the penalty for the illegal forward pass. **RULING:** Fourth and seven at the B-17. Team B has the option for a 10-second runoff. Assuming that Team B accepts the runoff, the game clock is set at 0:03 and starts on the referee's signal. [Cited by 3-3-2-f, 3-4-5-b-Note]

IX. Second and seven at the A-5 late in the second quarter. Quarterback A11 drops back to pass and is scrambling in his end zone as he tries to find an open receiver. About to be tackled in the end zone, A11 throws the ball forward to the ground in an area where there is no eligible receiver. The referee throws a flag for intentional grounding. When the ball is dead the game clock shows 0:18. Team B accepts the penalty. **RULING:** The penalty results in a safety, and Team A will free kick at the A-20. Team B has the option for a 10-second runoff. If Team B accepts the runoff, the game clock is set at 0:08 and starts on the referee's signal. If Team B declines the runoff, the game clock remains at 0:18 and starts when the kicked ball is legally touched in the field of play. [Cited by 3-3-2-f, 3-4-5-b-Note]

X. The score is 35-0. The trailing team scores a touchdown to make the score 35-6. **RULING:** The clock stops when the touchdown is scored — the margin is no longer more than 34 points. Normal clock rules then apply unless/until the leading team increases the lead to more than 34 points again. [Cited by 3-3-2-g-1]

XI. The score is 41-0. The trailing team scores a touchdown to make the score 41-6. Then they kick the extra point to make the score 41-7. **RULING:** The clock stops when the try is scored — it is only then that the margin drops to 34 points. [Cited by 3-3-2-g-1]

XII. The score is 30-0. The leading team scores a touchdown to make the score 36-0. **RULING:** The clock is stopped for the touchdown and will restart when the ball is declared ready for play on the ensuing free kick, but will not stop again until one of the events marked * occurs. (Rule 3-3-2-g)

XIII. The score is 28-0. The leading team scores a touchdown to make the score 34-0. Then they score a try touchdown to make the score 36-0. **RULING:** The clock was stopped for the original touchdown and will restart when the ball is declared ready for play on the ensuing free kick, and will not stop again until one of the events marked * occurs.

Suspending the game

ARTICLE 3. a. The referee may suspend the game temporarily when conditions warrant such action.

b. When the game is stopped by actions of a person(s) not subject to the rules, or for any other reasons not specified in the rules, and cannot continue, the referee shall:
   1. Suspend play and direct the players to their team areas.
   2. Refer the problem to those responsible for the game's management.
   3. Resume the game when conditions are satisfactory.

c. ∇ If a game is suspended under Rules 3-3-3-a and b before the end of the fourth period and cannot be resumed, there are four possible options:
   1. Resume the game at a later date;
   2. Terminate the game with a determined final score;
   3. Forfeit of the game; or
   4. Declare a no contest.

   The option that takes effect shall be determined by competition regulations.

d. ∇ If a game is suspended under Rules 3-3-3-a and b after four periods of play and cannot be resumed, the game shall be ruled a tie. The final score shall be the score at the end of the last completed period. (Note: If a winner must be determined in a competition playoff game, competition regulations shall determine when and where the game will be resumed.)

e. A suspended game, if resumed, will begin with the same time remaining and under the identical conditions of down, distance, field position and player eligibility.

Charged Team Timeouts

ARTICLE 4. When timeouts are not exhausted, an official shall allow a charged team timeout when requested by any player or head coach when the ball is dead.

a. Each team is entitled to three charged team timeouts during each half.

b. After the ball is declared dead and before the snap, a legal substitute may request a timeout if he is between the nine-yard marks. (**A.R. 3-3-4:I**)

c. A player who participated during the previous down may request a timeout between the time the ball is declared dead and the snap without being between the nine-yard marks. (**A.R. 3-3-4:I**)

d. A head coach who is in, or in the vicinity of, his team area or coaching box may request a timeout between the time the ball is declared dead and the next snap.

e. A player, incoming substitute or head coach may request a head coach's conference with the referee if the coach believes a rule has been enforced improperly. If the rule enforcement is not changed, the coach's team will be charged a timeout, or a delay penalty if all timeouts have been used.

   1. Only the referee may stop the clock for a head coach's conference.
   2. A request for a head coach's conference or video review must be made before the ball is snapped or free-kicked for the next play and before the end of the second or fourth period (Rule 5-2-9).
   3. After a head coach's conference or video review, the full team timeout is granted if charged by the referee.

Approved Ruling 3-3-4

I. Before the snap, a legal substitute of either team running from the bench requests a timeout before being within the nine-yard marks. He then requests a timeout again after being within the nine-yard marks. **RULING:** Initial timeout request not granted. Second request granted (Rule 7-1-3-b). [Cited by 3-3-4-b, 3-3-4-c, 7-1-3-b-1]

Injury Timeout

ARTICLE 5. a. In the event of an injured player(s):

   1. An official will declare a timeout and the player(s) must leave the game. He must remain out of the game for at least one down, even if his team is granted a team timeout. When in question, officials will take a timeout for an injured player.
   2. The player(s) may not return to the game until he receives approval of medical personnel designated by his team.
   3. Officials, coaches and trainers shall give special attention to players who exhibit signs of a concussion. (See Appendix C.)
   4. Whenever a participant (player or game official) is bleeding, has blood saturated on the uniform, or has blood on exposed skin, the player or game official shall go to the team area and be given appropriate medical treatment. He may not return to the game without approval of medical personnel. (**A.R. 3-3-5:I-VII**)

b. To curtail a possible time-gaining advantage by feigning injuries, attention is directed to the strongly worded statement in "The Football Code" (Coaching Ethics).

c. An injury timeout may follow a charged team timeout.

d. The referee will declare a timeout for an injured official.

e. Following a timeout for an injured player of the defensive team, the play clock shall be set at 40 seconds.

f. *Ten-Second Runoff*. If the player injury is the only reason for stopping the clock (other than his or a teammate's helmet coming off, Rule 3-3-9) with less than one minute in the half, the opponent has the option of a 10-second runoff.

1. The play clock will be set at 40 seconds for an injury to a player of the defensive team and at 25 seconds for an injury to a player of the offensive team (Rule 3-2-4-c-4).
2. Rule 3-4-5 applies. (**A.R. 3-3-5:VIII and IX**)

Approved Ruling 3-3-5

I. At the end of a play, with the game clock running, the referee notices that A22 is bleeding. **RULING:** The referee stops the clock and declares an injury timeout. A22 leaves the field of play (or the end zone) for treatment by appropriate medical personnel. Unless there is also an injury to a Team B player the play clock is set to 25 seconds and starts on the ready-for-play signal (Rule 3-2-4-c-4). [Cited by 3-3-2-e-5, 3-3-5-a-4]

II. After being treated for a bleeding or oozing wound, A22 (A.R. 3-3-5:I) attempts to enter the game before the next snap. **RULING:** A22 must remain out of the game for at least one play. In any event, he may return only on the approval of his team's medical personnel. [Cited by 3-3-2-e-5, 3-3-5-a-4]

III. B52's jersey has blood spots on it. **RULING:** Unless the official determines that the jersey is saturated with blood, B52 may remain in the game. (Note: Saturated is defined as soaked with moisture or drenched. If blood has penetrated through a garment to the skin or can be transferred to another player or game official, the garment is saturated.) [Cited by 3-3-2-e-5, 3-3-5-a-4]

IV. An official notices that blood has soaked through B10's jersey. **RULING:** B10 must leave the game until medical personnel have determined if the jersey must be replaced. [Cited by 3-3-2-e-5, 3-3-5-a-4]

V. B10 tackles A12. An official determines that B10's jersey is saturated with blood from a cut on A12's arm. **RULING:** Both players must leave the game – A12 for treatment of his open wound, B10 for a determination by medical personnel as to whether he has to replace his jersey. [Cited by 3-3-2-e-5, 3-3-5-a-4]

VI. During a dead-ball interval, A85 notices a bleeding cut on his arm. He voluntarily goes to the team area and is replaced by A88. **RULING:** This is a legal substitution and there is no variation in game timing. A85 may return to the game after the injury has been treated, but he must adhere to substitution rules. [Cited by 3-3-5-a-4]

VII. On second down the Team A ball carrier is tackled inbounds. The clock is then stopped for an injury to a player of Team B. (a) No other players are injured on the play. (b) There is also an injury to a player of Team A. (c) The referee grants a media timeout. **RULING:** In (a), (b) and (c) upon preparing to resume play the referee will indicate that the play clock be set to 40 seconds. Both the play clock and the game clock will start on the ready-for-play signal. [Cited by 3-3-5-a-4]

VIII. Late in the half, ball carrier A35 is tackled. B79 goes to the ground with an injury, and the officials stop the game clock, which shows (a) 12 seconds; (b) eight seconds. **RULING:** Team A has the option of a 10-second runoff. If there is no 10-second runoff the game clock starts on the snap. If Team A accepts the option, (a) there will be two seconds on the game clock which will start on the referee's signal; (b) time in the half has expired. [Cited by 3-3-5-f-2]

IX. Late in the half, ball carrier A35 is tackled beyond the line to gain. B79 goes to the ground with an injury. **RULING:** There is no option for a 10-second runoff. because the game clock stops on the first down as well as the injury. The game clock starts on the referee's signal. [Cited by 3-3-5-f-2]

Violation Timeouts

ARTICLE 6. For noncompliance with Rule 1-4-5-c-2, the team will be charged a timeout (Rule 3-4-2-b-2).

Length of Timeouts

ARTICLE 7. a. A charged full team timeout requested by any player or head coach shall be one minute plus the five-second referee notification and the 25-second play clock interval. (***Exception:*** Rule 3-3-4-e-3).

b. Other timeouts shall be not longer than the referee deems necessary to fulfill the purpose for which they are declared, including a radio or TV timeout, but any timeout may be extended by the referee for the benefit of an injured player (Refer to Appendix A for the guidelines for game officials to use during a serious on-field player injury).

c. If the team charged with a full team timeout wishes to resume play before the expiration of one minute and its opponent indicates readiness, the referee will declare the ball ready for play.

d. The length of a referee's timeout depends on the circumstances of each timeout.

e. Penalty options must be exercised before a team timeout.

f. The intermission after a safety, try or successful field goal shall be not more than one minute. It may be extended for radio or television.

Referee's Notification

ARTICLE 8. During a full team timeout (Rule 3-3-7-a) the referee shall notify both teams after one minute. Five seconds later he shall declare the ball ready for play.

a. When a third timeout is charged to a team in either half, the referee shall notify the field captain and head coach of that team.

b. Unless a visual game clock is the official timepiece, the referee also shall inform each field captain and head coach when two minutes or less of playing time remain in each half. He may order the clock stopped for that purpose. If the game clock is running at 2:00 and the ball is dead, the clock shall be stopped and the two-minute warning given then. If the ball is live at 2:00, the two-minute warning shall be given after the ball becomes dead.

   1. The play clock may be interrupted for this purpose and shall then be reset to 25 seconds.
   2. The clock starts on the snap after the two-minute notification.
   3. ∇ Competitions may adopt regulations that even if a visual game clock is the official timepiece, a two-minute warning shall still be given.

c. If a visual game clock is not the official timing device during the last two minutes of each half, the referee or his representative shall notify each captain and head coach of the time remaining each time the clock is stopped by rule. Also, a representative may leave the team area along the limit line to relay timing information under these conditions.

Helmet Comes Off — Timeout

ARTICLE 9. a. If a player's helmet comes completely off through play, other than as the direct result of a foul by an opponent, the player must leave the game for the next down. The game clock will stop at the end of the down. The player may remain in the game if his team is granted a charged timeout.

b. When the helmet coming off is the only reason for stopping the clock, other than due to an injury to the player or his teammate (Rule 3-3-5), the following conditions apply (**A.R. 3-3-9:I-III**):

   1. The play clock will be set at 25 seconds if the player is on offense and at 40 seconds if the player is on defense. With one minute or more remaining in either half, the game clock will start on the referee's signal.

2. *Ten-Second Runoff*. If there is less than one minute in the half the opponent has the option of a 10-second runoff, unless the helmet comes off as the direct result of a foul by the opponent. Rule 3-4-5 applies.

c. If the ball carrier's helmet comes off as in paragraph a (above) the ball is dead (Rule 4-1-3-q). If the player is not the ball carrier the ball remains alive, but he must not continue to participate in the play beyond the immediate action in which he is engaged. Prolonged participation is a personal foul (Rule 9-1-17). By definition such a player is obviously out of the play (Rule 9-1-12-b).

d. A player who intentionally removes his helmet during the down commits a foul for unsportsmanlike conduct (Rule 9-2-1-a-1-i).

Approved Ruling 3-3-9

I. After the ball is dead, A55 blocks B33 at his waist, knocking him to the ground. As B33 hits the ground his helmet comes off. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul by A55, 15-yard penalty from the succeeding spot. B33 must leave the game for the next down as his helmet came off through play and not due to a helmet foul. B33 may remain in the game if Team B takes a timeout. [Cited by 3-3-9-b]

II. Late in the first quarter ball carrier A22 is legally tackled, and his helmet comes off just after his back hits the ground. The game clock reads 0:00. **RULING:** A22 must leave the game for the next down, which will be the initial down of the second quarter. A22's helmet came off through play and there was no helmet foul by Team B. However, A22 may remain in the game if Team A takes a timeout. [Cited by 3-3-9-b]

III. During the down A22's helmet comes off (no helmet foul by the defense) and B77 goes down with an injury. The ball carrier is tackled inbounds. When the clock is stopped it reads 0:58 in the fourth quarter. **RULING:** Unless Team A takes a charged timeout, A22 must leave the game for one play. The play clock is set at 40 seconds, due to the defensive injury, rather than 25 seconds due to the helmet coming off the offensive player. There is no option for a 10-second runoff because the clock stops for both the helmet off and the injury, and these occur for opposing players. [Cited by 3-3-9-b]

IV. During the down A22's helmet comes off (no helmet foul by the defense) and A45 goes down with an injury. The ball carrier is tackled inbounds. When the clock is stopped it reads 0:58 in the fourth quarter. **RULING:** Because the injury and the helmet off occur to players on the same team, there is an option for a 10-second runoff. Team A may keep A22 in the game and also avoid the 10-second runoff by taking one charged timeout.

V. During a running play that ends in bounds, a linebacker's helmet comes off. When the ball becomes dead the game clock is stopped and reads 0:45 in the second quarter. **RULING:** The play clock is set at 40 seconds. Team A has the option for a 10-second runoff. If Team A exercises this option, unless Team B is charged with a timeout, the game clock is set to 0:35 and starts on the referee's signal. If Team B uses a timeout to avoid the 10-second runoff, the game clock remains at 0:45, the play clock is set at 25 and starts on the referee's signal, and the game clock starts on the snap.

SECTION 4. Delays/Clock Tactics

Delaying the Start of a Half

ARTICLE 1. a. Each team shall have its players on the field for the opening play at the scheduled time for the beginning of each half. When both teams refuse to enter the field first for the start of either half, the home team must be the first to enter.

PENALTY – 15 yards from the succeeding spot [S21: DSH].

b. The home management is responsible for clearing the field of play and end zones at the beginning of each half so the periods may start at the scheduled time. Bands, speeches, presentations, homecoming and similar activities are under the jurisdiction of home management and a prompt start of each half is mandatory.

PENALTY – 10 yards from the succeeding spot [S21: DSH].

(***Exception:*** The referee may waive the penalty for circumstances beyond the control of the home management.)

Illegal Delay of the Game

ARTICLE 2. a. The officials shall make the ball ready for play consistently throughout the game. The play clock will start its count-down from either 40 seconds or 25 seconds, by rule depending on circumstances. A foul for illegal delay occurs if the play clock is at :00 before the ball is put in play (Rule 3-2-4).

b. Illegal delay also includes:
   1. Deliberately advancing the ball after it is dead.
   2. When a team has expended its three timeouts and commits a Rule 1-4-5-c-2 or 3-3-4-e infraction.
   3. When a team is not ready to play after an intermission between periods, after a score, after a radio/television/team timeout, or any time the referee orders the ball put in play. (**A.R. 3-4-2:I**)
   4. Defensive verbal tactics that disconcert offensive signals (Rule 7-1-5-a-5).
   5. Defensive actions designed to cause a false start (Rule 7-1-5-a-4).
   6. Putting the ball in play before it is ready for play (Rule 4-1-4).
   7. Sideline interference (Rule 9-2-5).
   8. Action clearly designed to delay the officials from making the ball ready for play. (**A.R. 3-4-2:II**)

PENALTY – Dead-ball foul. Five yards from the succeeding spot [S7 and S21: DOG/DOD].

Approved Ruling 3-4-2

I. After any timeout, one of the teams is not ready to play. **RULING:** Illegal delay. Penalty – Five yards from the succeeding spot. [Cited by 3-4-2-b-3]

II. On a running play late in the half the Team A ball carrier is tackled inbounds. Team B players are deliberately slow to "unpile" in an obvious attempt to consume time and prevent the officials from making the ball ready for play. **RULING:** Team B foul for delay of game. Penalty — five yards at the succeeding spot. The game clock will start on the snap (Rule 3-4-3). [Cited by 3-4-2-b-8]

Unfair Clock Tactics

ARTICLE 3. The referee has broad authority in the timing of the game. He shall order the game clock or play clock started or stopped whenever either team conserves or consumes playing time by tactics obviously unfair. This includes starting the game clock on the snap if the foul is by the team ahead in the score. If the game clock is stopped to complete a penalty for a foul by the team ahead in the score (or either team if the score is tied) inside the last two minutes of a half, it will start on the snap, at the option of the offended team. The game clock will start on the ready-for-play signal after Team A throws an illegal forward or backward pass to conserve time (Rule 3-3-2-e-14). (**A.R. 3-4-3:I-V**)

Approved Ruling 3-4-3

I. In an attempt to consume time in the fourth period, Team A stalls and the play clock expires. **RULING:** Foul for delay of game. Penalty – Five yards from the succeeding spot. The clock starts on the snap. [Cited by 3-4-3]

II. With two minutes remaining in either half and his team with no timeouts remaining, B77 crosses the neutral zone and touches a Team A player in an effort to conserve time. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul. Penalty – Five yards from the succeeding spot. The clock starts on the ready-for-play signal. At his discretion, the referee may have the play clock set at 40

seconds. *Note: If there is less than one minute remaining in the half, this foul comes under the 10-second runoff rule (Rule 3-4-4).* [Cited by 3-4-3]

III. A ball carrier, late in the second period, throws a backward pass out of bounds from behind or beyond the neutral zone to conserve time. **RULING:** Penalty – Five yards from the spot of the foul and loss of down. The clock starts on the ready-for-play signal. *Note: If there is less than one minute remaining in the half, this foul comes under the 10-second runoff rule (Rule 3-4-4).* [Cited by 3-4-3, 7-2-1 Penalty]

IV. A ball carrier throws a forward pass while beyond the neutral zone to conserve time. **RULING:** Penalty – Five yards from the spot of the foul and loss of down. The clock starts on the ready-for-play signal (Rule 7-3-2 Penalty). *Note: If there is less than one minute remaining in the half, this foul comes under the 10-second runoff rule (Rule 3-4-4).* [Cited by 3-4-3, 7-3-2 Penalty]

V. Late in the fourth quarter Team A trails by four points and is driving for a potential score. After a running play on which the ball carrier is tackled inbounds, Team B players are obviously and deliberately slow in letting him get to his feet or otherwise are employing tactics to delay the officials in making the ball ready for play. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul against Team B, delay of game. When the ball is ready for play, the referee will signal the 25-second clock to start, and the game clock will start on the snap. [Cited by 3-4-3]

VI. Second and seven at the A-25. Team A is ahead in the score late in the second quarter. When ball carrier A22 is tackled in the field of play, the game clock reads 1:47. The umpire reports to the referee that he has a flag for holding by snapper A55. On the play, A22 gained (a) three yards; (b) nine yards. **RULING:** In both (a) and (b), after enforcement of the penalty, the game clock starts on the snap or on the referee's signal, at the option of Team B.

VII. Team B is leading, and the clock is running with less than two minutes left in a half. Ball carrier A21 is tackled in bounds short of the line to gain. After the ball is dead, A65 and B50 are both flagged for unsportsmanlike acts. **RULING:** The clock starts on the ready for play. Because both teams fouled, Team A does not have the option to start the clock on the snap (Rule 3-4-3).

10-second Runoff from Game Clock — Foul

ARTICLE 4. a. With the game clock running and less than one minute remaining in either half, before a change of team possession if either team commits a foul that causes the clock to stop immediately, the referee will subtract 10 seconds from the game clock at the option of the offended team. The fouls that fall into this category include but are not limited to:

1. Any foul that prevents the snap (e.g. false start, encroachment, defensive offside by contact in the neutral zone, etc.); (**A.R. 3-4-4:III**)
2. Intentional grounding to stop the clock;
3. Incomplete illegal forward pass;
4. Backward pass thrown out of bounds to stop the clock;
5. Any other foul committed with the intent of stopping the clock.

The offended team may accept the yardage penalty and decline the 10-second runoff. If the yardage penalty is declined, the 10-second runoff is declined by rule.

b. 10-second runoff procedures are specified in Rule 3-4-5.

Approved Ruling 3-4-4

I. Second and 10 at the B-30. The game clock is running in the second half. Team A trails by two points and is out of timeouts. After the ball is ready for play lineman A66 commits a false start, and when the officials stop the game clock it reads (a) 13 seconds; (b) 8 seconds. Team B accepts the yardage penalty and the clock runoff. **RULING:** (a) Five-yard penalty with 10 seconds subtracted from the game clock, which is set at 3 seconds. Second and 15 at the B-35. The clock starts on the referee's signal. (b) The game is over. Team B wins.

II. Second and 10 at the B-30. The game clock is running in the second half. Team A trails by two points and is out of timeouts. At the snap Team A has five players in the backfield. A22 carries for a three-yard gain to the B-27. When the ball is declared dead the game clock reads (a) 13 seconds; (b) 8 seconds. **RULING:** (a) and (b) Five-yard penalty, illegal formation. Second and 15 at the B-35. Because the illegal formation is not a foul that causes the clock to stop immediately, the 10-second runoff does not apply. After the penalty is administered the game clock starts on the referee's signal.

III. Team A is leading 24-21 with less than one minute in the game and the game clock running. With the ball ready for play on third and seven at the B-35, tackle B55 jumps across the neutral zone and contacts A77. The officials shut the play down with the game clock showing 0:38. Team B is out of timeouts. **RULING:** Offside against Team B. Five-yard penalty and a 10-second runoff from the game clock. The game clock is set at 0:28. Third and two at the B-30. The clock starts on the referee's signal. [Cited by 3-4-4-a-1]

IV. Fourth quarter with the game clock running. Second and five at the B-20. Tackle B77 is in the neutral zone at the snap, but does not make contact. QB A12 rolls out to pass, runs to the B-17 and throws a forward pass, which falls incomplete. The game clock reads 0:15. **RULING:** Team A illegal forward pass and Team B offside. Offsetting fouls. No 10-second runoff. Second and five at the B-20. The game clock remains at 15 seconds and starts on the snap. [Cited by 3-4-5-d]

V. Second and 10 at the B-30 with the game clock running. Team A trails in the score. Guard A66 in a three-point stance misses the snap count and lurches forward, committing a false start. B77 then commits a dead-ball personal foul or a dead-ball foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. The game clock is stopped with 8 seconds remaining in the game. This occurs (a) in the fourth quarter; (b) in the second quarter. **RULING:** (a) The game is over because Team B will accept the 10-second runoff associated with the false start. Thus the penalty for B77's dead-ball foul is not enforced. (b) The half is over because Team B will accept the 10-second runoff associated with the false start. The penalty for the Team B dead-ball foul carries over to the second half. Due to the 10-second runoff, by interpretation the Team B dead-ball foul effectively occurs after the half has ended and the penalty is thus carried over. In either (a) or (b) Team A may avoid the 10-second runoff by using an available charged timeout. In that case the penalty for the foul by B77 would be enforced, giving Team A first and 10 at the B-20 after enforcement of both penalties. If this is B77's second unsportsmanlike conduct foul, he is disqualified.

VI. Second quarter. At the snap the game clock reads 0:45. During the play, A55 loses his helmet. Right tackle A77 is flagged for holding. The ball carrier is tackled inbounds short of the line to gain. **RULING:** A55 must leave the game for one play. There is no option for a 10-second runoff, because at the end of the play the clock is stopped both for the helmet off and to administer the holding penalty. The play clock is set to 25 seconds and the game clock starts on the referee's signal. (Rule 3-3-9)

10-second Runoff from Game Clock — Common Procedures

ARTICLE 5.

a. The 10-second rule only applies if the game clock is running when the event occurs and the event causes the game clock to stop.

b. If there is a 10-second subtraction, the game clock will start on the referee's signal. If there is no 10-second subtraction, the game clock will start on the snap.

NOTE: This rule supersedes Rule 3-3-2-f (snap supersedes referee's signal) but does not supersede Rule 3-3-2-g (running clock). (**A.R. 3-3-2:VIII and IX**)

c. If the team that caused the event has a team timeout remaining they may avoid the 10-second subtraction by using a team timeout. In this case the game clock will start on the snap after the timeout.

d. The 10-second subtraction does not apply when both teams are equally responsible for stopping the clock (e.g. offsetting fouls, or injured or helmet-off players from both teams). (**A.R. 3-4-4:IV**)

SECTION 5. Substitutions

Substitution Procedures

ARTICLE 1. Any number of legal substitutes for either team may enter the game between periods, after a score or try, or during the interval between downs only for the purpose of replacing a player(s) or filling a player vacancy(ies).

Legal Substitutions

ARTICLE 2. A legal substitute may replace a player or fill a player vacancy provided none of the following restrictions are violated:

a. No incoming substitute shall enter the field of play or an end zone while the ball is in play.

b. No player, in excess of 11, shall leave the field of play or an end zone while the ball is in play. (**A.R. 3-5-2:I**)

PENALTY – [a-b] Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot [S22: SUB].

c. 1. An incoming legal substitute must enter the field of play directly from his team area, and a substitute, player or departing player must depart at the sideline nearest his team area and proceed to his team area.

2. A departing player must immediately leave the field of play, including the end zones. A departing player who leaves the huddle or his position within three seconds, after a substitute becomes a player, is considered to have left immediately.

d. Substitutes who become players (Rule 2-27-9) must remain in the game for at least one play and replaced players must remain out of the game for at least one play, except during the interval between periods, after a score, or when a timeout is charged to a team or to the referee with the exception of a live ball out of bounds or an incomplete forward pass (**A.R. 3-5-2:III and VII**)

PENALTY – [c-d] Dead-ball foul. Five yards from the succeeding spot [S22: SUB].

e. When Team A sends in its substitutes, the officials will not allow the ball to be snapped until Team B has been given an opportunity to substitute. While in the process of substitution or simulated substitution, Team A is prohibited from rushing quickly to the line of scrimmage with the obvious attempt of creating a defensive disadvantage. If the ball is ready for play, the game officials will not permit the ball to be snapped until Team B has placed substitutes in position and replaced players have left the field of play. Team B must react promptly with its substitutes.

PENALTY – [e] (First offence) Dead-ball foul. Delay of game on Team B for not completing its substitutions promptly, or delay of game on Team A for causing the play clock to expire. Five yards from the succeeding spot [S21: SUB]. The referee will then notify the head coach that any further use of this tactic will result in an unsportsmanlike conduct foul.

(Second or more offence) Dead-ball foul, team unsportsmanlike conduct. An official will sound his whistle immediately. 15 yards from the succeeding spot. [S27: UC-UNS].

Approved Ruling 3-5-2

I. Any player(s), in excess of 11, obviously is withdrawing but has not reached a boundary line when the ball is put in play and he does not interfere with play or players. **RULING:** Live-ball foul. Penalty – Five yards from the previous spot. [Cited by 3-5-2-b]

II. After a change of team possession or any timeout, the ball is declared ready for play. When Team A has completed its offensive formation, Team B must promptly position its personnel. Team B will be allowed time to complete substitutions. **RULING:** Either team is

subject to a delay-of-game foul – Team B for not completing its substitutions promptly (Rule 3-4-2-b-3) or Team A for causing the 25 second clock to expire. Penalty – Five yards from the succeeding spot.

III. On third down (no change of team possession), ball carrier A27 goes out of bounds or Team A's legal forward pass falls incomplete. During this interval between downs, there is no other referee's timeout. Before the fourth down snap, substitute B75 enters the game and then departs without remaining in the game for one play. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul. Penalty – Five yards from the succeeding spot. [Cited by 3-5-2-d]

IV. Team A has 11 players in the huddle. A81 mistakenly thinks he has been replaced and runs to his team area. He is immediately sent back onto the field and assumes a position on the line of scrimmage near his sideline. The entire team has been stationary for one second before the snap and there has not been a referee's timeout. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul. The player loses his status as a participant when he enters the team area while the ball is dead, and then must adhere to substitution rules. Penalty – Five yards from the succeeding spot, or 15 yards from the succeeding spot if this is judged to be a violation of Rule 9-2-2-b. (Rules 3-5-2-d and 9-2-2-b).

V. After the ball is ready for play and the umpire (or centre judge) is in his regular position, Team A quickly replaces some players with substitutes, gets set for the required one second and snaps the ball. The umpire (or centre judge) is attempting to get to the ball to allow the defense to match up, but he is unable to prevent the snap. **RULING:** The play is shut down, the game clock is stopped and the defense is allowed to substitute in response to Team A's late substitutions. No foul. The play clock is set to 25 seconds and starts on the ready-for-play signal. The game clock starts on the ready-for-play signal or the snap, depending on its condition when play was stopped. The referee informs the Team A head coach that any subsequent such actions will result in a foul against the team for unsportsmanlike conduct under Rule 9-2-3.

VI. Between scrimmage downs, one or more Team B substitutes enter the field of play. Before the snap for the next down, more than 11 Team B players intentionally stay on the field of play as long as possible (over three seconds) to disguise the defensive personnel, the type of defense and the pass coverage. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul on Team B, illegal substitution. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot (Rule 3-5-2-c).

VII. After a down that resulted in first and 10 at the B-40, eleven players of Team A, which runs a no-huddle offense, move to their various positions to set for the next play. The ball is ready for play when A22 runs onto the field from his team area, and after he pauses at the top of the numbers, he or the coaching staff apparently realises that he is the 12th player. A22 then turns and runs back to his team area. The ball has not been snapped. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul for a substitution infraction. By interpretation A22 has become a player by entering his team's "effective huddle" and thus must remain in the game for at least one play. Five-yard penalty. Team A will have first and 15 at the B-45. (Rule 2-27-9-b) [Cited by 3-5-2-d]

VIII. Late in the first half Team A is out of timeouts. A pass play on third down ends inbounds at the B-25 short of the line to gain with the game clock showing 0:10. Facing fourth down and three, Team A immediately hurries its field goal team onto the field. **RULING:** Team B should reasonably expect that Team A will attempt a field goal in this situation and should have its field-goal defense unit ready. The umpire will not stand over the ball, as there should be no issue of the defense being uncertain about the next play.

IX. Late in the first half Team A is out of timeouts. A pass play on third down ends inbounds at the B-25 short of the line to gain with the game clock showing 0:30. Facing fourth down and three, Team A gives no indication as to its next play until the game clock reads 0:10. They then rush their field goal unit onto the field, and Team B then hurries to respond. **RULING:** The umpire moves to the ball to prevent the snap until Team B has had a reasonable opportunity to get its field-goal defense unit onto the field. The umpire will step away when he judges that the defense has had enough time. If the game clock reads 0:00 before the ball is snapped after the umpire steps away, the half is over.

More than eleven players on the field

ARTICLE 3. a. Team A may not break the huddle with more than 11 players nor keep more than 11 players in the huddle or in a formation for more than three seconds. Officials shall stop the action whether or not the ball has been snapped.

b. Team B is allowed to briefly retain more than 11 players on the field to anticipate the offensive formation, but it may not have more than 11 players in its formation if the snap is imminent. Whether the snap is imminent or has just occurred, the officials shall stop the action. (**A.R. 3-5-3:IV**)

PENALTY – [a-b] Dead-ball foul. Five yards at the succeeding spot. [S22: SUB]

c. If the officials do not detect the excessive number of players until during the down or after the down is over, or if Team B players have entered the field just before the snap but have not been in the formation, the infraction is treated as a live-ball foul. (**A.R. 3-5-3:V-VI**)

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Five yards at the previous spot. [S22: SUB]

Approved Ruling 3-5-3

I. A33, an incoming substitute, enters the huddle or assumes a position in a formation and (a) after approximately two seconds, A34 leaves the huddle and departs the field of play at his sideline, or (b) after approximately four seconds, A34 leaves the huddle and departs the field of play at his sideline. **RULING:** (a) Legal. (b) Foul. (*Note:* A departing player who leaves the huddle or his position within three seconds is considered to have left immediately.)

II. After the ball is made ready for play, substitute B12 enters the huddle or defensive formation and the departing player delays more than three seconds before leaving the huddle or formation and departing the field of play. **RULING:** Violation of the substitution rule. Dead-ball foul. (*Note:* The referee is not required to warn a departing player to leave the huddle immediately.)

III. Team A has 11 players in its huddle when A27 approaches the huddle (within 10 yards) as it breaks. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul. Penalty – Five yards from the succeeding spot (Rule 2-27-9-a).

IV. At the end of third down, Team B sends in its kick-return team. The responsible officials count the Team B players and are positive that Team B has 12 players on the field of play. After approximately four seconds, the officials sound their whistles and drop their penalty markers. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul, substitution violation. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot. [Cited by 3-5-3-b]

V. Team A is in formation to kick a field goal and Team B has eleven players in its formation. Just before the ball is snapped a twelfth Team B player runs onto the field. The ball is snapped and the kicker completes his kick. **RULING:** Live-ball foul. Five-yard penalty, previous spot, or Team A may accept the result of the play. Since Team B's twelfth player had not been in the formation when the ball was snapped, officials should not shut down the play for a dead-ball foul. The intent of Rule 3-5-3-b is to give Team B an opportunity to adjust its defense, but Team B must not be allowed to gain an advantage by an extra player entering the field very close to the time the ball is snapped. [Cited by 3-5-3-c]

VI. Team A lines up for a two-point try attempt at the B-3. Team B has eleven players in its defensive formation. A twelfth Team B player runs onto the field just before or just as the ball is snapped. A22 takes the handoff from the quarterback and (a) is tackled at the one-yard line; (b) carries the ball into the end zone. **RULING:** Live-ball foul by Team B for too many players on the field (Rule 1-1-1). Officials should not shut the play down. (a) Penalise Team B half the distance to the goal and repeat the try at the B-1.5. (b) Team A will decline the penalty on the successful try. [Cited by 3-5-3-c]

RULE 4

Ball in Play, Dead Ball, Out of Bounds

SECTION 1. Ball in Play – Dead Ball

Dead Ball Becomes Alive

ARTICLE 1. After a dead ball is ready for play, it becomes a live ball when it is legally snapped or legally free-kicked. A ball snapped or free-kicked before it is ready for play remains dead. (**A.R. 2-16-4:I**) (**A.R. 4-1-4:I and II**) (**A.R. 7-1-3:IV**) (**A.R. 7-1-5:I and II**)

Live Ball Becomes Dead

ARTICLE 2. a. A live ball becomes a dead ball as provided in the rules, or when an official sounds his whistle (even though inadvertently), or otherwise signals the ball dead. (**A.R. 4-2-1:II**) (**A.R. 4-2-4:I**)

b. If an official sounds his whistle inadvertently or otherwise signals the ball dead during a down (Rules 4-1-3-k, 4-1-3-m and 4-1-3-n) (**A.R. 4-1-2:I-V**):

1. When the ball is in player possession, the team in possession may elect to put the ball in play where declared dead or repeat the down.
2. When the ball is loose from a fumble, backward pass or illegal pass, the team in possession may elect to put the ball in play where possession was lost or repeat the down.

   Exceptions:

   (1) Rule 12.

   (2) If the ball goes out of bounds in the immediate continuing action after the inadvertent whistle, then the ball belongs to the fumbling/passing team according to Rule 7-2-4.

   (3) If there is a clear catch, recovery or interception of a loose ball in the immediate continuing action after the inadvertent whistle, then the ball belongs to the recovering team at the spot of the recovery and any advance is nullified.
3. During a legal forward pass or a free or scrimmage kick, then the ball is returned to the previous spot and the down repeated.

   Exceptions:

   (1) Rule 12.

   (2) If, in the immediate continuing action after the inadvertent whistle, a legal forward pass is incomplete (Rule 7-3-7), a free kick goes out of bounds (Rule 6-2) or touches the ground on or behind Team B's goal line (Rule 6-1-7), a scrimmage kick goes out of bounds (Rule 6-3-7 or 6-3-8) or touches the ground on or behind Team B's goal line (Rule 6-3-9), then those rules apply as if the inadvertent whistle had not happened.

   (3) If there is a clear catch, recovery or interception of the pass or kick in the immediate continuing action after the inadvertent whistle, then the ball belongs to the recovering team at the spot of the recovery and any advance is nullified.

(4) If a scrimmage kick crosses the neutral zone and is untouched by Team B beyond the neutral zone, and if the other exceptions here do not apply, the ball is dead and belongs to Team B at the spot where the kick ends (Rule 2-25-9). If this spot is beyond the neutral zone, the kick has crossed the neutral zone, and postscrimmage kick enforcement will apply if the provisions of Rule 10-2-3 hold. On a field goal attempt, a field goal will be scored if the requirements of Rule 8-4-1 are met.

4. After Team B gains possession on the try or during an extra period, then the try is over or the extra-period possession series is ended.

c. If a foul or violation occurs during any of the above downs, the penalty or violation privilege shall be administered as in any other play situation if not in conflict with other rules. (**A.R. 4-1-2:I and II**)

Approved Ruling 4-1-2

I. Team A punts on fourth and 15 at the A-30. B44 is in position to receive the kick. In attempting to catch the ball, B44 muffs it at the B-35. The back judge blows his whistle when it appears that B44 is catching the ball, but it rolls along the ground after B44 muffs it. A88 chases the ball, and in the immediate continuing football action he recovers it while grounded at the B-30. B22 is flagged for holding during the kick. **RULING:** Inadvertent whistle. Rule 4-1-2-b-3 Exception 3 applies. Team A declines the penalty and will have the ball at the B-30, first and 10. [Cited by 4-1-2-b, 4-1-2-c]

II. Team A punts on fourth and 15 at the A-30. B44 is in position to receive the kick. In attempting to catch the ball, B44 muffs it at the B-35. The back judge blows his whistle when it appears that B44 is catching the ball, but it rolls along the ground after B44 muffs it. The ball disappears into a pile of players. B22 is flagged for holding during the kick. **RULING:** Inadvertent whistle. Since there is no clear recovery of the kick, the ball is returned to the previous spot and the 10-yard holding penalty is enforced. Team A retains possession and will have fourth and 5 at the A-40. [Cited by 4-1-2-b, 4-1-2-c]

III. First and 10 at the B-45. Ball carrier A22 is tackled and is going to the ground, when he fumbles. An official sounds his whistle inadvertently. Players on both teams go after the ball, and (a) B66 clearly recovers it while grounded. (b) it is not clear who recovers it. **RULING:** Inadvertent whistle. Rule 4-1-2-b-2 Exception 3 applies. (a) If it is determined that A22 lost control of the ball before he was down, then the ball belongs to Team B at the spot of the recovery by B66. (b) In the event that it cannot be determined which team recovers the ball, Team A retains possession at the dead-ball spot or may elect to repeat the down. [Cited by 4-1-2-b]

IV. Team A punts on fourth and 15 at the A-30. B44 is in position to receive the kick. In attempting to catch the ball, B44 muffs it at the B-35. The back judge blows his whistle when it appears that B44 is catching the ball, but it rolls along the ground after B44 muffs it. A88 chases the ball, and in the immediate continuing football action he recovers it while grounded at the B-30. **RULING:** Inadvertent whistle. Rule 4-1-2-b-3 Exception 3 applies. Team A will have the ball at the B-30, first and 10. [Cited by 4-1-2-b]

V. Team A punts on fourth and 15 at the A-30. B44 is in position to receive the kick. In attempting to catch the ball, B44 muffs it at the B-35. The back judge blows his whistle when it appears that B44 is catching the ball, but it rolls along the ground after B44 muffs it. The ball disappears into a pile of players. **RULING:** Inadvertent whistle. Since there is no clear recovery of the kick, the ruling of the dead ball stands. Repeat the down at the previous spot. [Cited by 4-1-2-b]

VI. What is meant by "otherwise signals the ball dead" in Rule 4-1-2-b? **RULING:** It means an official giving one of the following signals: stop the clock (S3); touchdown/field goal (S5); safety (S6); dead ball (S7); incomplete pass (S10). Such a signal interrupted before the official's arms are held or moved in the correct position is not regarded as a signal.

Ball Declared Dead

ARTICLE 3. A live ball becomes dead and an official shall sound his whistle or declare it dead:

a. When it goes out of bounds other than a kick that scores a field goal after touching only the uprights or crossbar; when a ball carrier is out of bounds; or when a ball carrier is so held that his forward progress is stopped. When in question, the ball is dead. (**A.R. 4-2-1:II**) (**A.R. 4-1-3:IX and X**)

b. When any part of the ball carrier's body, except his hand or foot, touches the ground or when the ball carrier is tackled or otherwise falls and loses possession of the ball as he contacts the ground with any part of his body, except his hand or foot. (***Exception:*** The ball remains alive when an offensive player has simulated a kick or at the snap is in position to kick the ball held for a place kick by a teammate. The ball may be kicked, passed or advanced by rule.) (**A.R. 4-1-3:I**)

c. When a touchdown, touchback, safety, field goal, or successful try occurs; or when a free kick or a scrimmage kick that is untouched by Team B beyond the neutral zone touches the ground in Team B's end zone (Rules 6-1-7-a and 6-3-9). (**A.R. 6-3-9:I**)

d. When, during a try, a dead-ball rule applies (Rule 8-3-2-d-5).

e. When a player of the kicking team catches or recovers any free kick or a scrimmage kick that has crossed the neutral zone.

f. When a free kick, scrimmage kick or any other loose ball comes to rest and no player attempts to secure it.

g. When a scrimmage kick or a free kick is caught or recovered by any Team B player after a valid or invalid fair catch signal by a Team B player; or when an invalid fair catch signal is made after a catch or recovery by Team B (Rules 2-8-1, 2-8-2 and 2-8-3).

h. When there is a return kick or a scrimmage kick is made beyond the neutral zone.

i. When a forward pass is ruled incomplete.

j. When, before a change of team possession on fourth down or a try, a Team A fumble is caught or recovered by a Team A player other than the fumbler (Rules 7-2-2-a, 7-2-2-b and 8-3-2-d-5).

k. When a live ball not in player possession touches anything inbounds other than a player, a player's equipment, an official, an official's equipment or the ground (inadvertent whistle provisions apply).

l. When there is a simultaneous catch or recovery of a live ball.

m. When the ball becomes illegal while in play (inadvertent whistle provisions apply).

n. When a live ball comes into possession of an official (inadvertent whistle provisions apply).

o. When a ball carrier simulates placing his knee on the ground.

p. When an airborne pass receiver from either team is held so that he is prevented from immediately returning to the ground. (**A.R. 7-3-6:III**)

q. When a ball carrier's helmet comes completely off.

r. When a ball carrier obviously begins a feet-first slide. (**A.R. 4-1-3:III**)

s. When all players in the vicinity of the ball stop playing and/or believe it to be dead.

Approved Ruling 4-1-3

l. While A1 is holding the ball for a place kick, Team B plays the ball by (a) recovering a loose ball, (b) snatching it from A1 or (c) batting it from his hands. **RULING:** (a), (b) and (c) The ball remains alive. In (c), the batting by Team B is legal and results in a fumble. [Cited by 2-11-1, 4-1-3-b]

II. Team A is in formation to attempt a field goal. At the snap A22 is in position to execute a right-footed place kick and A33 is in position as the holder. The snap goes to A33 who has a knee on the ground. Just after the snap A22 breaks to his left and toward the neutral zone, and A33, while still on his knee, flips a forward pass to A22 who carries the ball beyond the line to gain before he is tackled. **RULING:** Legal play, because at the snap A22 was in position to attempt a place kick. First and 10 for Team A.

III. Third and 10 at the A-35. Quarterback A11 sweeps to his right and goes into a feet-first slide to give himself up. When he starts his slide, the forward-most point of the ball is at the A-44, and when he comes to a stop the forward-most point of the ball is at the A-46. **RULING:** Fourth and one at the A-44. The ball is dead at its forward-most point when he starts his slide. [Cited by 4-1-3-r]

IV. Team A lines up to free kick from the A-35, and executes an on-side kick. After the ball has traveled 10 yards: (a) B21 gives a valid fair catch signal and makes a clean catch, (Rule 4-1-3-g); (b) A80 is first to touch the ball and makes a clean legal catch or recovery (Rule 4-1-3-e); or (c) B21 catches or recovers the ball and immediately goes to the ground. **RULING:** By interpretation: (a) No time will run off the clock; (b) No time will run off the clock; and (c) The clock operator shall start the clock when the ball is legally touched and will stop the clock when the ball is declared dead (Rule 3-3-2-a).

V. B23 catches a kick but does not advance. No Team A player attempts to tackle B23. (i) B23 places the ball on the ground and walks away from it, (ii) tosses the ball to an official, or (iii) pauses for a few seconds then advances the ball. **RULING:** The ball is dead when it is clear B23 is not going to advance it or it is clear Team A believe him to have given up (Rule 4-1-3-s). In (iii), a foul for delay of game might be warranted.

VI. Team A punts the ball downfield and no Team B player attempts to catch or recover it. A40 touches the ball and stops it rolling but does not secure possession of it. A40 walks away from the ball and no Team B player moves to recover the ball. **RULING:** The ball is dead when it is clear that players in the vicinity of the ball show no interest in recovering it (Rule 4-1-3-f).

VII. Team A punts the ball downfield and no Team B player attempts to catch or recover it. A40 touches the ball and stops it rolling but does not secure possession of it. A40 walks away from the ball and no nearby Team B player moves to recover the ball. After 2 seconds, B33 shouts "it's still live" and starts running towards the ball, picks it up and advances with it. **RULING:** The ball is dead when it is clear that players in the vicinity of the ball show no interest in recovering it. B33's action occurred after the ball became dead (Rule 4-1-3-f).

VIII. 4th and 10 on Team B's 15-yard line. Team A attempts a field goal but the kick is partially blocked. The ball rolls to a stop at Team B's 2-yard line where B15 picks it up but does not advance. A24 stops next to B15 but does not tackle him. After a pause, B15 hands the ball to A24 who advances into the end zone. **RULING:** The ball is dead when it is clear that B15 is not going to advance the ball. Handing the ball to an opponent shows that B15 believes the ball to be dead. Not tackling an opponent shows that A24 believes the ball to be dead. Team B's ball 1st and 10 at their 2-yard line (Rules 4-1-3-s and 5-1-1-e-1).

IX. 4th and 10 on Team B's 40-yard line. Team A's punt is blocked and does not cross the neutral zone. A84 recovers the ball behind the neutral zone at Team A's 45-yard line, but does not advance. Team B players start leaving the field. **RULING:** The ball is dead when it is clear that A84 is not going to advance it. Team B's ball 1st and 10 at Team A's 45-yard line (Rules 4-1-3-s and 5-1-1-c). [Cited by 4-1-3-a]

X. A2's place kick is driven low and strikes the crossbar. The ball bounces off the crossbar directly onto the helmet of B80 who is standing in the end zone. The ball ricochets off B80's helmet over the crossbar and between the posts. **RULING:** No score. The ball is dead when it hits the crossbar. By interpretation, if it continues on through the uprights after striking the crossbar, it is good, but the attempt in this play is no good because it touches something else before going through the goal. [Cited by 4-1-3-a]

XI. A2's place kick is driven low and strikes the crossbar. The ball bounces off the crossbar, bounces directly up before hitting the crossbar again and then going through the uprights. **RULING:** Field goal. As long as the ball does not touch anything other than the uprights or crossbar before going through, the score is good.

Ball Ready for Play

ARTICLE 4. No player shall put the ball in play before it is ready for play. (**A.R. 4-1-4:I and II**)

PENALTY – Dead-ball foul. Five yards from the succeeding spot [S7 and S19: IPR].

Approved Ruling 4-1-4

I. Snapper A1 snaps the ball before the ball is made ready for play. A2 muffs the snap and B1 recovers the ball. **RULING:** Dead ball foul, Team A illegal procedure. Penalty – Five-yards from the succeeding spot, Team A's ball. The ball does not become alive, and all action should be stopped immediately by the game officials. [Cited by 2-2-4-b, 4-1-1, 4-1-4, 7-1-1-a, 7-1-1-b]

II. Kicker A1 kicks off before the referee has declared the ball ready for play. **RULING:** Dead ball foul. Penalty – Five yards from the succeeding spot. The ball does not become alive, and all action should be stopped immediately by the game officials. [Cited by 2-2-4-b, 4-1-1, 4-1-4, 7-1-1-a, 7-1-1-b]

Play-Clock Count

ARTICLE 5. The ball shall be put in play within 40 or 25 seconds after it is made ready for play (Rule 3-2-4), unless, during that interval, play is suspended. If play is suspended, the play-clock count will start again.

PENALTY – Dead-ball foul for delay of game. Five yards from the succeeding spot [S21: DOG].

SECTION 2. Out of Bounds

Player Out of Bounds

ARTICLE 1. a. A player is out of bounds when any part of his person touches anything, other than another player or game official, on or outside a boundary line (Rule 2-27-15). (**A.R. 4-2-1:I and II**)

b. An out-of-bounds player who becomes airborne remains out of bounds until he touches the ground in bounds without simultaneously being out of bounds.

c. A player who touches a pylon is out of bounds.

Approved Ruling 4-2-1

I. An inbounds ball carrier bumps into or is touched by a player or game official on the sideline. **RULING:** The ball carrier is not out of bounds. [Cited by 4-2-1-a]

II. Ball carrier A1 is running inbounds near the sideline when he is contacted by a squad member of Team B, who is on the sideline. **RULING:** Rule 4-2-1 states a player is out of bounds when any part of his person touches anything other than a player or an official. Penalty – 15 yards or other unfair-action game administration-interference penalties (Rules 9-2-3 and 9-2-5). [Cited by 4-1-2-a, 4-1-3-a, 4-2-1-a, 9-2-3-c]

III. Team A executes an on-side kick at the A-35. A33 is running near the sideline and steps out of bounds at the A-45. At the A-47 he leaps and bats the ball forward, and it rolls out of bounds at the A-49. **RULING:** Foul against Team A for free kick out of bounds at the A-47. Airborne A33 is out of bounds when he touches the ball because he has not established himself in bounds after going out of bounds. Not a foul for batting the ball forward because the ball is dead as soon as A33 touches it (Rule 4-2-3-a). [Cited by 6-2-1]

Held Ball Out of Bounds

ARTICLE 2. A ball in player possession is out of bounds when either the ball or any part of the ball carrier touches the ground or anything else that is out of bounds, or that is on or outside a boundary line, except another player or game official.

Loose Ball Out of Bounds

ARTICLE 3. a. A ball not in player control, other than a kick that scores a field goal, is out of bounds when it touches the ground, a player, a game official or anything else that is out of bounds, or that is on or outside a boundary line.

b. A ball that touches a pylon is out of bounds behind the goal line.

c. If a live ball not in player possession crosses a boundary line and then is declared out of bounds, it is out of bounds at the crossing point.

Approved Ruling 4-2-3

I. A88 is airborne and secures firm control of A12's forward pass. A88's right foot lands inbounds and he maintains firm control of the ball as he contacts the ground. B28, who is standing out of bounds, has his hand touching the ball while A88 is airborne and in firm control of the ball. **RULING:** Completed forward pass.

Out of Bounds at Forward Point

ARTICLE 4. a. If a live ball is declared out of bounds and the ball does not cross a boundary line, it is out of bounds at the ball's most forward point when it was declared dead. (**A.R. 4-2-4:I**) (***Exception:*** Rule 8-5-1-a, (**A.R. 8-5-1:I**).)

b. A touchdown is scored if the ball is inbounds and has broken the plane of the goal line (Rule 2-12-2) before or simultaneous with the ball carrier going out of bounds.

c. A receiver who is in the opponent's end zone and contacting the ground is credited with a completion if he reaches over the sideline or end line and catches a legal pass.

d. The most forward point of the ball when declared out of bounds between the goal lines is the point of forward progress. (**A.R. 8-2-1:I**) (**A.R. 8-5-1:VII**) (***Exception:*** When a ball carrier is airborne as he crosses the sideline (including a striding runner) forward progress is determined by the position of the ball as it crosses the sideline. (**A.R. 8-2-1:II-III and V-IX**))

Approved Ruling 4-2-4

I. A player with one foot out of bounds behind a goal line touches a loose ball in the field of play. **RULING:** Ball is out of bounds and dead at its most forward point in the field of play. If this loose ball was an untouched free kick, it is a free kick out of bounds and a foul. Penalty – Five yards from the previous spot or Team B's ball 30 yards beyond Team A's free kick line. [Cited by 4-1-2-a, 4-2-4-a]

RULE 5

Series of Downs, Line to Gain

SECTION 1. A Series: Started, Broken, Renewed

When to Award Series

ARTICLE 1. a. A series (Rule 2-24-1) of up to four consecutive scrimmage downs shall be awarded to the team that is next to put the ball in play by a snap after a free kick, touchback, fair catch or change in team possession, or to the offensive team in overtime.

b. A new series shall be awarded to Team A if it is in legal possession of the ball on or beyond its line to gain when the ball is declared dead.

c. A new series shall be awarded to Team B if, after fourth down, Team A has failed to earn a first down. (**A.R. 10-1-5:I**)

d. A new series shall be awarded to Team B if Team A's scrimmage kick goes out of bounds or comes to rest and no player attempts to secure it (***Exception:*** Rule 8-5-1-a).

e. A new series shall be awarded to the team in legal possession when the ball is declared dead:

   1. If a change of team possession occurs during the down.
   2. If a scrimmage kick crosses the neutral zone (***Exceptions:*** (1) When the down is repeated; (2) Rule 6-3-7).
   3. If an accepted penalty awards the ball to the offended team.
   4. If an accepted penalty mandates a first down.

f. A new series shall be awarded to Team B whenever Team B, after a scrimmage kick, elects to take the ball at a spot of illegal touching (***Exception:*** When the down is repeated) (Rules 6-3-2-a and 6-3-2-b).

Line to Gain

ARTICLE 2. a. The line to gain for a series shall be established 10 yards in advance of the most forward point of the ball; but if this line is in the opponent's end zone, the goal line becomes the line to gain.

b. The line to gain is established when the ball is made ready for play before the first down of the new series.

Forward Progress

ARTICLE 3. a. The most forward point of the ball when declared dead between the end lines shall be the determining point in measuring distance gained or lost by either team during any down (***Exceptions:***

   1. Rule 8-5-1. (**A.R. 8-5-1:I**)
   2. When an airborne pass receiver of either team completes a catch inbounds after an opponent has driven him backward and the ball is declared dead at the spot of the catch, the forward progress is where the player received the ball.

   The ball always shall be placed with its length axis parallel to the sideline before measuring (Rule 4-1-3-p). (**A.R. 5-1-3:I, III, IV and VI**) (**A.R. 7-3-6:V**))

b. Questionable distance for a first down should be measured without request. Unnecessary measurements to determine first downs shall not be granted.

c. No request for a measurement shall be granted after the ball is ready for play.

Approved Ruling 5-1-3

I. Airborne A1 receives a legal forward pass one yard within the opponent's end zone. As A1 receives the ball, he is contacted by B1 and first comes to the ground with the catch at the one-yard line, where the ball is declared dead. **RULING:** Touchdown (Rule 8-2-1-b). [Cited by 2-9-2, 5-1-3-a-2, 8-2-1-b]

II. Airborne A1 receives a legal forward pass one yard within Team B's end zone. As A1 receives the ball, he is contacted by B1 and first comes to the ground, on his feet, with the catch at the one-yard line. After he regains his balance, he runs and is downed at Team B's five-yard line. **RULING:** Not a touchdown. Team A's ball at the spot where the ball is declared dead. [Cited by 2-9-2, 8-2-1-b]

III. Airborne A2 receives a legal forward pass at Team A's 35-yard line. As A2 receives the ball, he is contacted by B1 and first comes to the ground with the ball at Team A's 33-yard line, where the ball is declared dead. **RULING:** Team A's ball at the 35-yard line. This is the point of forward progress. [Cited by 2-9-2, 5-1-3-a-2]

IV. A4, with the ball breaking the plane of the 50-yard line while in his possession, dives over the 50-yard line, which is the line to gain for a first down. He is knocked back to Team A's 49-yard line, where any part of his body except his hand or foot touches the ground. **RULING:** First down at forward progress spot (Rule 4-1-3-b). [Cited by 2-9-2, 5-1-3-a-2]

V. A6 has the ball in his possession and is not controlled by an opponent, as he dives over the 50-yard line, which is the line to gain for a first down, and is forced back across the 50-yard line. A6 continues to run and is tackled at Team A's 49-yard line, where any part of his body, except his hand or foot, strikes the ground. **RULING:** No first down. The point of forward progress is Team A's 49-yard line. [Cited by 2-9-2]

VI. A5, with the ball breaking the plane of the goal line while in his possession, dives over the goal line and is knocked back to the one-yard line, where any part of A5's body except his hand or foot touches the ground. **RULING:** Touchdown. The ball is dead when it breaks the plane of the goal line in A5's possession. [Cited by 2-9-2, 5-1-3-a-2]

Continuity of Downs Broken

ARTICLE 4. The continuity of a series of scrimmage downs is broken when:

a. Team possession of the ball changes during a down.

b. A scrimmage kick crosses the neutral zone.

c. A kick goes out of bounds.

d. A kick comes to rest and no player attempts to secure it.

e. At the end of a down, Team A has earned a first down.

f. After fourth down, Team A has failed to earn a first down.

g. An accepted penalty mandates a first down.

h. There is a score.

i. A touchback is awarded to either team.

j. The second period ends.

k. The fourth period ends.

SECTION 2. Down and Possession After a Penalty

Foul During Free Kick Down

ARTICLE 1. When a scrimmage down follows the penalty for a foul committed during a free kick down, the down and distance established by that penalty shall be first down with a new line to gain.

Penalty Resulting in New Series

ARTICLE 2. It is a new series with a new line to gain:

a. After a penalty that leaves the ball in possession of Team A beyond its line to gain.

b. After a penalty that mandates a first down.

Foul Before Change of Team Possession

ARTICLE 3. a. If a penalty is accepted for a foul that occurs between the goal lines before a change of team possession during a down, the ball belongs to Team A. The down shall be repeated, unless the penalty also involves loss of a down, mandates a first down, or leaves the ball on or beyond the line to gain (***Exceptions:*** Rules 8-3-3-b-1, 10-2-3, 10-2-4 and 10-2-5). (**A.R. 10-2-3:I**)

b. If the penalty involves loss of a down, the down shall count as one of the four in that series.

Approved Ruling 5-2-3

I. Team A's fourth-down legal forward pass strikes the ground after it touches an originally ineligible receiver who is illegally more than three yards beyond the neutral zone. **RULING:** Foul, ineligible receiver downfield. Penalty — Five yards from the previous spot. Team B's ball, first and 10, if the penalty is declined (Rule 7-3-10). [Cited by 7-3-11]

Foul After Change of Team Possession

ARTICLE 4. If a penalty is accepted for a foul that occurs during a down after a change of team possession, the ball belongs to the team in possession when the foul occurred. The down and distance established by any such penalty shall be first down with a new line to gain (***Exception:*** Rule 10-2-5-a).

Penalty Declined

ARTICLE 5. If a penalty is declined, the number of the next down shall be whatever it would have been if the foul had not occurred.

Foul Between Downs

ARTICLE 6. After a distance penalty incurred between downs, the number of the next down shall be the same as that established before the foul occurred, unless enforcement for a foul by Team B leaves the ball on or beyond the line to gain or a penalty mandates a first down (Rule 9-1). (**A.R. 5-2-6:I**) (**A.R. 10-1-5:I-III**)

Approved Ruling 5-2-6

I. Fourth and two on Team A's 35-yard line. A1 takes the snap and fumbles the ball on Team A's 38-yard line, with the ball going out of bounds on (a) Team A's 40-yard line or (b) Team A's 30-yard line. Immediately after the ball goes out of bounds, Team A commits a personal foul. **RULING:** (a) Team A's ball, first and 10 on Team A's 23-yard line. Start the clock on the ready-for-play signal. (b) Team B's ball, first and 10 on Team A's 15-yard line. Start the clock on the snap. [Cited by 5-2-6]

Foul Between Series

ARTICLE 7. a. The penalty for any dead-ball foul (including live-ball fouls treated as dead-ball fouls) that occurs after a series ends and before the ball is ready for play shall be completed before the line to gain is established.

b. The penalty for any dead-ball foul that occurs after the ball is ready for play shall be completed after the line to gain is established. (**A.R. 5-2-7:I-V**)

Approved Ruling 5-2-7

I. Third and four on Team B's 30-yard line. Ball carrier A22 goes out of bounds on the 18-yard line. B88 commits a foul immediately after the ball is out of bounds. **RULING:** First and goal for Team A at the nine-yard line. Clock starts on the ready-for-play signal except in the last two minutes of a half. [Cited by 5-2-7-b]

II. Fourth and four at the A-16. Ball carrier A22 goes out of bounds at the A-18. A77 commits a foul immediately after the ball is out of bounds. **RULING:** Team B's ball on the nine-yard line. First and goal. Start the clock on the snap. [Cited by 5-2-7-b]

III. On fourth and five, Team A gains six yards and is awarded a new series. After the ball is made ready for play and before the snap, A55 commits (a) a personal foul, or (b) a false start. **RULING:** (a) First and 25. (b) First and 15. [Cited by 5-2-7-b]

IV. Team A's ball, third and four from the 50-yard line. After the ball is made ready for play and before the snap, B60 charges across the neutral zone and contacts snapper A50. A61 then fouls B60. A61's foul is a personal foul. **RULING:** Penalise Team B five yards for B60's offside, then penalise Team A 15 yards and reset the line-to-gain indicator to indicate first and 10 from Team A's 40-yard line. [Cited by 5-2-7-b]

V. After Team A has made a first down, the umpire has placed the ball on the ground at the B-30. The referee waves the umpire away from the ball but before he signals the ball ready for play, snapper A55 snaps the ball. **RULING:** Team A dead-ball foul for delay of game. Five-yard penalty, first and 10 at the B-35. NOTE: This is a foul between series in that it takes place before the ball is declared ready for the next series. Hence it is first and 10, not first and 15 (Rules 4-1-1, 4-1-4). [Cited by 5-2-7-b]

VI. Ball carrier A22 is tackled hard by B44 at the B-5, resulting in first and goal. After the ball is dead, A22 gets up and slugs B44. **RULING:** 15-yard penalty against Team A; A22 is disqualified. After enforcement of the penalty, Team A will have first and 10 at the B-20.

Fouls by Both Teams

ARTICLE 8. If offsetting fouls occur during a down, that down shall be repeated (Rule 10-1-4 Exceptions). (**A.R. 10-1-4:III-VI and VII**)

Rules Decisions Final

ARTICLE 9. No rule decision may be changed after the ball is next legally snapped, legally free kicked or the second or fourth periods have ended (Rules 3-2-1-a, 3-3-4-e-2 and 11-1-1). (***Exception:*** The number of a down may be corrected any time within that series of downs or before the ball is legally next put in play after that series.)

RULE 6

Kicks

SECTION 1. Free Kicks

Restraining Lines

ARTICLE 1. For any free kick formation, the kicking team's restraining line shall be the yard line through the most forward point from which the ball shall be kicked, and the receiving team's restraining line shall be the yard line 10 yards beyond that point. Unless relocated by a penalty, the kicking team's restraining line on a kickoff shall be its line 15 yards from the midfield line, and for a free kick after a safety, its 20-yard line.

Free Kick Formation

ARTICLE 2. a. A ball from a free kick formation must be kicked legally and from some point on Team A's restraining line (***Exception:*** Rule 6-1-2-c-4) and on or between the hash marks. The referee will declare the ball ready for play when the officials are in position after the kicker has received the ball. After the ready-for-play signal, the ball may only be relocated after a charged team timeout and before a subsequent kick. After the ball is ready for play and for any reason it falls from the tee, Team A shall not kick the ball and an official shall sound his whistle immediately.

b. After the ball has been made ready for play:
   1. All players on the kicking team, except the kicker, must be no more than five yards behind their restraining line. A player satisfies this rule when one foot is on or beyond the line five yards behind the restraining line. If one player is more than five yards behind the restraining line and any other player kicks the ball, it is a foul for an illegal formation [S19: IFK]. (**A.R. 6-1-2:VII**)
   2. All players on the kicking team, except the kicker in his kicking motion and the holder for the purposes of holding the ball, must remain behind their restraining line [S18: OFK].
   3. If a Team A player attempts to kick the ball but misses it (intentionally or accidentally), it is a dead-ball foul for illegal procedure [S19: IFK].

c. When the ball is kicked (**A.R. 6-1-2:I-IV**):
   1. Each Team A player, except the holder and kicker of a place kick, must be behind the ball [S18: OFK]. (**A.R. 6-1-2:V**)
   2. All Team A players must be inbounds [S19: IFK].
   3. At least four Team A players must be on each side of the kicker [S19: IFK]. (**A.R. 6-1-2:II-IV**)
   4. After a safety, when a punt or drop kick is used, the ball may be kicked from behind the kicking team's restraining line. If a yardage penalty for a live-ball foul is enforced from the previous spot, administration is from the 20-yard line, unless the kicking team's restraining line has been relocated by a previous penalty [S18 or appropriate signal].
   5. All players of Team A must have been between the nine-yard marks after the ready-for-play signal [S19: IFK].

PENALTY – [b3] Dead-ball foul. Five yards from the succeeding spot. [S19: IFK]. [a-c5 except b3] Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot, or five yards from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B, or from the spot where the ball is placed after a touchback [S18 or S19: IFK/OFK]. (A.R. 6-1-2:VI)

6. All Team B players must be inbounds [S19: IFK].
7. All Team B players must be behind their restraining line [S18: OFK].

PENALTY – [c6-c7] Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot [S18 or S19: IFK/OFK].

Approved Ruling 6-1-2

I. The ball is kicked while teed illegally, punted on a kickoff or kicked from a spot between the hash mark and the nearer sideline. **RULING:** Illegal kick. Dead-ball foul. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot (2-16-1-b). [Cited by 2-16-1-b, 6-1-2-c]

II. Kicker A11 places the ball on the tee in the centre of the field for a free kick with four teammates to the left side of the ball and six teammates to the right side of the ball. The ball blows off the tee, and A55 — who was lined up to the left of the ball — holds the ball on the tee for right-footed kicker A11. No other Team A players move. When the ball is kicked by A11, A55 is to the kicker's right. **RULING:** Foul by Team A for illegal formation at the kick. Penalty — Five yards from the previous spot or five yards from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B. [Cited by 6-1-2-c-3, 6-1-2-c]

III. Free-kicker A11 places the ball on the tee just inside the hash mark line on his right. All of his teammates line up to his left. At the ready for play, four Team A players who were on A11's left run to their right and are in the area to A11's right when he kicks the ball. **RULING:** Legal formation. [Cited by 6-1-2-c-3, 6-1-2-c]

IV. A11 places the ball on the tee for a free kick on the 35-yard line in the centre of the field. A12 lines up near the ball. After the ready for play, A11 starts forward as if to kick the ball, and A12 suddenly crosses in front of him and kicks the ball. When the ball is kicked, A11 is directly behind the ball with three teammates on one side of the ball. A12 plants his non-kicking foot on the same side of the ball as his three teammates. **RULING:** Foul by Team A for illegal formation. Penalty — five yards from the previous spot and rekick if Team B chooses; or five yards from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B. [Cited by 6-1-2-c-3, 6-1-2-c]

V. Team A is offside during its free kick. B27 has his knee on the ground when he recovers the kick. **RULING:** Foul by Team A for offside. The ball is dead at the spot of the recovery. Penalty — Team B may choose five yards from the previous spot and another free kick, or five yards from the dead-ball spot with a first and 10. B27's recovery started a running play that ended immediately. This scenario also would have been valid if B27 had completed a fair catch. [Cited by 6-1-2-c-1]

VI. Team A is offside on its free kick and B17 catches the ball at his 15-yard line. B17 returns the ball to his 45-yard line where he fumbles. A67 recovers at the B-47 and runs to the B-35 where he fumbles, with B20 recovering while downed at his 33-yard line. **RULING:** Foul by Team A for offside. Team B may choose to have Team A kick again after a five-yard penalty from the previous spot, or Team B may have a first and 10 at its 38-yard line. [Cited by 6-1-2 Penalty]

VII. Team A is in its formation to kick off at the A-35. Two players, A33 and A66, are positioned in a four-point stance with their feet on the A-29 and their hands on the A-31. The untouched kick hits the ground in Team B's end zone and is declared dead. **RULING:** Touchback. Team A foul, illegal formation. Team B has two options for accepting the penalty: Put the ball in play at the B-25, after a five-yard penalty at the spot (the B-20) where the dead ball belongs to them; or have Team A re-kick at the A-30 (Rule 6-1-8). [Cited by 6-1-2-b-1]

VIII. Late in the game with the score tied, Team A lines up to free kick from the A-35. Kicker A10 places the ball down at the right hash for an apparent onside kick. After the referee's ready-for-play signal, A10 approaches the ball and then picks up the ball, runs to the left hash at the A-35, places the ball down and quickly kicks the ball. Team A legally recovers the grounded kick at the A-46. When the ball was kicked, Team A met the requirement of at least 4 players on each side of the kicker. **RULING:** By interpretation, once the ball's position between the hash marks has been selected by Team A and after the ready-for-

play, the ball may be relocated only after a charged team timeout and before any re-kick. Live-ball foul. Five-yard penalty from the previous spot and re-kick. Had Team B recovered at the A-46, an additional option would be for Team B to snap the ball after a five-yard penalty from the A-46.

IX. After a touchdown and successful 2 point try, Team A trails 24-22 with 0:55 left in the 4th quarter. Team A intends to try an on-side free kick from the A-35. Kicker A90 holds the ball as if he will attempt a drop kick. A90 then tosses the ball up in the air and the ball bounces just behind Team A's restraining line and then A90 kicks the ball after it bounces several feet into the air. **RULING:** Illegal Kick. Dead-ball foul. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot. This kick does not meet the requirements of a drop kick as specified in Rule 2-16-3. For a legal drop kick the kicker must drop the ball and kick it as it touches the ground. Since Rule 2-16-6 only allows a place kick or a drop kick for a kickoff, this kick is not a legal kick. The penalty enforcement follows Approved Ruling 6-1-2:I.

Touching and Recovery of a Free Kick; Illegal Touching

ARTICLE 3. a. No Team A player may touch a free-kicked ball until after:

1. It touches a Team B player (***Exception:*** Rules 6-1-4 and 6-5-1-b);
2. It breaks the plane of and remains beyond Team B's restraining line (***Exception:*** Rule 6-4-1) (**A.R. 2-12-5:I**); or
3. It touches any player, the ground, an official or anything else beyond Team B's restraining line.

Thereafter, all players of Team A become eligible to touch, recover or catch the kick.

b. Any other touching by Team A is *illegal touching*, a violation that, when the ball becomes dead, gives the receiving team the privilege of taking the ball at the spot of the violation.

c. If there is an accepted penalty for a live-ball foul by either team, or if there are offsetting fouls, the illegal touching privilege is cancelled. (**A.R. 6-1-3:I**)

d. Illegal touching in Team A's end zone is ignored.

Approved Ruling 6-1-3

I. A33 illegally touches a free kick; then he or A44 illegally recovers the kick. **RULING:** Illegal touching by both A33 and A44. Unless there is an accepted penalty or offsetting fouls, Team B may elect to take the ball at any spot of the illegal touching. [Cited by 6-1-3-c]

II. Team A executes an on-side free kick at the A-35. The untouched kick is at the A-43 when A55 blocks B44 above the waist in the front at the A-46. A28 muffs the ball at the A-44, and after it rolls to the A-46, A88 blocks B22 at the A-42. A20 then recovers the ball at the A-44. **RULING:** The block by A55 is a foul and the touching by A28 is illegal, because Team A is not eligible to touch the ball since it has not gone 10 yards nor has it been touched by Team B. The block by A88 is legal because it occurs after the ball has gone 10 yards. Team A is in legal possession of the ball when A20 recovers it at the A-44. Team B has two options: Decline the penalty for the illegal block and have the ball at the A-44 via the illegal-touching privilege, or cancel the illegal-touching privilege by having Team A re-kick from the A-30 after the five-yard penalty for the block by A55. Note that the dead-ball spot, the A-44, is not an enforcement spot because the ball does not belong to Team B when the down ends (Rule 6-1-12). [Cited by 6-1-12]

Forced Touching Disregarded

ARTICLE 4. a. A player blocked by an opponent into a free kick is not, while inbounds, deemed to have touched the kick. (**A.R. 2-11-4:I**)

b. An inbounds player touched by a ball either batted or illegally kicked by an opponent is not deemed to have touched the ball (Rule 2-11-4-c).

Free Kick at Rest

ARTICLE 5. If a free kick comes to rest inbounds and no player attempts to secure it, the ball becomes dead and belongs to the receiving team at the dead-ball spot.

Free Kick Caught or Recovered

ARTICLE 6. a. If a free kick is caught or recovered by a player of the receiving team, the ball continues in play (***Exceptions:*** Rules 4-1-3-g, 6-1-7, 6-5-1 and 6-5-2). If caught or recovered by a player of the kicking team, the ball becomes dead. The ball belongs to the receiving team at the dead-ball spot, unless the kicking team is in legal possession when the ball is declared dead. In the latter case, the ball belongs to the kicking team.

b. When opposing players, each eligible to touch the ball, simultaneously recover a rolling kick or catch a free kick, the simultaneous possession makes the ball dead.

c. A kick declared dead in joint possession is awarded to the receiving team.

Ball Dead in End Zone

ARTICLE 7. a. When a free kick untouched by Team B touches the ground on or behind Team B's goal line, the ball becomes dead and belongs to Team B.

b. If the result of the free kick is a touchback (Rule 8-6-1) for Team B, they will put the ball in play at their 20-yard line.

Fouls By Kicking Team

ARTICLE 8. Penalties for all fouls by the kicking team during a free kick play other than kick-catch interference (Rule 6-4) may be enforced at the previous spot with the down repeated or at the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B, at the option of Team B.

Foul Against Kicker

ARTICLE 9. The kicker of a free kick may not be blocked until he has advanced five yards beyond his restraining line or the kick has touched a player, an official or the ground (Rule 9-1-16-c).

PENALTY – 15 yards from the previous spot [S40: PF-RTK].

Illegal Wedge Formation

ARTICLE 10. a. A wedge is defined as two or more players aligned shoulder to shoulder within two yards of each other.

b. Free-kick down only: After the ball has been kicked, it is illegal for two or more members of the receiving team intentionally to form a wedge for the purpose of blocking for the ball carrier. This is a live-ball foul, whether or not there is contact between opponents.

PENALTY – Noncontact foul. 15 yards from the spot of the foul, or 15 yards from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B if this is behind the spot of the foul. 15 yards, previous spot with the down repeated if the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team A [S27: IWK].

c. Formation of the wedge is not illegal when the kick is from an obvious onside kick formation.

d. There is no foul if the play results in a touchback, fair catch or a foul for a free kick out of bounds.

Player Out of Bounds

ARTICLE 11. A Team A player who goes out of bounds during a free kick down may not return inbounds during the down (***Exception:*** This does not apply to a Team A player who is blocked out of bounds and attempts to return inbounds immediately).

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot, or five yards from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B, or from the spot where the ball is placed after a touchback [S19: OBK].

Eligibility to Block

ARTICLE 12. No Team A player may block an opponent until Team A is eligible to touch a free-kicked ball (**A.R. 6-1-3:II**).

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot, or five yards from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B, or from the spot where the ball is placed after a touchback [S19: IBK].

SECTION 2. Free Kick Out of Bounds

Kicking Team

ARTICLE 1. If a free kick goes out of bounds between the goal lines untouched by an inbounds player of Team B, it is a foul. (**A.R. 6-2-1:I-II**) (**A.R. 4-2-1:III**)

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot; or five yards from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B; or the receiving team may put the ball in play 30 yards beyond Team A's restraining line at the hash mark [S19: KOB].

Approved Ruling 6-2-1

I. A kickoff from Team A's 35-yard line goes out of bounds untouched by Team B, and Team A has illegally touched the kick. **RULING:** Team B has four options: it may snap the ball at the spot of the illegal-touching violation; accept a five-yard penalty from the previous spot with Team A kicking from the 30-yard line; put the ball in play at the inbounds spot on its 35-yard line; or put the ball in play at the inbounds spot five yards from where the ball went out of bounds (Rule 6-1-8). [Cited by 6-2-1]

II. Team A is offside or commits a substitution infraction, and the kickoff from the 35-yard line goes out of bounds after it has been touched by Team B. **RULING:** For either the offside foul or the substitution foul, Team B may elect to have the kick repeated at Team A's 30-yard line, or snap the ball at the inbounds spot five yards from where the ball went out of bounds (Rule 6-1-8). [Cited by 6-2-1]

Receiving Team

ARTICLE 2. If a free kick goes out of bounds between the goal lines, the ball belongs to the receiving team at the hash mark. If a free kick goes out of bounds behind the goal line, the ball belongs to the team defending that goal line. (**A.R. 6-2-2:I-IV**)

Approved Ruling 6-2-2

I. A free kick from Team A's 35-yard line, untouched by Team B, goes out of bounds between the goal lines, and Team A was offside. **RULING:** Team B has these options: it may accept a five-yard penalty at the previous spot with Team A re-kicking from the 30-yard line; snap the ball at its 35-yard line at the inbounds spot; or snap the ball at the inbounds spot five yards from where the ball went out of bounds. [Cited by 6-2-2]

II. A free kick from Team A's 35-yard line, untouched by Team B, goes out of bounds between the goal lines, and Team A fouled after the ball went out of bounds. **RULING:** Team B has the choice of Team A kicking again after a five-yard penalty followed by a 15-yard penalty, or putting the ball in play at the inbounds spot either on the 50-yard line or at the inbounds spot 20 yards beyond the spot where the ball went out of bounds. [Cited by 6-2-2]

III. A free kick in flight strikes a Team B player who is in his end zone and the ball then goes out of bounds at the three-yard line. **RULING:** Team B's ball, first and 10, on the three-yard line at the inbounds spot. [Cited by 6-2-2]

IV. Free kick at the A-35. B17 leaps from inbounds and is the first player to touch Team A's free kick when he grasps the ball while airborne. He then lands out of bounds with the ball in his control. **RULING:** Not a foul for free kick out of bounds. B17 is inbounds when he touches the kick. Team B will have the ball at the yard line where B17 crossed the sideline (Rule 2-27-15). [Cited by 6-2-2]

SECTION 3. Scrimmage Kicks

Behind the Neutral Zone

ARTICLE 1. a. A scrimmage kick that fails to cross the neutral zone continues in play. All players may catch or recover the ball behind the neutral zone and advance it. (**A.R. 6-3-1:I-III**)

b. The blocking of a scrimmage kick by an opponent of the kicking team who is not more than three yards beyond the neutral zone is considered to have occurred within or behind that zone (Rule 2-11-5).

Approved Ruling 6-3-1

I. After a punt travels five yards beyond the neutral zone, B33 touches the ball. It then rebounds behind the zone, where A33 recovers it in the field of play. **RULING:** The ball is dead when recovered and may not be advanced. First down for Team A (Rules 6-3-3 and 6-3-6-a). Clock starts on the snap following a legal kick down. [Cited by 2-16-7-b] [Cited by 6-3-1-a]

II. Team A's untouched punt or field goal attempt goes beyond the neutral zone in flight, is blown back by the wind and first touches the ground, a player or an official behind the neutral zone. **RULING:** By rule, the kick is not considered to have crossed the neutral zone until it has touched the ground, a player, an official or anything beyond that zone. Any scrimmage kick may be advanced after catch or recovery by Team B, or after catch or recovery by Team A in or behind the neutral zone if the kick had not crossed the neutral zone (Rule 2-16-7). [Cited by 2-16-7-b, 6-3-1-a]

III. A1 interferes with B1's opportunity to catch a kick when a scrimmage kick fails to cross the neutral zone. **RULING:** Interference with the opportunity to catch a kick does not apply (Rule 6-4-1), and all players are eligible to touch, recover and advance the ball. Therefore, any player legally may push an opponent in an actual attempt to get at the ball (Rule 9-3-3-c-3); but no player may hold an opponent to prevent his reaching the ball, or in an attempt to permit a teammate to reach it (Rules 9-1-5 Exception 3 and 9-3-6 Exception 3). [Cited by 2-16-7-b] [Cited by 6-3-1-a, 6-4-1-a]

IV. Team A's punt from behind its own goal line crosses the neutral zone into the field of play, strikes a Team B player and rebounds back across Team A's goal line where A32 recovers. **RULING:** Safety (Rules 6-3-3, 6-3-6-a and 8-5-1-a). [Cited by 2-16-7-b] [Cited by 6-3-6-a, 8-5-1-a]

Beyond the Neutral Zone

ARTICLE 2. a. No inbounds player of the kicking team shall touch a scrimmage kick that has crossed the neutral zone before it touches an opponent. This is *illegal touching*, a violation that, when the ball becomes dead, gives the receiving team the privilege of taking the ball at the spot of the violation (***Exception:*** Rule 6-3-4) (**A.R. 2-12-2:I**) (**A.R. 6-3-2:I**).

b. This privilege is cancelled if there is an accepted penalty for a live-ball foul by either team (**A.R. 6-3-2:I-IV**) (**A.R. 6-3-11:I-III**).

c. The privilege is cancelled if there are offsetting fouls.

d. Illegal touching in Team A's end zone is ignored. Illegal touching on a try results in no score. Illegal touching in an extra period results in team possession ending.

Approved Ruling 6-3-2

I. Team A illegally touches its kick; then after Team B has touched it, Team A recovers. **RULING:** Touching by Team A after Team B has touched the kick is legal; and, in order to get the ball, Team B must take it where Team A illegally touched it. Unless illegal touching is also illegal recovery by the kicking team and no fouls are involved, the receiving team may play the ball with the assurance that it may later elect the ball at any spot of illegal touching. [Cited by 6-3-2-a, 6-3-2-b]

II. During a scrimmage kick, A1 commits a touching violation, after which B1 recovers, advances and fumbles. A2 recovers the fumble and, during the advance, B2 holds, trips or slugs. **RULING:** Team A may have the ball where left by the penalty for Team B's foul; but if Team A declines the penalty, Team B will have the ball by electing the touching violation. B2 is disqualified if flagged for slugging. [Cited by 6-3-2-b]

III. Team A's punt goes beyond the neutral zone and is first touched by A80, then picked up by B40, who runs five yards and fumbles. A20 picks up the fumble and scores. During A20's run, B70 holds. **RULING:** The score does not count. Five- and 10-yard penalties are not administered on the try or the succeeding kickoff. The penalty for Team B's foul is declined by rule because there is no enforcement spot. The ball belongs to Team B at the spot of illegal touching (Rule 10-2-5-a-2). [Cited by 10-2-5-a-2, 6-3-2-b]

IV. Team A's punt goes beyond the neutral zone and is first touched by A80, then picked up by B40, who runs five yards and fumbles. B70 holds during B40's run. A20 picks up the fumble and scores. **RULING:** The score does not count. Five- and 10-yard penalties are not administered on the try or the succeeding kickoff. Because the illegal touching provides an enforcement spot, the penalty for Team B's foul may be enforced, per Rule 5-2-4. The ball belongs to Team B, either at the spot of illegal touching if Team A declines the penalty, or at the spot after the enforcement if Team A accepts the penalty (Rules 10-2-2 and 10-2-5-a-2). [Cited by 10-2-5-a-2, 6-3-2-b]

All Become Eligible

ARTICLE 3. When a scrimmage kick that has crossed the neutral zone touches a player of the receiving team who is inbounds, any player may catch or recover the ball (Rule 6-3-1-b) (***Exceptions:*** Rules 6-3-4 and 6-5-1-b).

Forced Touching Disregarded

ARTICLE 4. a. A player blocked by an opponent into a scrimmage kick that has crossed the neutral zone shall not, while inbounds, be deemed to have touched the kick. (**A.R. 6-3-4:I-V**) (**A.R. 2-11-4:I**)

b. An inbounds player touched by a ball either batted or illegally kicked by an opponent is not deemed to have touched the ball. (Rule 2-11-4-c) (**A.R. 6-3-4:II**).

Approved Ruling 6-3-4

I. Team A punts from its own 30-yard line. The untouched kick is bouncing at Team B's three-yard line when A3 blocks B1 into the ball, forcing it through the end zone and over the end line. **RULING:** Touchback. Since A3 blocked B1 into the ball, B1 is deemed not to have touched it (Rule 2-11-4). Impetus is from the kick, not from B1's touching (Rule 8-7-1). [Cited by 6-3-4-a]

II. Team A's long field goal attempt is first touched when A1 bats the rolling ball backward into nearby B1. **RULING:** Illegal touching by A1. Team B is not deemed to have touched the ball (Rules 2-11-4 and 8-4-2-b). [Cited by 6-3-4-a, 6-3-4-b, 8-4-2-b-2]

III. During a scrimmage kick, the untouched ball is at rest on the Team B three-yard line when B22 blocks A80 into the ball, forcing it into the end zone where it touches the ground. **RULING:** The ball is dead when it touches the ground in the end zone. Touchback — Ignore touching by A80 (Rule 2-11-4). By rule, neither team has touched the kicked ball (Rule 8-6-1-b). [Cited by 6-3-4-a, 8-6-1-b, 8-7-2-a]

IV. As the punted ball rolls along the ground, punt receiver B22 is blocking A88 to prevent him from downing the ball. The two players are still engaged when the ball bounces into B22's leg. A44 recovers at the B-30. **RULING:** Team A's ball, first and 10 at the B-30. This is not

forced touching. Although B22 was in contact with A88 when he touched the ball, this touching was not caused by the contact (Rule 2-11-4). The game clock starts on the snap. [Cited by 6-3-4-a]

V. As a punt rolls along the ground, A44 blocks B33 into the ball, which bounces away and strikes B48 in the leg. Team A recovers. **RULING:** Team A's ball, first and 10 at the spot of recovery. Although the touching by B33 is forced, that by B48 is not (Rule 2-11-4). B48's touching of the ball allows Team A to recover legally (Rule 6-3-4-a). [Cited by 6-3-4-a]

Catch or Recovery by Receiving Team

ARTICLE 5. If a player of the receiving team catches or recovers a scrimmage kick, the ball continues in play (***Exceptions:*** Rules 4-1-3-g, 6-3-9, 6-5-1 and 6-5-2). (**A.R. 8-4-2:V**)

Catch or Recovery by Kicking Team

ARTICLE 6. a. If a player of the kicking team catches or recovers a scrimmage kick that has crossed the neutral zone, the ball becomes dead. (**A.R. 6-3-1:IV**) The ball belongs to the receiving team at the dead-ball spot, unless the kicking team is in legal possession when the ball is declared dead. In the latter case, the ball belongs to the kicking team (***Exception:*** Rule 8-4-2-b).

b. If opposing players who are each eligible to touch the ball simultaneously catch or recover a scrimmage kick, the simultaneous possession makes the ball dead. A kick declared dead in joint possession of opposing players is awarded to the receiving team (Rules 2-4-4 and 4-1-3-l).

Out of Bounds Between Goal Lines or at Rest Inbounds

ARTICLE 7. If a scrimmage kick goes out of bounds between the goal lines, or if it comes to rest inbounds and no player attempts to secure it, the ball becomes dead and belongs to the receiving team at the dead-ball spot (***Exception:*** Rule 8-4-2-b).

Out of Bounds Behind Goal Line

ARTICLE 8. If a scrimmage kick (other than one that scores a field goal) goes out of bounds behind a goal line, the ball becomes dead and belongs to the team defending that goal line (Rule 8-4-2-b).

Touching Ground On or Behind Goal Line

ARTICLE 9. If a scrimmage kick untouched by Team B beyond the neutral zone touches the ground on or behind Team B's goal line, the ball becomes dead and belongs to Team B (Rule 8-4-2-b). (**A.R. 6-3-9:I-II**)

Approved Ruling 6-3-9

I. A33 illegally touches a punt and the ball then rolls into Team B's end zone, where Team B recovers and advances the ball into the field of play. **RULING:** The ball is dead when it strikes the ground in the end zone. Team B may choose a touchback or take the ball at the spot of Team A's illegal touching (Rule 4-1-3-c). [Cited by 4-1-3-c, 6-3-9]

II. A punt goes into Team B's end zone untouched by Team B beyond the neutral zone. Either (a) Team A or (b) Team B commits a personal foul after the ball touches the ground in the end zone. **RULING:** Touchback. Dead-ball foul after the touchback. Team B's ball, first and 10 on the (a) 35-yard line or (b) 10-yard line after enforcement of the penalty at Team B's 20. [Cited by 6-3-9]

III. A Team B player touches a scrimmage kick in flight in Team B's end zone and Team A downs the ball in the end zone. **RULING:** Team A touchdown (Rules 6-3-3 and 8-2-1-d). [Cited by 8-2-1-d]

Legal and Illegal Kicks

ARTICLE 10. a. A legal scrimmage kick is a punt, drop kick or place kick made according to rule.

b. A return kick is an illegal kick, a live-ball foul that causes the ball to become dead (Rule 2-16-8).

PENALTY – For a return kick (live-ball foul): five yards from the spot of the foul [S31: KIK].

c. A scrimmage kick made when the kicker's entire body is beyond the neutral zone is an illegal kick, a live-ball foul that causes the ball to become dead.

PENALTY – For an illegal kick beyond the neutral zone (live-ball foul): Five yards from the previous spot and loss of down [S31 and S9: KIK].

d. No device or material may be used to mark the spot of a scrimmage place kick or elevate the ball. This is a live-ball foul at the snap.

PENALTY – Five yards from the previous spot [S19: KIK].

Loose Behind the Goal Line

ARTICLE 11. If a scrimmage kick untouched by Team B after crossing the neutral zone is batted in Team B's end zone by a player of Team A, it is a violation for illegal touching (Rule 6-3-2). The spot of the violation is Team B's 20-yard line. This is a special case of batting in the end zone and is not a foul. (**A.R. 6-3-11:I-V**) (**A.R. 2-12-2:I**)

Approved Ruling 6-3-11

I. Team A snaps at the 50-yard line and punts. The kick is untouched beyond the neutral zone when A88 reaches across Team B's goal line and bats the ball back into the field of play, and it rolls out of bounds at the B-4. **RULING:** No foul for batting the ball in the end zone. Illegal touching. The spot of the violation is the B-20. Team B's ball, first and 10 at the B-20. [Cited by 6-3-11, 6-3-2-b, 9-4-1-c]

II. Team A snaps at the 50-yard line and punts. The kick is untouched beyond the neutral zone when A88 reaches across Team B's goal line and bats the ball back into the field of play. B22 recovers at the B-2 and advances to the B-12 where A66 tackles him by pulling his facemask. **RULING:** No foul for batting in the end zone. Illegal touching. Team B may accept the penalty for the facemask foul, which cancels the illegal touching privilege, and have first and 10 at the B-27. [Cited by 6-3-11, 6-3-2-b]

III. Team A snaps at the 50-yard line and punts. The kick is untouched beyond the neutral zone when A88 reaches across Team B's goal line and bats the ball back into the field of play. B22 muffs the ball at the B-2 and A43 recovers it at the B-6. While the ball is loose B77 holds A21 at the B-10. **RULING:** Team A may cancel the illegal touching privilege by accepting the holding penalty, which is enforced at the previous spot with the down repeated. Postscrimmage kick rules do not apply to B77's foul since Team B will not next put the ball in play (Rule 10-2-3). [Cited by 6-3-11, 6-3-2-b]

IV. Team A snaps at the 50-yard line and punts. During the kick, B77 clips at Team B's 25-yard line. The untouched kick is batted backward by Team A out of bounds from the end zone and goes out of bounds on the two-yard line. **RULING:** No foul for batting the ball in the end zone. Illegal touching. B77's clipping foul is governed by postscrimmage kick rules (Rule 10-2-3). Team A will accept the penalty, which cancels the illegal touching privilege. The penalty is enforced at the postscrimmage kick spot, the B-20, half the distance to the goal line. Team B's ball at the B-10. [Cited by 6-3-11]

V. Team A snaps at the 50-yard line and punts. The kick is untouched beyond the neutral zone when A88 reaches across Team B's goal line and bats the ball back into the field of play, and it rolls out of bounds at the B-4. During the kick, A55 blocks below the waist. **RULING:** No foul for batting the ball in the end zone. Illegal touching. The spot of the violation is the B-20. Team B may accept the penalty for blocking below the waist, which is enforced either at the previous spot with the down repeated or at the B-4. If Team B declines the penalty, the illegal touching gives the ball to Team B, first and 10 at the B-20. [Cited by 6-3-11]

Out of Bounds Player

ARTICLE 12. No Team A player who goes out of bounds during a scrimmage kick down may return inbounds during the down (***Exception:*** This does not apply to a Team A player who is blocked out of bounds and attempts to return inbounds immediately).

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot or five yards from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B. [S19: OBK].

Approved Ruling 6-3-12

I. A88 is running near the sideline to cover a punt when he steps on the sideline and then returns inbounds to continue down the field. He tackles the kick returner at the B-30. **RULING:** Foul by A88 for returning inbounds during the scrimmage kick down. Five-yard penalty. Team B may have the down repeated after the penalty or put the ball in play at the B-35.

Fouls By Kicking Team

ARTICLE 13. Penalties for all fouls by the kicking team other than kick-catch interference (Rule 6-4) during a scrimmage kick play (except field goal attempts) in which the ball crosses the neutral zone may be enforced either at the previous spot with the down repeated (***Exception:*** Penalty option is a safety for fouls in Team A's end zone) or at the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B, at the option of Team B. (**A.R. 6-3-13:I-III**)

Approved Ruling 6-3-13

I. Team A punts on fourth and seven at the A-35. At the snap Team A has five players in the backfield. The kick is partially blocked and goes out of bounds at the A-45. **RULING:** Foul for illegal formation. Team B may have the ball, first and 10 at the A-40 after the five-yard penalty is enforced at the A-45 (the dead-ball spot) or have the penalty enforced at the previous spot with fourth down repeated at the A-30. [Cited by 6-3-13]

II. Team A punts on fourth and seven at the A-35. At the snap Team A has five players in the backfield. The kick is partially blocked, does not cross the neutral zone and is returned by B88 to the A-28 where he is tackled. **RULING:** Team B may decline the penalty and have the ball at the A-28 or have the penalty enforced at the previous spot with fourth down repeated at the A-30. [Cited by 6-3-13]

III. Team A punts on fourth and seven at the A-35. At the snap Team A has five players in the backfield. The kick is partially blocked, crosses the neutral zone, goes back behind the neutral zone and rolls out of bounds at the A-32. **RULING:** Team B may have the ball, first and 10 at the A-27 after the five-yard penalty is enforced at the A-32 (the dead-ball spot) or have the penalty enforced at the previous spot with fourth down repeated at the A-30. [Cited by 6-3-13]

IV. Fourth and 15 at the A-5. Punter A88 is in his end zone when he kicks the ball. Tackle A77 is flagged for holding in the end zone. Team B returns the ball to the B-45. **RULING:** Team B has the option of having possession after the penalty is enforced at the B-45 or accepting the penalty for a safety. (Rule 10-2-4)

Defensive Linemen on Place Kicks

ARTICLE 14. If Team A is in a formation to attempt a place kick (field goal or try), it is illegal for three Team B players on their line of scrimmage inside the free-blocking zone to align shoulder-to-shoulder and move forward together after the snap with primary contact against a single Team A player (**A.R. 6-3-14:I-II**).

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Five yards, previous spot [S19: IFD].

Approved Ruling 6-3-14

I. Fourth and seven at the B-20. Team A is in a formation to attempt a field goal. Defensive linemen B55, B57, and B78 are shoulder to shoulder. B57 is head up on right guard A66 while B55 and B78 are in the gaps on A66's left and right shoulders, respectively. After the ball is snapped all three move forward together. (a) The three make their primary contact against A66; (b) B55 and B57 contact A66, and B78 drives at the right offensive tackle; (c) B57 and B78 make their blocks against A66 but B55 leaps to try to block the kick.

RULING: (a) Foul. Five-yard penalty. If Team A accepts the penalty they will have fourth and two at the B-15. (b) and (c) No foul. The action by the Team B players does not involve primary contact against a single player, and hence the play is legal. [Cited by 6-3-14]

II. Fourth and four at the B-20. Team A is in a formation to attempt a field goal. Team A has five players in the backfield. Defensive linemen B55, B57, and B78 are shoulder to shoulder. B57 is head up on right guard A66 while B55 and B78 are in the gaps on A66's left and right shoulders, respectively. After the ball is snapped all three move forward together. The three make their primary contact against A66. The holder takes the snap, gets to his feet, and completes a pass to eligible A88 who is tackled at the B-10. **RULING:** Foul by Team A, illegal formation. Foul by Team B, triple team against an offensive lineman. The fouls offset and the down is repeated. [Cited by 6-3-14]

SECTION 4. Opportunity to Catch a Kick

Interference with Opportunity

ARTICLE 1. a. If an inbounds player of the receiving team is located where he could catch a free kick or a scrimmage kick that is beyond the neutral zone, and if he is attempting to do so, he must be given an unimpeded opportunity to catch the kick (**A.R. 6-3-1:III**) (**A.R. 6-4-1:V, VI and IX**).

b. It is an interference foul if, before the receiver touches the ball, a Team A player enters the area defined by the width of the receiver's shoulders and extending one yard in front of him. When in question it is a foul. (**A.R. 6-4-1:X-XIII**)

c. This protection ends when the kick touches the ground (***Exception:*** Free kick, Rule 6-4-1-f below), when any player of Team B muffs or touches a scrimmage kick beyond the neutral zone, or when any player of Team B muffs or touches a free kick in the field of play or in the end zone (***Exception:*** Rule 6-5-1-b). (**A.R. 6-4-1:IV**)

d. If interference with a potential receiver is the result of a player being blocked by an opponent, it is not a foul.

e. It is an interference foul if the kicking team contacts the potential receiver before, or simultaneous to, his first touching the ball (**A.R. 6-4-1:II, III and VIII**). When in question, it is an interference foul.

f. During a free kick, a player of the receiving team in position to receive the ball has the same kick-catch and fair-catch protection whether the ball is kicked directly off the tee or is immediately driven to the ground, strikes the ground once and goes into the air in the manner of the ball kicked directly off the tee.

g. If contact by Team A is deemed to be a targeting foul (Rules 9-1-3 and 9-1-4) or any other personal foul that interferes with the receiver's opportunity to catch a kick, it may be ruled either as interference or as a targeting or personal foul. The 15-yard penalty is enforced at the spot where the dead ball belongs to Team B or at the spot of the foul, at the option of Team B.

PENALTY – For foul between the goal lines: Receiving team's ball, first down, 15 yards beyond the spot of the foul for an interference foul [S33: KCI]. For foul behind the goal line: Award a touchback and penalise from the succeeding spot. Flagrant offenders shall be disqualified [S47: DSQ].

Approved Ruling 6-4-1

I. A Team A player catches a free kick very near receiver B25, thus preventing him from making the catch. **RULING:** Kick-catch interference. Penalty — 15 yards from the spot of the foul.

II. A Team B player, about to catch a scrimmage kick, is tackled before the ball arrives, but catches the kick while he is falling. **RULING:** Kick-catch interference. Penalty — 15 yards from the spot of the foul. Disqualification of the Team A player if the contact is flagrant. If the foul is

between the goal lines, enforcement is from the spot of the foul and Team B puts the ball in play by a snap; if behind Team B's goal line, award a touchback and penalise from the succeeding spot. The ruling would be the same had the kick been muffed or fumbled. The ruling also applies on an unsuccessful field goal attempt since Team B touched the ball beyond the neutral zone. [Cited by 6-4-1-e]

III. While a kick is in flight beyond the neutral zone, A1 is standing or running between the ball and B1. (a) The ball strikes A1 while B1 is in a position to catch the ball. (b) B1, in attempting to catch the ball, bumps into A1. **RULING:** (a) and (b) Kick-catch interference. Penalty — 15 yards at the spot of the foul. [Cited by 6-4-1-e]

IV. A player of Team B, attempting to catch a kick (no fair catch signal), muffs the ball that is then touched by an opponent who was not interfering with the opportunity of the receiver when he was in position to make the catch. **RULING:** Not interference. In the absence of a fair catch signal, protection against interference with the opportunity to catch a kick ends when any player of Team B muffs the ball. [Cited by 6-4-1-c]

V. A Team A player beyond the neutral zone first touches or catches a scrimmage kick that no receiver could have caught while it was in flight. **RULING:** Illegal touching but not interference. [Cited by 6-4-1-a]

VI. B25 is standing at the B-35 in position to catch a punt. As the ball is on its downward flight, A88 runs by B25 very close to his side, causing B25 to adjust his position before catching the ball. A88 does not make contact and does not penetrate the one-yard area directly in front of B25. **RULING:** Foul by A88, interference with the opportunity to catch the kick. 15 yards, spot of the foul. Even though B25 catches the ball, A88's action causes him to move away from his original location and thus interferes with his opportunity to make the catch. [Cited by 6-4-1-a]

VII. B10 signals for a fair catch, muffs the ball and then catches it. **RULING:** If B10 has an opportunity to catch the kick after the muff, he must be given an unimpeded opportunity to complete the catch. If B10 catches the muffed kick, the ball is dead where he first touched it.

VIII. Fourth and 10 at the 50-yard line. B17 is at Team B's 20-yard line and in position to catch Team A's high scrimmage kick. During the downward flight of the ball, A37 contacts B17 viciously and flagrantly before he touches the ball. A37 did not alter his speed or make any attempt to elude B17. **RULING:** Team A flagrant personal foul, interference with the opportunity to catch a kick. Penalty — 15 yards from the spot of the foul. A37 is disqualified. [Cited by 6-4-1-e]

IX. Team A's ball, fourth and 10 at the 50-yard line. Team A's windblown scrimmage kick is on its downward flight at Team B's 30-yard line. B18, starting at the 20-yard line, must detour around A92 at the 25-yard line to make the catch at the 30-yard line. **RULING:** Foul by A92 for interference with the opportunity to catch a kick. Penalty — 15 yards from the spot of the foul, which is the 25-yard line. [Cited by 6-4-1-a]

X. Punt receiver B44 is standing at his 30-yard line in position to catch the kick. Defender A11 races down the field to cover the punt and reaches a point about a foot directly in front of B44 as the ball descends. B44 makes the catch without having to adjust his position or manner of catching the ball because of the presence of A11, who does not pull back to give B44 more room. **RULING:** Foul for kick-catch interference. A11 entered the one-yard area directly in front of receiver B44. 15-yard penalty. [Cited by 6-4-1-b]

XI. Punt receiver B22 is at the B-30 awaiting the punt as it makes its downward flight and his teammate B88 is three yards in front of him at the B-33. Down field to cover the kick, A44 legally blocks B88 into B22 just as the ball reaches him. The ball hits B22 in the shoulder and bounces away. Team A recovers at the B-25. **RULING:** Team A's ball, first and 10 at the B-25. This is not kick-catch interference. The action by A44 is against B88 who is not in position to catch the kick, and not against B22. Thus A44 is not deemed to have interfered with B22's opportunity to catch the ball. B22's touching of the ball allows Team A to recover legally. [Cited by 6-4-1-b]

XII. Fourth and five at the A-30. Punt receiver B22 is in position to catch the kick at the B-30. He does not signal. A88 is within a yard of B22, at his side, but does not make contact with B22 when he catches the kick at the B-30. B22 is tackled at the B-32. A88's presence does not cause B22 to make any adjustment to his position or his manner of catching the ball. **RULING:** Legal play; no kick-catch interference. A88 is closer than one yard to B22

but is not directly in front of him. He does not affect B22's opportunity to catch the ball. First and 10 for Team B at the B-32. [Cited by 6-4-1-b]

XIII. B44 is in position to catch a punt at the B-25. While the ball is still very high in the air and well before it comes close to B44, A88 runs directly in front of B44 within a yard but is not near him when the ball arrives. B44 catches the punt and is tackled. **RULING:** No foul. Although A88 penetrates the one-yard region directly in front of the receiver, this is so early in the action that there is no interference with B44's opportunity to catch the kick. [Cited by 6-4-1-b]

SECTION 5. Fair Catch

Dead Where Caught

ARTICLE 1.

a. If a Team B player makes a fair catch, the ball becomes dead where caught and belongs to Team B at that spot. [***Exception:*** If a Team B player makes a fair catch of a free kick behind Team B's 20-yard line, the ball belongs to Team B at its own 20-yard line. The next snap shall be from midway between the hashmarks, unless a different position on or between the hashmarks is selected by the team designated to put the ball in play before the play clock is at 25 seconds or before any subsequent ready-for-play signal. After the play clock is at 25 seconds or any subsequent ready-for-play signal, the ball may be relocated only after a charged team timeout unless preceded by a Team A foul or offsetting fouls.]

b. If a Team B player makes a valid fair catch signal, the unimpeded opportunity to catch a free or scrimmage kick continues if this player muffs the kick and still has an opportunity to complete the catch. If he (or another Team B player) subsequently catches the kick, the ball is placed where he first touched it. This protection terminates when the kick touches the ground. (**A.R. 6-5-1:I-II**)

c. Rules pertaining to a fair catch apply only when a scrimmage kick crosses the neutral zone or during free kicks.

d. The purpose of the fair catch provision is to protect the receiver who, by his fair catch signal, agrees he or a teammate will not advance after the catch. (**A.R. 6-5-5:III**)

e. The ball shall be put in play by a snap by the receiving team at the spot of the catch if the ball is caught (***Exception:*** Rules 6-5-1-a, 6-5-1-b, 7-1-1-c and 8-6-1-b).

Approved Ruling 6-5-1

I. After a valid or invalid signal, B1 muffs the punt and B2, who did not signal, catches the kick. **RULING:** The ball is dead when B2 catches it and the ball is placed where B1 first touched it. [Cited by 6-5-1-b, 6-5-3-a]

II. B1 has a foot out of bounds when he gives a valid or invalid signal. He then catches the kick inbounds. **RULING:** There is no rule against a receiver going out of bounds during a kick. The inbounds catch is legal, and the ball is dead. [Cited by 6-5-1-b]

III. During a free kick, B21 signals for a fair catch at the B-5. B21 muffs the kick but immediately recovers the ball at the B-5. **RULING:** Not a completed Fair Catch. Team B ball, first and 10 at the B-5.

No Advance

ARTICLE 2. No Team B player shall carry a caught or recovered ball more than two steps in any direction after any Team B player gives a valid or invalid fair catch signal. (**A.R. 6-5-2:I-III**)

PENALTY – Dead-ball foul, delay of game. Five yards from the succeeding spot [S7 and S21: DOG].

Approved Ruling 6-5-2

I. B1 gives a fair catch signal before a muff by B2, and then B1 catches or recovers the kick and advances. **RULING:** Because of B1's signal, the ball is dead where caught or recovered. Two steps are permitted to enable B1 to come to a stop or to regain balance. A third or subsequent step inbounds is subject to penalty from where the ball is caught or recovered. If B1 is tackled, the tackle is disregarded unless deemed unnecessarily rough or is so late that the tackler should know that there was no intention to advance. If the kick is caught or recovered by Team B in the end zone, it is a touchback. If B1 is tackled before completion of a third step, only the tackler has fouled. [Cited by 6-5-2]

II. Team A punts. After signalling for a fair catch on his 20-yard line, B1 deliberately lets the ball strike the ground where B2 recovers the bouncing ball and advances to Team B's 35-yard line. **RULING:** The ball is dead at the spot of recovery. Advance is illegal. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot, the spot of recovery. Team B's ball, first and 10 (Rule 5-2-7). [Cited by 6-5-2]

III. Punt receiver B22 gives an invalid fair catch signal by a brief flick of his upraised hand. He catches the ball at the B-35 and sprints to the B-40 where he is tackled. **RULING:** The ball is dead where caught. Foul for delay of game by B22; five-yard penalty from the dead-ball spot. No foul by the tackler, as clearly B22 gave the appearance of being a ball carrier. First and 10 for Team B at the B-30. [Cited by 6-5-2]

Invalid Signals: Catch or Recovery

ARTICLE 3.

a. A catch after an invalid signal is not a fair catch, and the ball is dead where caught or recovered. (***Exception:*** During a free kick, if a Team B receiver gives any waving signal that does not meet all of the requirements of a valid fair catch signal, and subsequently catches the ball behind the B-20 yard line, the ball belongs to Team B at its own 20-yard line). If the signal follows a catch or recovery, the ball is dead when the signal is first given. (**A.R. 6-5-1:I**)

b. Invalid signals beyond the neutral zone apply only to Team B.

c. An invalid signal beyond the neutral zone is possible only when the ball has crossed the neutral zone (Rule 2-16-7). (**A.R. 6-5-3:I**)

Approved Ruling 6-5-3

I. A1 or B1 signals for a fair catch beyond the neutral zone during a kick that does not cross the neutral zone. **RULING:** Any signal by Team A is ignored. Team B may not make a fair catch signal because the ball did not cross the neutral zone. However, the ball is dead when caught or recovered (Rules 2-8-1-a and 4-1-3-g). [Cited by 6-5-3-c]

II. On a free kick, B17 makes an invalid signal for a fair catch near the sideline, muffs the ball, and it goes out of bounds. **RULING:** Team B's ball, first and 10 at the hash mark.

III. A scrimmage kick strikes the ground beyond the neutral zone and bounces high into the air and B1 signals for a fair catch. **RULING:** Invalid signal. The ball is dead when recovered. [Cited by 2-8-3-b]

IV. B1 catches a scrimmage kick beyond the neutral zone and then signals for a fair catch. **RULING:** Invalid signal. The ball is dead where the signal first was given. [Cited by 2-8-3-b]

V. Team A's scrimmage kick is rolling beyond the neutral zone when B17 alerts his teammates to stay away from the ball by a "get away" signal. **RULING:** Invalid signal. The ball is dead by rule when either team recovers. [Cited by 2-8-3-b]

VI. While a free kick is in the air, B21 gives a waving signal that does not meet all the requirements of a valid fair catch signal. The ball is caught by: (a) B21 at the B-5; or (b) B44 at the B-5. **RULING:** The ball is dead when caught. (a) Team B ball, first and 10 at the 20-yard line; (b) Team B ball, first and 10 at the 5-yard line.

Illegal Block or Contact

ARTICLE 4. A player of Team B who has made a valid or invalid signal for a fair catch and does not touch the ball shall not block or foul an opponent during that down. (**A.R. 6-5-4:I and II**)

PENALTY – Free kick: Receiving team's ball 15 yards from the spot of the foul [S40: IBK]. Scrimmage kick: 15 yards, postscrimmage kick enforcement [S40: IBK].

Approved Ruling 6-5-4

I. B1 gives either a valid or invalid fair catch signal and does not touch a punt. While the untouched ball is loose in the field of play, he blocks an opponent (a) in the field of play beyond the neutral zone or (b) in Team B's end zone. **RULING:** (a) If the ball crosses the neutral zone and Team B has possession when the down ends, Team B is penalised 15 yards from the postscrimmage kick enforcement spot. (b) Safety. The ruling is the same on an unsuccessful field goal attempt. [Cited by 6-5-4]

II. B1 signals at the 50-yard line and does not touch a punt. While the ball is rolling on the ground at Team B's 45-yard line, B1 illegally uses his hands in an attempt to get to the ball and the ball is declared dead in Team B's possession. **RULING:** Penalty — 15 yards, postscrimmage kick enforcement. The ball belongs to Team B (Rule 10-2-3). [Cited by 6-5-4]

No Tackling

ARTICLE 5. No player of the kicking team shall tackle or block an opponent who has completed a fair catch. Only the player making a fair catch signal has this protection (**A.R. 6-5-5:I and III**).

PENALTY – Dead-ball foul. Receiving team's ball 15 yards from the succeeding spot [S7 and S38: PF-UNR].

Approved Ruling 6-5-5

I. B1 and B2 each signal. B1 muffs, and B2 is about to catch the muffed ball when A1 grabs and pulls him to the ground. **RULING:** Not interference, but holding. Penalty — 10 yards from the previous spot or from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B. [Cited by 6-5-5]

II. B22 makes a fair catch and is tackled before he has carried the ball more than two steps. **RULING:** Foul by the tackler. Penalty — 15 yards from the succeeding spot.

III. B1 catches the punt after B3 signals for a fair catch. **RULING:** The ball is dead when and where caught. B1 is not entitled to catch protection but is entitled to the same protection he has after any other dead ball (Rule 6-5-1-d). [Cited by 6-5-1-d, 6-5-5]

RULE 7

Snapping and Passing the Ball

SECTION 1. The Scrimmage

Starting with a Snap

ARTICLE 1. a. The ball shall be put in play by a legal snap unless the rules provide for a legal free kick. (**A.R. 4-1-4:I and II**)

b. No player shall put the ball in play before it is ready for play (Rule 4-1-4). (**A.R. 4-1-4:I and II**)

PENALTY – [a-b] Dead-ball foul. Five yards from the succeeding spot [S7 and S19: IPR].

c. The ball may not be snapped in a side zone (Rule 2-31-6). If the starting point for any scrimmage down is in a side zone, the ball shall be transferred to the nearest hash mark.

Shift and False Start

ARTICLE 2. a. *Shift*. After a huddle (Rule 2-14) or shift (Rule 2-22-1) and before the snap, all Team A players must come to an absolute stop and remain stationary in their positions without movement of the feet, body, head or arms for at least one full second before the ball is snapped. (**A.R. 7-1-2:I**)

b. *False Start*. Each of the following is a false start by Team A if it occurs prior to the snap after the ball is ready for play and all players are in scrimmage formation:

1. Any movement by one or more players that simulates the start of a play.
2. The snapper moving to another position.
3. A restricted lineman (Rule 2-27-4) moving his hand(s) or making any quick movement.

   Exceptions:

   (a) It is not a false start if a Team A lineman immediately reacts when threatened by a Team B player in the neutral zone (Rule 7-1-5-a-2) (**A.R. 7-1-3:V**)

   (b) It is not a false start if the snapper takes his hand(s) off the ball, provided this does not simulate the start of a play (Rule 7-1-3-a-3).
4. An offensive player making any quick, jerky movement before the snap, including but not limited to:

   (a) A lineman moving his foot, shoulder, arm, body or head in a quick, jerky motion in any direction.

   (b) The snapper shifting or moving the ball, moving his thumb or fingers, flexing his elbows, jerking his head, or dipping his shoulders or buttocks.

   (c) The quarterback making any quick, jerky movement that simulates the beginning of a play.

   (d) A back simulating receiving the ball by making any quick, jerky movement that simulates the beginning of a play.
5. The offensive team never coming to a one-second stop prior to the snap after the ball is ready for play. (**A.R. 7-1-2:IV**) This is an illegal shift that converts to a false start.

Approved Ruling 7-1-2

I. After a huddle or shift, all Team A players come to a stop and remain stationary for one second. Then, before the snap, two or more simultaneously change their positions. **RULING:** All 11 Team A players must again stop for one second before the snap, otherwise it is a live-ball foul at the snap for an illegal shift. Penalty — Five yards from previous spot (Rule 2-22-1). [Cited by 2-22-1-a, 7-1-2-a]

II. Ten Team A players shift while A1 remains stationary. A1 then starts moving backward before one second elapses and the ball is snapped. **RULING:** If A1, who moved, did not halt with the other Team A players for one second before the snap, it is a dead-ball foul at the snap for a false start. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot [Cited by 2-22-1-a]

III. After the Team A players have stopped for one second, end A88 runs wide and stops, and before one second elapses, back A36 starts moving backward. **RULING:** Legal. But if back A36 starts before end A88 stops, the simultaneous movement of two players constitutes a shift, and all Team A players must be stationary for one second before the snap (Rule 2-22-1). [Cited by 2-22-1-a]

IV. Team A is in a no-huddle offense and is moving to the line when the ball is made ready for play. Although some players settle into their positions and stop, at least one player never stops and is still moving when the ball is snapped. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul — Illegal shift that converts to a false start. Team A never satisfied the one-second rule before the snap. Officials should shut the play down and penalise Team A five yards. [Cited by 2-22-1-a, 7-1-2-b-5]

Offensive Team Requirements — Prior to the Snap

ARTICLE 3. Each of the following (a-d) is a dead-ball foul. Officials should blow the whistle and not allow the play to continue. After the ball is ready for play and before it is snapped:

a. *Snapper*. The snapper (Rule 2-27-8):
   1. May not move to a different position nor have any part of his body beyond the neutral zone.
   2. May not lift the ball, move it beyond the neutral zone or simulate the start of a play.
   3. May take his hand(s) off the ball, but only if this does not simulate the start of a play.

b. *Nine-Yard Marks*.
   1. Each Team A substitute must have been between the nine-yard marks. Team A players who participated in the previous down must have been between the nine-yard marks after the previous down and before the next snap. (**A.R. 3-3-4:I**)
   2. All Team A players must have been between the nine-yard marks after a charged team timeout, an injury timeout, a media timeout or the end of a period.

c. *Encroachment*. Once the snapper is established, no other Team A player may be in or beyond the neutral zone [***Exceptions:*** (1) Substitutes and departing players; and (2) offensive players in a scrimmage kick formation who break the neutral zone with their hand(s) to point at opponents].

d. *False Start*. No Team A player may commit a false start (Rule 7-1-2-b) or contact an opponent. (**A.R. 7-1-3:III**)

PENALTY – [a-d] Dead-ball foul: Five yards from the succeeding spot. [S7 and S19 or S20: FST/ENC].

Approved Ruling 7-1-3

I. A21 is legally on the end of the line of scrimmage next to A88, who is in a three-point stance. Team A stops for one second while A21 and A88 are in the above positions, and then A21 moves to a legal backfield position and stops. Then A88 shifts to a wider position on the line. **RULING:** Legal if both A21 and A88 are stationary at the snap (Rules 2-22-1 and 7-1-4). [Cited by 2-22-1-a, 7-1-4-c]

II. A21 is legally on the end of the line of scrimmage next to A88, who is in the stance of a restricted lineman. Team A has stopped for one second when A21 leaves the line of

scrimmage and goes in motion into the backfield. A88 shifts to a wider position on the line. **RULING:** A88 may break his three-point stance since he is now on the end of the line of scrimmage, but Team A must stop again for one second before the snap to make the play legal (Rule 7-1-4). [Cited by 2-22-1-a, 7-1-4-c]

III. B71 crosses the neutral zone into the Team A backfield and does not threaten any Team A player. A23, legally in the backfield, intentionally reaches to contact B71. **RULING:** Team A foul, false start. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot. [Cited by 7-1-3-d]

IV. Snapper A1 lifts or moves the ball forward before moving it backward to start the snap. B2 bats the ball, causing it to roll loose with B3 recovering. **RULING:** Team A foul, illegal snap, ball remains dead. Penalty — five yards from succeeding spot (Rule 4-1-1). [Cited by 4-1-1]

V. A66, a restricted lineman between the snapper and the player on the end of the line, or A72, a restricted player on the end of the line of scrimmage:

1. Lifts a hand or hands from the ground immediately when threatened by B1, who is in the neutral zone. **RULING:** Blow the whistle immediately. Team B dead-ball foul, offside. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot.
2. Lifts a hand or hands from the ground upon initial charge by B1, who (a) does not enter the neutral zone or (b) enters the neutral zone but does not threaten the position of A66 or A72. **RULING:** In both (a) and (b), blow the whistle immediately. Team A dead-ball foul, false start. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot. [Cited by 2-18-2-d, 7-1-2-b-3-a, 7-1-5-a-2]

NOTE: Before the snap, a team B player who enters the neutral zone may threaten a maximum of three Team A linemen. If the Team B player enters the neutral zone directly toward a Team A lineman, then that Team A player and the two adjacent linemen are considered to be threatened. If the Team B player enters the neutral zone directly toward a gap between two Team A lineman, then only those two Team A players are considered to be threatened.

VI. A80 on the end of the line, a non-restricted interior lineman or a back, misses the snap count and makes a casual movement that is not abrupt, quick or jerky and does not simulate the start of a play. **RULING:** No foul by Team A.

Offensive Team Requirements — At the Snap

ARTICLE 4. Violation of each of the following (a-c) is a live-ball foul; the play is allowed to continue.

a. *Formation*. At the snap, Team A must be in a formation that meets these requirements:

1. All players must be inbounds
2. All players must be either linemen or backs (Rule 2-27-4). (**A.R. 7-1-4:VIII**)
3. At least five linemen must wear jerseys numbered 50 through 79 (***Exception:*** When the snap is from a scrimmage kick formation, paragraph 5 below.)
4. No more than four players may be backs.
5. In a scrimmage kick formation at the snap (Rule 2-16-10) Team A may have fewer than five linemen numbered 50-79, subject to the following conditions:
   (a) Any and all linemen not numbered 50-79 who are ineligible receiver(s) by position become exceptions to the numbering rule when the snapper is established.
   (b) Any and all such numbering-exception players must be on the line and may not be on the end of the line. Otherwise, Team A commits a foul for an illegal formation.
   (c) Any and all such players are exceptions to the numbering rule throughout the down and remain ineligible receivers unless they become eligible under Rule 7-3-5 (forward pass touched by an official or a Team B player).

   The conditions in 5(a)-5(c) are no longer in effect if prior to the snap a period ends or there is a timeout charged to the referee or one of the teams.

b. *Man in motion*.
   1. One back may be in motion, but he may not be moving toward his opponent's goal line.
   2. The player who goes in motion may not start from the line of scrimmage unless he first becomes a back and comes to a complete stop.
   3. A player in motion at the snap must have satisfied the one-second rule — i.e., he may not start his motion before any shift has ended (Rule 2-22-1-c).

c. *Illegal shift*. At the snap, Team A may not execute an illegal shift (Rule 7-1-2-a). (**A.R. 7-1-3:I-II**)

PENALTY – [a-c] Live-ball foul: Five yards from the previous spot [S19 or S20: ILF/ILM/ISH]. For live-ball fouls occurring when or after the snap starts during scrimmage kick plays other than field goal plays: Five yards from the previous spot or five yards from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B [S19 or S20].

Approved Ruling 7-1-4

I. A30, lined up legally as a back, starts in motion legally. He then turns so that he still is legally in motion but is facing his line of scrimmage using a "side-step" motion. At the snap, A30 is bent slightly forward at the waist and is either continuing his "side-step" motion or is "marking time" in place. **RULING:** Legal.

II. A30, lined up legally as a back, starts in motion legally. He then turns so that he still is legally in motion but is facing his line of scrimmage using a "side-step" motion. At the snap, A30, still behind the neutral zone, is moving slightly forward from the waist up or his "side-step" motion has veered slightly toward the line of scrimmage. **RULING:** Live-ball foul at the snap for illegal motion. Penalty — Five yards from the previous spot.

III. Team A's formation at the snap includes only 10 players: five players on the line of scrimmage numbered 50-79, one player on the line wearing number 82, and four players in the backfield. **RULING:** The formation is legal because Team A has no more than four players in the backfield and the required number of players (five) on the line wearing 50-79.

IV. Team A, with fourth and eight, sends two substitutes numbered 21 and 33 into the game as exceptions to the mandatory numbering, and they are positioned legally on their line of scrimmage between the end players on the line of scrimmage. After the ball is snapped, a Team A player, 15 yards deep in a scrimmage kick formation, throws a legal forward pass to an eligible receiver for a 10-yard gain. **RULING:** Legal play (Note: The same play from a field goal formation is legal). [Cited by 1-1-1-b-2]

V. A33, an exception to the mandatory numbering rule, assumes a position on the line of scrimmage next to end A88. Before the snap, A88 moves to a backfield position and the flanker on the opposite side of the line moves to an end position on the line. **RULING:** Illegal formation. Since A33 is now an end, he is thus in an illegal position at the snap (live-ball foul). Penalty — five yards from the previous spot. [Cited by 1-1-1-b-2]

VI. A33, an exception to the mandatory numbering rule, assumes a position on the line of scrimmage to the left of snapper A85, who is on the end of the line. All other Team A players on the line are to A33's left. After a one-second stop, all players on the line except A85 legally shift to the other side of the ball, with A33 now positioned as an end. **RULING:** If the ball is snapped with A33 in this position, it is a foul for an illegal formation. A33 may not legally be on the end of the line at the snap. Penalty — five yards from the previous spot. [Cited by 1-1-1-b-2]

VII. At the B-45, Team A is in a formation in which the snapper A88 is on the right end of the line. The linemen on his left are numbered 56, 63, 72, 22, 79, and 25. There are four players in the backfield. A44 is ten yards directly behind the snapper, and the other backs are to his left a few yards behind the line of scrimmage. No player is in position to hold for a place kick. After the snap, A44 completes a pass to snapper A88 for a touchdown. This happens on (a) first or second down; (b) third or fourth down. **RULING:** Because there are only four offensive linemen numbered in the 50-79 range, the legality of the play depends on whether Team A is in a scrimmage kick formation. One of the requirements for such a

formation is that "it is obvious that a kick will be attempted." (a) Illegal formation: on first or second down, a team is very unlikely to punt, so it is not obvious that a kick will be attempted. (b) Legal play: touchdown. On third or fourth down a team may be likely to kick. (Rule 2-16-10)

VIII. Team A lines up with A11 ten yards directly behind the snapper. The other three backs are split wide, all outside the tackle box. Only four Team A linemen have uniform numbers between 50 and 79. A11 receives the backward pass from the snapper with Team A in this formation. **RULING:** Live-ball foul. Illegal formation, not enough players numbered 50-79 on the line of scrimmage. Team A is not in a scrimmage kick formation, because in this alignment it is not obvious that a kick will be attempted. (Rule 2-16-10) [Cited by 7-1-4-a-2]

IX. Team A lines up with six players on the line of scrimmage, five of whom are numbered in the range 50-79. A seventh player, A88, is in the normal location of an end, but he is positioned so that his feet and shoulders are clearly at a 45-degree angle with the line of scrimmage. The other four players are clearly in the backfield. The ball is snapped with Team A in this alignment. **RULING:** Live-ball foul, illegal formation. Every Team A player must be either a lineman or a back; A88 is neither.

Defensive Team Requirements

ARTICLE 5. The defensive team requirements are as follows:

a. Each of the following (1-5) is a dead-ball foul. Officials should blow the whistle and not allow the play to continue. After the ball is ready for play and before the ball is snapped:
   1. No player may touch the ball except when moved illegally as in Rule 7-1-3-a-1, nor may any player contact an opponent or in any other way interfere with him. (**A.R. 7-1-5:I-II**)
   2. No player may enter the neutral zone threatening an offensive lineman and causing him to react immediately, or commit any other dead-ball offside foul (Rules 2-18-2 and 7-1-2-b-3 Exceptions). (**A.R. 7-1-3:V**) (**A.R. 7-1-5:III**)
   3. No player may cross the neutral zone and without making contact continue his charge toward any back.

PENALTY – [1-3] Dead ball foul, offside. Five yards from the succeeding spot [S18: DOF].

   4. Player(s) aligned in a stationary position within one yard of the line of scrimmage may not make quick, abrupt or exaggerated actions that are not part of normal defensive player movement. (**A.R. 7-1-5:IV**)
   5. No player shall use words or signals that disconcert opponents when they are preparing to put the ball in play. No player may call defensive signals that simulate the sound or cadence of, or otherwise interfere with, offensive starting signals.

PENALTY – [4-5] Dead ball foul, delay of game. Five yards from the succeeding spot [S21: DOD].

b. When the snap starts:
   1. No player may be in or beyond the neutral zone at the snap.
   2. All players must be inbounds.

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot [S18: DOF].

Approved Ruling 7-1-5

I. Snapper A1 lifts the ball before passing it backward, B2 bats the ball away and B3 recovers the ball. **RULING:** Team A dead-ball foul, illegal snap. The ball remains dead because it was not put in play by a legal snap. Penalty — Five yards from the succeeding spot. Team A retains possession. [Cited by 2-23-1-b, 2-23-1-f, 4-1-1, 7-1-5-a-1]

II. Snapper A1 legally begins the snap, but B2 bats the ball before A1 completes the snap, and B3 recovers the ball. **RULING:** Team B foul and the ball remains dead. Penalty — Five yards

from the succeeding spot. Team B may not touch the ball until it has been snapped. Team A retains possession. [Cited by 2-23-1-b, 2-23-1-f, 4-1-1, 7-1-5-a-1]

III. Before the snap, a Team B player crosses the neutral zone and, without making contact, continues his charge behind a Team A lineman and directly toward the quarterback or kicker. **RULING:** A Team B player who is on Team A's side of the neutral zone and is moving in a direct path toward the quarterback or kicker while he is behind an offensive lineman is considered to be interfering with Team A's formation. Penalty — Team B dead-ball foul, offside. Five yards from the succeeding spot. [Cited by 2-18-2-e, 7-1-5-a-2]

IV. Linebacker B56 is stationary within one yard beyond the neutral zone. As the offense is calling its snap signals, B56 feints toward the line in an obvious attempt to induce a false start by the offense. **RULING:** Dead-ball foul, delay of game. Five-yard penalty at the succeeding spot. [Cited by 7-1-5-a-4]

Handing the Ball Forward

ARTICLE 6. No player may hand the ball forward except during a scrimmage down as follows:

a. A Team A back may hand the ball forward to another back only if both are behind their scrimmage line.

b. A Team A back behind his scrimmage line may hand the ball forward to a teammate who is on his scrimmage line at the snap, provided that teammate leaves his line position by a movement of both feet that faces him toward his own end line and is at least two yards behind his scrimmage line when he receives the ball. (**A.R. 7-1-6:I**)

PENALTY – Five yards from the spot of the foul; also loss of a down if by Team A before team possession changes during a scrimmage down [S35 and S9: IFH].

Approved Ruling 7-1-6

I. Eligible receiver A83 is on the end of his scrimmage line and adjacent to the snapper in an unbalanced "T" formation. Quarterback A10 receives a handed snap and immediately conveys the ball to A83. **RULING:** If the movement of the ball is forward and it left A10's hand before having been touched by A83, it is a legal forward pass. A83 may have turned sufficiently to receive a backward pass or handoff (legal); but if the action immediately followed the snap, it is not likely that a handoff would have had time to comply with the "turn" and "two yards behind the line" requirement. [Cited by 7-1-6-b]

Planned Loose Ball

ARTICLE 7. A Team A player may not advance a planned loose ball in the vicinity of the snapper.

PENALTY – Five yards from the previous spot and loss of down [S19 and S9: IPR].

SECTION 2. Backward Pass and Fumble

During Live Ball

ARTICLE 1. A ball carrier may hand or pass the ball backward at any time, except to throw the ball intentionally out of bounds to conserve time.

PENALTY – Five yards from the spot of the foul; also loss of down if by Team A before team possession changes during a scrimmage down (A.R. 3-4-3:III) [S35 and S9: IBP].

Caught or Recovered

ARTICLE 2. a. When a backward pass or fumble is caught or recovered by any inbounds player, the ball continues in play. (**A.R. 2-23-1:I**)

Exceptions:

1. Rule 8-3-2-d-5 (Team A fumble on the try).

2. On fourth down, before a change of team possession, when a Team A fumble is caught or recovered by a Team A player other than the fumbler, the ball is dead. If the catch or recovery is beyond the spot of the fumble, the ball is returned to the spot of the fumble. If the catch or recovery is behind the spot of the fumble, the ball remains at the spot of the catch or recovery.

b. When a backward pass or fumble is caught or recovered simultaneously by opposing players, the ball becomes dead and belongs to the team last in possession (***Exception:*** Rule 7-2-2-a Exceptions).

After the Ball is Snapped

ARTICLE 3. No offensive lineman may receive a hand-to-hand snap.

PENALTY – Live-ball foul. Five yards from the previous spot [S19: IPR].

Out of Bounds

ARTICLE 4. a. *Backward Pass*. When a backward pass goes out of bounds between the goal lines, the ball belongs to the passing team at the out-of-bounds spot.

b. *Fumble*. When a fumble goes out of bounds between the goal lines:

1. In advance of the spot of the fumble, the ball belongs to the fumbling team at the spot of the fumble (Rule 3-3-2-e-2).
2. Behind the spot of the fumble, the ball belongs to the fumbling team at the out-of-bounds spot.

c. *Behind or Beyond Goal Line*. When a fumble or backward pass goes out of bounds behind or beyond a goal line, it is a safety or touchback depending on impetus and responsibility (Rules 8-5-1, 8-6-1 and 8-7). (**A.R. 7-2-4:I**) (**A.R. 8-6-1:I**) (**A.R. 8-7-2:I**)

Approved Ruling 7-2-4

I. B20 intercepts a legal forward pass (a) in his end zone, (b) on his three-yard line, and his momentum carries him into his end zone, or (c) in the field of play and retreats into his end zone (no momentum). In each instance, B20 fumbles in the end zone and the ball rolls forward and out of bounds on Team B's two-yard line. **RULING:** The ball belongs to Team B at the spot of the fumble (Team B's end zone); (a) touchback, (b) Team B's ball at the three-yard line, and (c) safety (Rules 8-5-1 and 8-6-1). [Cited by 7-2-4-c, 8-5-1-a, 8-6-1-a]

II. On second down, A1 fumbles the ball, which strikes the ground and bounces high in the air. B2 receives the ball while off the ground and returns to the ground out of bounds (a) in advance of the spot of the fumble or (b) behind the spot of the fumble. **RULING:** (a) Team A's ball at the spot of the fumble. (b) Team A's ball at the spot where the ball crossed the sideline (Rules 4-2-4-d and 7-2-4).

III. Fourth and three at the B-7, A20 fumbles the ball at the B-5 and the bouncing ball is batted towards B's end line at the B-3 by B40. The ball is recovered in the end zone by A23. **RULING:** Team A should not benefit from a fourth-down forward fumble, so when A23 recovers it, it is returned to the spot of the fumble. B's ball at the B-5. The bat is legal so can be ignored.

At Rest

ARTICLE 5. When a backward pass or fumble comes to rest inbounds and no player attempts to secure it, the ball becomes dead and:

a. If in advance of the spot of the pass/fumble, the ball belongs to the passing/fumbling team at the spot of the pass/fumble.

b. If behind the spot of the pass/fumble, the ball belongs to the passing/fumbling team at the dead ball spot.

SECTION 3. Forward Pass

Legal Forward Pass

ARTICLE 1. Team A may make one forward pass during each scrimmage down before team possession changes, provided the pass is thrown from a point in or behind the neutral zone.

Illegal Forward Pass

ARTICLE 2. A forward pass is illegal if:

a. It is thrown by a Team A player whose entire body is beyond the neutral zone when he releases the ball.

b. It is thrown by a Team B player.

c. It is thrown after team possession has changed during the down.

d. It is the second forward pass during the same down.

e. It is thrown from in or behind the neutral zone after a ball carrier's entire body and the ball have been beyond the neutral zone.

PENALTY – [a-e] Five yards from the spot of the foul; also loss of down if by Team A before team possession changes during a scrimmage down (A.R. 3-4-3:IV) and (A.R. 7-3-2:II) [S35 and S9: IFP].

f. The forward passer, to conserve time, throws the ball directly to the ground (1) after the ball has already touched the ground; or (2) not immediately after controlling the ball.

g. The forward passer, to conserve time, throws the ball forward into an area where there is no eligible Team A receiver. (**A.R. 7-3-2:II-VII**)

h. The forward passer, to conserve yardage, throws the ball forward into an area where there is no eligible Team A receiver (**A.R. 7-3-2:I**)

[***Exception:*** It is not a foul if the forward passer is or has been outside the tackle box and throws the ball so that it crosses or lands beyond the neutral zone or neutral zone extended (Rule 2-19-3) or would have crossed the neutral zone if not touched by Team B. (**A.R. 7-3-2:VIII-X**) This applies only to the player who controls the snap or the resulting backward pass and does not relinquish possession to another player before throwing the forward pass.]

PENALTY – [f-h] Loss of down at the spot of the foul [S36 and S9: ING]

Approved Ruling 7-3-2

I. Quarterback A10, who is not outside the tackle box and is attempting to save yardage, intentionally throws a desperation forward pass that falls incomplete where there is no eligible Team A receiver. **RULING:** Intentional grounding. Penalty — Loss of down at the spot of the foul. The clock starts on the snap (Rule 3-3-2-d-4) unless Rule 3-4-4 applies. [Cited by 7-3-2-h]

II. Late in either half with more than one minute remaining, A10 is unable to locate an open receiver. To conserve time, he throws a forward pass that is incomplete where there is no eligible Team A player. **RULING:** Illegal forward pass, intentional grounding. Penalty — Loss of down at the spot of the foul. The clock will start on the ready-for-play signal (Rule 3-3-2-e-14 and 3-4-3). [Cited by 3-3-2-e-14, 7-3-2-g, 7-3-2 Penalty]

III. On third down near the end of either half, potential field goal holder A4 muffs the snap and A4 or potential kicker A3 recovers the ball and immediately throws it forward to the ground. **RULING:** Illegal forward pass for intentional grounding; not a valid attempt to conserve time. Penalty — Loss of down at the spot of the foul. 10-second subtraction option for Team B (Rule 3-4-4). Clock starts on the ready-for-play signal (Rules 3-3-2-e-14 and 3-4-3) if the 10-second subtraction is accepted. [Cited by 3-3-2-e-14, 7-3-2-g]

IV. The ball is snapped over the head of quarterback A12, who is in the "shotgun" formation. A12 recovers the ball and immediately throws it forward to the ground. **RULING:** Illegal forward pass for intentional grounding; not a valid attempt to conserve time. Penalty — Loss of

down at the spot of the foul. Clock starts on the ready-for-play signal (Rules 3-3-2-e-14 and 3-4-3). [Cited by 3-3-2-e-14, 7-3-2-g]

V. On third down near the end of the half, A1 muffs the snap. A1 or A4 catches the muffed ball and immediately throws it forward into the ground. **RULING:** Legal play. [Cited by 3-3-2-e-14, 7-3-2-g]

VI. On third down near the end of the half, A1 – positioned seven yards behind the snapper – catches the snap and immediately throws the ball forward to the ground. **RULING:** Legal play. [Cited by 3-3-2-e-14, 7-3-2-g]

VII. With seconds remaining in a half and the ball ready for play, Team A quickly lines up and the ball is legally snapped to quarterback A12, who throws the ball forward directly to the ground. Team A's formation was not legal at the snap. When the ball becomes dead, two seconds show on the game clock. **RULING:** Illegal formation. Penalty — Five yards from the previous spot. The clock starts on the snap. [Cited by 3-3-2-e-14, 7-3-2-g]

VIII. Quarterback A10 sprints toward a sideline and is outside the tackle box when he throws a legal forward pass that is batted down by a defensive lineman and lands behind the neutral zone. **RULING:** Legal play. Without the batting the ball would have landed beyond the neutral zone, so A10 has satisfied the spirit of the rule. [Cited by 7-3-2-h]

IX. Third and five at the A-40. QB A12 drops back in the pocket to pass. Under a heavy rush he throws a backward pass to back A22 who carries the ball outside the tackle box. About to be tackled, A22 at the A-35 throws a forward pass that crosses the neutral zone and lands in an area 20 yards away from the nearest Team A eligible receiver. **RULING:** Foul, intentional grounding. The tackle-box rule exception applies only to the player who controls the snap or the resulting backward pass. Loss of down at the spot of the foul. Fourth and 10 at the A-35. (Rule 7-3-2-h Exception) [Cited by 7-3-2-h]

X. Quarterback A12 is in a shotgun formation. He muffs the backward pass from the snapper and the ball is picked up by A63 inside the tackle box. Under a heavy rush, A63 gets outside the tackle box and throws the ball incomplete beyond the line of scrimmage. **RULING:** Legal play. A63 controlled the backward pass that resulted from the snap. (Rule 7-3-2-h Exception) [Cited by 7-3-2-h]

XI. Second and 10 at the A-40. In a shotgun formation A11 takes the backward pass from the snapper and hands the ball off to back A44. A44 takes a few steps toward the line of scrimmage and then throws a backward pass to A11, who is still inside the tackle box. Avoiding tacklers, A11 scrambles outside the tackle box, and unable to find an open receiver, at the A-35 he throws the ball toward an area where there are no eligible receivers, and it lands out of bounds beyond the neutral zone. **RULING:** Illegal forward pass. Loss of down at the A-35; third and 15. A11 loses the right to throw the ball away legally because he relinquishes possession before passing it.

XII. Third and 10 at the A-30. Quarterback A11 drops back to pass. About to be tackled at the A-20, he throws the ball forward to an area where there are no eligible receivers. Tackle A77 catches the pass at the A-28 and is tackled at the A-32. **RULING:** Illegal forward pass; loss of down at the spot of the pass. Fourth and 20 at the A-20. This is "intentional grounding" since A11 throws the ball into an area where there are no eligible Team A receivers. Note that this is not illegal touching by A77, because the rule for illegal touching applies only to a legal forward pass. (Rule 7-3-11)

XIII. Quarterback A11 drops back to pass and scrambles outside the tackle box. He fumbles the ball, which bounces back up into his hands. He then passes the ball forward, and it lands beyond the neutral zone in an open area where there is no eligible receiver with an opportunity to make a catch. **RULING:** Legal play, since A11 did not relinquish possession to another player.

Eligibility to Touch Legal Forward Pass

ARTICLE 3. a. Eligibility rules apply during a down when a legal forward pass is thrown.

b. All Team B players are eligible to touch or catch a pass.

c. When the ball is snapped, the following Team A players are eligible:

1. Each lineman who is on the end of his scrimmage line and who is wearing a number other than 50 through 79.

2. Each back wearing a number other than 50 through 79.

d. An eligible player loses his eligibility when he goes out of bounds. (Rule 7-3-4) (**A.R. 7-3-9:III**)

Eligibility Lost by Going Out of Bounds

ARTICLE 4. No eligible offensive receiver who goes out of bounds and returns in bounds during a down shall touch a legal forward pass while in the field of play or end zones or while airborne until it has been touched by an opponent or official. (**A.R. 7-3-4:I-II and IV**) [***Exception:*** This does not apply to an originally eligible offensive player who immediately returns inbounds after going out of bounds due to contact by an opponent (**A.R. 7-3-4:III**)]. If he touches the pass before returning in bounds, it is an incomplete pass (Rule 7-3-7) and not a foul for illegal touching.

PENALTY – Loss of down at the previous spot [S16 and S9: ITP].

Approved Ruling 7-3-4

I. Eligible A88 voluntarily goes out of bounds, returns inbounds, and is the first player to touch the legal forward pass. This touching by A88 occurs in Team B's end zone. **RULING:** Illegal touching. Penalty — Loss of down at the previous spot. [Cited by 7-3-4]

II. Eligible A88 voluntarily goes out of bounds during a down in which a legal forward pass is thrown. He returns to the field of play inbounds but does not touch the ball and is held by an opponent before the ball is touched by any player. **RULING:** Not pass interference – A88 is not eligible to catch a legal forward pass. Penalty — 10 yards from the previous spot. Repeat the down. [Cited by 7-3-4]

III. Wide receiver A88 is blocked out of bounds by B1 and then runs 20 yards before returning to the field of play. A88 catches a legal pass in Team B's end zone. **RULING:** Foul for illegal touching due to A88's failure to return inbounds immediately. Penalty — Loss of down at the previous spot. [Cited by 7-3-4]

IV. Eligible receiver A44 is running a pass pattern near the sideline. As a legal forward pass comes toward him, he accidentally steps on the sideline, leaps, muffs the pass into the air while airborne, returns to the ground inbounds, grabs the ball and lands on his knees inbounds with the ball firmly in his possession. **RULING:** Incomplete pass. A44 first touched the ball while airborne and thus out of bounds since he had not established in bounds. (Rule 2-27-15) [Cited by 7-3-4]

Eligibility Gained or Regained

ARTICLE 5. When a Team B player or an official touches a legal forward pass, all players become eligible. (**A.R. 7-3-5:I**)

Approved Ruling 7-3-5

I. Team B touches the legal forward pass near a sideline while originally eligible A1 is out of bounds. A1 comes inbounds and touches the pass. **RULING:** Legal play. Touching by Team B made all players eligible during the remainder of the down. [Cited by 7-3-5]

Complete Pass

ARTICLE 6. Any forward pass is complete when caught by a player of the passing team who is inbounds, and the ball continues in play unless completed in the opponent's end zone or the pass has been caught simultaneously by opposing players. If a forward pass is caught simultaneously by opposing players inbounds, the ball becomes dead and belongs to the passing team (Rules 2-4-3 and 2-4-4). (**A.R. 2-4-3:III**) (**A.R. 7-3-6:I-VIII**)

Approved Ruling 7-3-6

I. Two opposing players receive a legal forward pass while both are off the ground, and both players return to the ground inbounds at the same time. **RULING:** Simultaneous catch; the ball is awarded to the passing team (Rule 2-4-4). [Cited by 2-4-4, 7-3-6]

II. Two opposing players receive a ball while both are off the ground, and one player returns to the ground inbounds before the other. **RULING:** No simultaneous catch. The legal forward

pass is completed or intercepted by the player who first returned to the ground (Rule 2-4-4). [Cited by 2-4-4, 7-3-6]

III. An inbounds airborne player receives a legal forward pass. While still in the air, he is tackled by an opponent and obviously held for a moment before being carried in any direction. He then lands inbounds or out of bounds with the ball. **RULING:** Completed pass. The ball is dead at the yard line where the receiver/interceptor was held in a manner that prevented him from immediately returning to the ground (Rule 4-1-3-p). [Cited by 4-1-3-p, 7-3-6]

IV. Airborne A80 receives a legal forward pass at his 30-yard line. While still in the air, he is tackled by B40 and driven forward to team A's 34-yard line, where he is downed. **RULING:** Team A's ball at its 34-yard line (Rule 5-1-3-a). [Cited by 7-3-6]

V. Airborne A80 receives a legal forward pass at his 30-yard line. While still in the air, he is tackled by B40 and driven backward to team A's 26-yard line, where the ball becomes dead. **RULING:** Team A's ball at the 30-yard line (Rule 5-1-3-a Exception). [Cited by 5-1-3-a-2, 7-3-6]

VI. A86 is legally blocked out of bounds by B18 at Team B's two-yard line. A86, while attempting an immediate return to the field of play, leaps from out of bounds and is airborne as he receives A16's legal forward pass. He lands in Team B's end zone with the ball in his grasp. **RULING:** Incomplete pass. A86 did not establish in bounds before touching the pass, and hence he was still out of bounds. (Rule 2-27-15) [Cited by 7-3-6]

VII. B33 leaps from in bounds and is airborne as he receives Team A's legal forward pass. He completes the interception by landing (a) in the field of play or (b) in Team B's end zone, and is then tackled. **RULING:** B33 is a ball carrier until he loses player possession or the ball becomes dead by rule. (a) First and 10 for Team B. (b) Touchback. (Rules 4-1-3-c, 4-2-3-a, 5-1-1-e and 7-3-4). [Cited by 7-3-6]

VIII. While airborne and in bounds, eligible receiver A89 touches a forward pass when he propels it toward (a) eligible receiver A80, who catches the pass; or (b) B27, who intercepts the pass. **RULING:** Legal play, and the ball remains live in both (a) and (b). A89 has batted a forward pass (Rules 2-4-3, 2-11-3 and 9-4-1-a). [Cited by 7-3-6]

IX. Airborne receiver A85 grasps a forward pass and in the process of going to the ground, first contacts the ground with his left foot as he falls to the ground inbounds. Immediately upon A85 hitting the ground, the ball comes loose and touches the ground. **RULING:** Incomplete pass. An airborne receiver must maintain control of the ball while going to the ground in the process of completing a catch.

X. Airborne receiver A85 grasps a forward pass and in the process of going to the ground, first contacts the ground with his left foot as he falls to the ground inbounds. Immediately upon A85 hitting the ground, the ball comes loose but never touches the ground before he regains control. **RULING:** Catch. If the receiver is inbounds and is going to the ground and loses control, as long as the player remains inbounds and the ball never touches the ground, it is a completed pass.

XI. Airborne receiver A85 grasps a forward pass and in the process of going to the ground, first contacts the ground with his left foot inbounds as he falls to the ground out of bounds. Immediately upon A85 hitting the ground out of bounds, the ball comes loose. **RULING:** Incomplete pass regardless of whether or not the ball hits the ground because the receiver is out of bounds.

XII. Receiver A85 stretches out at the Team B two-yard line and grasps a forward pass and is going to the ground on his own as he is attempting to complete the catch. As A85 falls to the ground in the end zone, the ball immediately comes loose and falls to the ground. **RULING:** Incomplete pass. Any receiver going to the ground on his own in the process of making a catch must maintain control of the ball when he hits the ground.

XIII. Receiver A85 is airborne and in bounds in the end zone and grasps a forward pass, but while airborne he is hit by a defender, which causes A85 to fall to the ground. Immediately upon A85 hitting the ground, the ball comes loose and strikes the ground. **RULING:** Incomplete pass. An airborne receiver contacted before completing all the requirements of a catch must still maintain control of the ball after hitting the ground.

XIV. Eligible A80 is airborne when he receives a legal forward pass. He grasps the ball firmly in his hands, and as he is returning toward the ground, the nose of the football touches the ground before any part of his body. A80 retains his firm control of the ball and it does not

move during this action. A80's knees then touch the ground and he maintains control of the ball. **RULING:** Completed pass.

XV. Eligible A80 is airborne near the sideline when he receives a legal forward pass. As he comes to the ground facing the field of play, his toe (a) clearly drags the ground inbounds before he falls out of bounds; (b) touches the ground inbounds and then his heel comes down on the sideline in a continuous motion. He maintains firm control of the ball in both cases. **RULING:** (a) Complete pass. (b) Incomplete pass. The continuous toe-heel touching is part of a single process and by interpretation he has landed out of bounds, thus not executing a catch.

Incomplete Pass

ARTICLE 7. a. Any forward pass is incomplete if the ball is out of bounds by rule (Rule 4-2-3) or if it touches the ground when not firmly controlled by a player. It also is incomplete when a player leaves his feet and receives the pass but first lands on or outside a boundary line, unless his progress has been stopped in the field of play or end zone (Rule 4-1-3-p). (**A.R. 2-4-3:III**) (**A.R. 7-3-7:I**)

b. When a legal forward pass is incomplete, the ball belongs to the passing team at the previous spot.

c. When an illegal forward pass is incomplete, the ball belongs to the passing team at the spot of the pass (***Exception:*** If Team B declines the penalty for an illegal pass thrown from the end zone, the ball shall next be put in play at the previous spot.) (**A.R. 7-3-7:II-III**)

Approved Ruling 7-3-7

I. A player touches a legal forward pass (a) while he is contacting a boundary line; (b) while airborne after having leaped from out of bounds. **RULING:** (a) and (b). The ball is out of bounds, the pass is incomplete, and the down counts. The player loses his eligibility when he goes out of bounds (Rules 2-27-15, 4-2-3-a and 7-3-3). [Cited by 7-3-7-a]

II. Fourth and nine on Team A's six-yard line. A1 intentionally grounds a forward pass in his end zone to save loss of yardage. **RULING:** Team B may accept the penalty for a safety. If they decline the penalty, it is Team B's ball, first and goal on the six-yard line. [Cited by 7-3-7-c]

III. Third and nine on Team A's six-yard line. A1 throws a second forward pass from his end zone. B2 intercepts and is downed on Team A's 20-yard line. **RULING:** Team B may accept the penalty which results in a safety or take the result of the play, retaining the ball for a first down on Team A's 20-yard line. [Cited by 7-3-7-c]

Illegal Contact and Pass Interference

ARTICLE 8. a. During a down in which a legal forward pass crosses the neutral zone, illegal contact by Team A and Team B players is prohibited from the time the ball is snapped until it is touched by any player or an official. (**A.R. 7-3-8:II**)

b. Offensive pass interference is contact by a Team A player beyond the neutral zone that interferes with a Team B player during a legal forward pass play in which the forward pass crosses the neutral zone. It is the responsibility of the offensive player to avoid the opponents. It is not offensive pass interference (**A.R. 7-3-8:IV, V, X, XV and XVI**):

1. When, after the snap, a Team A ineligible player immediately charges and contacts an opponent at a point not more than one yard beyond the neutral zone and maintains the contact for no more than three yards beyond the neutral zone. (**A.R. 7-3-10:II**)
2. When two or more eligible players are making a simultaneous and bona fide attempt to reach, catch or bat the pass. Eligible players of either team have equal rights to the ball. (**A.R. 7-3-8:IX**)
3. When the pass is in flight and two or more eligible players are in the area where they might receive or intercept the pass and an offensive player in that area impedes an opponent, and the pass is not catchable.

PENALTY – 15 yards from the previous spot [S33: OPI].

c. Defensive pass interference is contact beyond the neutral zone by a Team B player whose intent to impede an eligible opponent is obvious and could prevent the opponent the opportunity of receiving a catchable forward pass. When in question, a legal forward pass is catchable. Defensive pass interference occurs only after a legal forward pass is thrown. (**A.R. 7-3-8:VII, VIII, XI and XII**).

It is not defensive pass interference (**A.R. 7-3-8:III**) (**A.R. 7-3-9:III**):

1. When, after the snap, opposing players immediately charge and establish contact with opponents at a point that is within one yard beyond the neutral zone.
2. When two or more eligible players are making a simultaneous and bona fide attempt to reach, catch or bat the pass. Eligible players of either team have equal rights to the ball. (**A.R. 7-3-8:IX**)
3. When a Team B player legally contacts an opponent before the pass is thrown. (**A.R. 7-3-8:III and X**)
4. When there is contact by a Team B player that otherwise would be pass interference during a down in which a Team A potential kicker, from scrimmage kick formation, simulates a scrimmage kick by throwing the ball high and deep.

PENALTY – Team A's ball at the spot of the foul, first down, if the foul occurs fewer than 15 yards beyond the previous spot. If the foul occurs 15 or more yards beyond the previous spot, Team A's ball, first down, 15 yards from the previous spot [S33: DPI].

When the ball is snapped on or inside the Team B 17-yard line and outside the Team B two-yard line and the spot of the foul is on or inside the two-yard line, the penalty from the previous spot shall place the ball at the two-yard line, first down. (A.R. 7-3-8:XIV)

No penalty enforced from outside the two-yard line may place the ball inside the two-yard line (*Exception:* On the try when the snap is at the three-yard line, Rule 10-2-5-b).

If the previous spot was on or inside the two-yard line, first down halfway between the previous spot and the goal line (Rule 10-2-6 Exception).

Approved Ruling 7-3-8

I. B33, defending against a legal forward pass beyond the neutral zone, has his back to the ball and is waving his arms in the face of eligible A88, but does not make contact. **RULING:** No foul. There is no foul for defensive pass interference if there is no contact. [Cited by 7-3-9-f]

II. Wide receiver A80, 15 yards beyond the neutral zone, turns his back toward the neutral zone. The forward passer throws the ball high over A80's hands, which are extended above his head. The ball is overthrown and beyond the receiver (uncatchable pass) when B2 pulls A80 down by the facemask. **RULING:** Personal foul (Rule 9-1-12-a), not pass interference. Penalty — 15 yards from the previous spot. First and 10 for Team A. Flagrant offenders shall be disqualified. [Cited by 7-3-8-a]

III. A83, a wide receiver 10 yards from the nearest interior lineman, slants toward the middle of the field. Before the ball is thrown, B1, a back, legally blocks him and knocks him down. **RULING:** Legal unless the block was below the waist (Rule 9-1-6). [Cited by 7-3-8-c-3, 7-3-8-c]

IV. At the snap, A88 is on the end of the line of scrimmage 10 yards from the tackle position and A44 is in the backfield, four yards to his inside. Just before the Team A forward passer releases the ball, A88 contacts B1 five yards beyond the neutral zone. The pass is thrown to A44, who has moved in front and to the outside of the spot where A88 had contacted B1. **RULING:** Team A foul, offensive pass interference. Penalty — 15 yards from previous spot. [Cited by 7-3-8-b]

V. Before the ball is thrown, wide receiver A88 moves four yards downfield directly toward and in front of the defender, B1. At this spot, B1 pushes A88, who then uses his hands to contact

B1. **RULING:** Team A foul, offensive pass interference, if the legal forward pass is beyond the neutral zone. Penalty — 15 yards from previous spot. [Cited by 7-3-8-b]

VI. Before the ball is thrown, wide receiver A88 slants to the inside where linebacker B1 attempts to block him. A88 uses his hands to shove B1 away. **RULING:** Team A foul, offensive pass interference if the legal forward pass crosses the neutral zone. If B1's initial contact was below the waist and beyond the neutral zone, Team B also has fouled and the live-ball fouls offset.

VII. A88, a spread receiver, runs a 10-yard route and cuts 90 degrees to the sideline. After the ball is thrown, B2 contacts A88 with a tackle, block, grasp or push before A88 touches the ball, a catchable forward pass. **RULING:** Team B foul, defensive pass interference. Penalty — Spot foul and first down. [Cited by 7-3-8-c]

VIII. A80, a tight end, runs 10 yards into the secondary and cuts toward the goal posts. B1 is one step behind and to the outside when he recovers. After the legal forward pass has been thrown, B1 contacts A80 with a tackle, block, grasp or push as the ball goes over A80's outstretched hands. **RULING:** Team B foul for defensive pass interference. Penalty — Spot foul and a first down if infraction occurs less than 15 yards from previous spot; 15-yard penalty from the previous spot and a first down if the foul is more than 15 yards beyond the neutral zone. [Cited by 7-3-8-c]

IX. A88 and B2 are running closely together before or after the ball has been thrown. Either A88 or B2 or both fall when their feet become entangled. Neither player was tripped intentionally. **RULING:** No foul. [Cited by 7-3-8-b-2, 7-3-8-c-2]

X. Before the pass is thrown, wide receiver A88 and defender B1 are running shoulder to shoulder and side by side 15 yards beyond the neutral zone. A88 is nearest to the sideline, and B1 is nearest to the hash mark. A88 breaks to the inside. B1 does not move, and A88 collides with him. **RULING:** No foul because the ball has not been thrown. [Cited by 7-3-8-b, 7-3-8-c-3]

XI. Wide receiver A88 and defender B1 are running shoulder to shoulder and side by side 15 yards beyond the neutral zone. A88 is nearest to the sideline, and B1 is nearest to the hash mark. A legal forward pass is thrown toward the goal post. While the ball is in the air, A88 breaks to the inside toward the catchable forward pass. B1 does not move and makes no attempt to go for the pass, and A88 collides with him. **RULING:** Team B foul, defensive pass interference. Penalty — 15 yards from previous spot and first down. [Cited by 7-3-8-c]

XII. A44, a slot back, runs a pattern 25 yards downfield toward the goal line pylon. B1, a safety, is positioned between A44 and the pylon when the ball is thrown. B1 obviously reduces his speed and collides with A44 before the catchable ball touches the ground. **RULING:** Team B foul, defensive pass interference. Penalty — 15 yards from the previous spot and first down. [Cited by 7-3-8-c]

XIII. A80, a tight end, moves across the formation on a pass pattern at a depth of 25 yards where he contacts B1, a safety, before or after the ball has been thrown. A88, a wide receiver, positioned on the opposite side from the tight end at the snap, crosses behind the contact of A80 and B1 and catches the legal forward pass. **RULING:** Team A foul, offensive pass interference. Penalty — 15 yards from previous spot.

XIV. Fourth and goal for Team A on Team B's five-yard line. Team A's legal forward pass is incomplete, but Team B interfered on its one-yard line or in its end zone. **RULING:** First and goal for Team A on Team B's two-yard line. [Cited by 7-3-8 Penalty]

XV. A80 and B60 are attempting to catch a forward pass thrown toward A80's position, which is beyond the neutral zone. The pass is high and ruled uncatchable. As the ball passes overhead, A80 pushes B60 in the chest. **RULING:** Not offensive pass interference. [Cited by 7-3-8-b]

XVI. On a legal forward pass beyond the neutral zone, A80 and B60 are attempting to catch the pass thrown to A80's position. A14, who is not attempting to catch the pass, blocks B65 downfield, either before the pass is thrown or while the uncatchable pass is in flight. **RULING:** Team A foul, offensive pass interference. Penalty — 15 yards from the previous spot. [Cited by 7-3-8-b]

Pass Interference: Summary

ARTICLE 9. a. Either Team A or Team B legally may interfere with opponents behind the neutral zone.

b. Players of either team legally may interfere beyond the neutral zone after the pass has been touched. (**A.R. 7-3-9:I**)

c. Defensive players legally may contact opponents who have crossed the neutral zone if the opponents are not in a position to receive a catchable forward pass.

   1. Those infractions that occur during a down in which a forward pass crosses the neutral zone are pass interference infractions only if the receiver had the opportunity to receive a catchable forward pass.
   2. Those infractions that occur during a down in which a forward pass does not cross the neutral zone are Rule 9-3-4 infractions and the penalty is enforced from the previous spot.

d. Pass interference rules apply only during a down in which a legal forward pass crosses the neutral zone (Rules 2-19-3 and 7-3-8-a, b and c).

e. Contact by Team B with an eligible receiver involving a personal foul that interferes with the reception of a catchable pass may be ruled either as pass interference or as a personal foul with the 15-yard penalty enforced from the previous spot. Rule 7-3-8 is specific about contact during a pass. However if the interference involves an act that ordinarily would result in disqualification, the fouling player is disqualified from the game.

f. Physical contact is required to establish interference. (**A.R. 7-3-8:I**)

g. Each player has territorial rights, and incidental contact is ruled under "attempt to reach ... the pass" in Rule 7-3-8. If opponents who are beyond the line collide while moving toward the pass, a foul by one or both players occurs only if intent to impede the opponent is obvious. It is pass interference only if a catchable forward pass is involved.

h. Pass interference rules do not apply after the pass has been touched anywhere inbounds by an inbounds player or has touched an official. If an opponent is fouled, the penalty is for the foul and not pass interference. (**A.R. 7-3-9:I**)

i. After the pass has been touched, any player may execute a legal block during the remaining flight of the pass.

j. Tackling or grasping a receiver or any other intentional contact before he touches the pass is evidence that the tackler is disregarding the ball and is therefore illegal.

k. Tackling or running into a receiver when a forward pass obviously is underthrown or overthrown is disregarding the ball and is illegal. This is not pass interference but a violation of Rule 9-1-12-a, which carries a penalty of 15 yards from the previous spot plus a first down. Flagrant offenders shall be disqualified.

Approved Ruling 7-3-9

I. A legal forward pass beyond the neutral zone is tipped or muffed by an eligible receiver of either team or glances off an official. Then, while the pass is still in flight, either Team A or Team B holds or otherwise fouls an eligible opponent who is beyond the neutral zone. **RULING:** Interference rules do not apply after the pass has been touched. Penalise as a foul during a loose ball. Penalty — 10 or 15 yards from the previous spot (Rule 9-3-6). [Cited by 7-3-9-b, 7-3-9-h]

II. On a legal forward pass behind the neutral zone, eligible A1 “has position” on B1 and is about to touch the pass when B1 pushes A1 and the pass is incomplete. **RULING:** Legal. Interference rules do not apply behind the neutral zone (Rules 7-3-9-d, 9-1-5 Exception 4 and 9-3-6 Exception 5).

III. Running a pattern near the sideline, end A88 touches the sideline just before a defender jumps into him and bats the ball to the ground. **RULING:** Not defensive pass interference. A88 became ineligible when he stepped out of bounds. (Rule 7-3-3) [Cited by 7-3-3-d, 7-3-8-c]

Ineligible Receiver Downfield

ARTICLE 10. No originally ineligible receiver shall be or have been more than three yards beyond the neutral zone until a forward passer throws a legal forward pass that crosses the neutral zone. A player is in violation of this rule if any part of his body is beyond the three-yard limit (***Exception:*** If the passer is legally throwing the ball away and the ball lands near or beyond the sideline.) (**A.R. 7-3-10:I and III**).

PENALTY – Five yards from the previous spot [S37: IDP].

Approved Ruling 7-3-10

I. Ineligible lineman A70 runs more than three yards beyond the neutral zone and does not make contact with an opponent. He circles toward the flank and returns across the neutral zone before A10 throws a legal forward pass that crosses the neutral zone. **RULING:** Ineligible downfield. Penalty — Five yards from the previous spot. [Cited by 7-3-10]

II. Ineligible lineman A70 makes contact with an opponent within one yard of the neutral zone. A70 drives B4 more than three yards beyond the neutral zone and then circles back across the neutral zone before A1 throws a legal forward pass that crosses the neutral zone. **RULING:** Team A foul, offensive pass interference. Penalty — 15 yards from the previous spot (Rule 7-3-8-b). [Cited by 7-3-8-b-1]

III. First and 10 at the A-37. Ineligible lineman A70 avoids defensive linemen after the snap and starts downfield. When the passer releases the ball, the top of A70's helmet is penetrating the plane of the A-40. The pass crosses the neutral zone and falls incomplete at the A-39. **RULING:** Foul, ineligible receiver downfield. Some part of A70's body was more than three yards beyond the neutral zone when the pass was released. [Cited by 7-3-10]

Illegal Touching

ARTICLE 11. No originally ineligible player while inbounds may intentionally touch a legal forward pass until it has touched an opponent or an official. (**A.R. 5-2-3:I**) (**A.R. 7-3-11:I-II**)

PENALTY – Five yards from the previous spot [S16: ITP].

Approved Ruling 7-3-11

I. Late in the half, quarterback A10, who has not been outside the tackle box, throws a desperation pass to intentionally save yardage that falls incomplete after ineligible A58 touches the ball in an attempt to catch it. **RULING:** Foul for intentional grounding. No foul for illegal touching since the pass is illegal. Penalty — Loss of down at the spot of the pass. The clock starts on the snap (Rules 3-3-2-d-4 and 7-3-2-h). Rule 3-4-4 applies if less than one minute remains on the game clock. If time expires in the quarter the quarter is not extended. [Cited by 7-3-11]

II. Team A snaps on its 10-yard line. A10 retreats and then passes forward to ineligible A70 who, while in his end zone, (a) touches the ball as he attempts to catch the pass, and the pass is incomplete; (b) catches the pass and is downed in the end zone; or (c) catches the pass and is downed after having advanced to his three-yard line. **RULING:** (a) Team B may accept the five-yard penalty or decline the penalty so the down will count. (b) The ball is dead in the end zone with impetus by Team A, and Team B may accept the safety or the penalty at the previous spot. (c) The down counts if the penalty is declined; the dead-ball spot might be deemed more advantageous to Team B than the penalty. [*NOTE*: (a), (b) and (c) could be intentional grounding depending on the location of an eligible Team A player or the location of A10 when the ball is thrown] (Rule 10-1-1-b). If intentional grounding is warranted, there is no illegal touching. [Cited by 7-3-11]

Team B personal foul during legal forward pass play

ARTICLE 12. Penalties for personal fouls by Team B during a completed legal forward pass play are enforced at the end of the last run when it ends beyond the neutral zone. If the pass is incomplete or intercepted, or if there is a change of team possession during the down, the penalty is enforced at the previous spot. (Rule 9-1 Penalty) (**A.R. 7-3-12:I**) (**A.R. 9-1-2:III**)

Approved Ruling 7-3-12

l. A11 throws a forward pass intended for A88. During the play defensive end B88 is flagged for a head-slap to tackle A79. The pass to A88 is (a) complete for a 10-yard gain to the A-30 where A88 is tackled; (b) incomplete or intercepted. **RULING:** (a) The penalty is enforced at the end of the of run, which is the A-30; first and 10 for Team A at the A-45. (b) The penalty is enforced at the previous spot, first and 10 for Team A at the A-35. (Rule 9-1 Penalty) [Cited by 10-2-2-e-1, 7-3-12]

RULE 8

Scoring

SECTION 1. Value of Scores

Scoring Plays

ARTICLE 1. The point value of scoring plays shall be:

Touchdown	6 points
Field Goal	3 points
Safety (points awarded to opponent)	2 points
Touchdown during try	2 points
Field Goal during try	1 point
Safety during try (point awarded to opponent)	1 point

Forfeited Games

ARTICLE 2. The score of a forfeited game, or a suspended game that later results in a forfeiture, shall be: Offended Team – 1, Opponent – 0. However, if the offended team is ahead at the time of forfeit, the score stands (Rules 3-3-3-a, 3-3-3-b, and 9-2-3).

SECTION 2. Touchdown

How Scored

ARTICLE 1. A touchdown shall be scored when:

a. A ball carrier advancing from the field of play has possession of a live ball when it penetrates the plane of the opponent's goal line. This plane extends beyond the pylons only for a player who touches the ground in the end zone or a pylon. (**A.R. 2-23-1:I**) (**A.R. 8-2-1:I-IX**)

b. A player catches a forward pass in the opponent's end zone. (**A.R. 5-1-3:I-II**)

c. A fumble or backward pass is recovered, caught, intercepted, or awarded in the opponent's end zone (***Exceptions:*** Rules 7-2-2-a Exception 2 and 8-3-2-d-5). (**A.R. 8-2-1:X**)

d. A free kick or scrimmage kick is legally caught or recovered in the opponent's end zone. (**A.R. 6-3-9:III**)

e. The referee awards a touchdown under the provisions of Rule 9-2-3 Penalty.

Approved Ruling 8-2-1

I. Ball carrier A1, while attempting to score, strikes the pylon located on the right intersection of the goal line and sideline with his foot. He is carrying the ball in his right arm, which is extended over the sideline. **RULING:** Whether or not a touchdown is scored depends on the forward progress of the ball as related to the goal line when the ball becomes dead by rule (Rules 4-2-4-d and 5-1-3-a). [Cited by 2-9-2, 4-2-4-d, 8-2-1-a]

II. Ball carrier A1, advancing in the field of play, becomes airborne at the two-yard line. His first contact with the ground is out of bounds three yards beyond the goal line. The ball, in possession of the ball carrier, passes over the pylon. **RULING:** Touchdown (Rule 4-2-4-d). [Cited by 2-9-2, 4-2-4-d, 8-2-1-a]

III. The ball, in possession of airborne ball carrier A21, crosses the sideline above the one-yard line, continues beyond the pylon and is then declared dead out of bounds in possession of A21. **RULING:** Ball is declared out of bounds at the one-yard line (Rules 2-12-1 and 4-2-4-d). [Cited by 2-9-2, 4-2-4-d, 8-2-1-a]

IV. Quarterback A12 completes a forward pass to a teammate who is standing in Team B's end zone. (a) A12 is beyond the neutral zone when he releases the ball. (b) The receiver is wearing uniform number 73. **RULING:** In (a) and (b) the result of the play is a touchdown. The penalty is completed according to Team B's options. [Cited by 2-9-2, 8-2-1-a]

V. Ball carrier A22 dives for the goal line at the B-1. The ball in his possession (a) touches the pylon; (b) goes over the top of the pylon; (c) crosses the goal line inside the pylon. A22 then first contacts the ground out of bounds three yards beyond the goal line. **RULING:** (a), (b) and (c) Touchdown in all three. The ball in A22's possession has broken the plane of the goal line in all three scenarios. [Cited by 2-9-2, 4-2-4-d, 8-2-1-a]

VI. Ball carrier A22 heads for the right-hand pylon at the goal line. At the B-2 he dives or is blocked into the air by an opponent. The ball in A22's right hand crosses the sideline at the B-1 and passes outside the pylon, and then A22 (a) touches the pylon with his foot or left hand; (b) first touches the ground out of bounds three yards beyond the goal line. **RULING:** (a) Touchdown. The goal-line plane is extended since A22 touches the pylon. (b) Not a touchdown. The goal-line plane is not extended because A22 did not touch either the pylon or the ground in the end zone. The ball is ruled out of bounds at the B-1. [Cited by 2-9-2, 4-2-4-d, 8-2-1-a]

VII. Ball carrier A22 heads for the right-hand pylon at the goal line. The ball in his right hand crosses the extension of the goal line outside (i.e., to the right of) the pylon, and then A22 steps (a) on the goal line; (b) on the sideline inches short of the goal line. **RULING:** (a) Touchdown. The goal-line plane is extended because A22 touches the ground in the end zone. (b) Not a touchdown. The goal-line plane is not extended. The ball is ruled out of bounds at the crossing point. [Cited by 2-9-2, 4-2-4-d, 8-2-1-a]

VIII. Ball carrier A22 heads for the right-hand pylon at the goal line. The ball is in his right hand. His foot hits the pylon just before the ball crosses (a) the pylon or (b) the extension of the goal line just to the right (outside) of the pylon. **RULING:** (a) and (b) No touchdown in either case. Because the pylon is out of bounds the ball is dead when A22's foot hits it. Thus in both cases the ball is dead before it crosses the goal line. [Cited by 2-9-2, 4-2-4-d, 8-2-1-a]

IX. Ball carrier A1 is hit and his forward progress stopped inbounds near the goal line at the sideline to his right. When he is stopped he has the ball in his right hand extended beyond the goal line (a) inside the pylon; (b) outside the pylon. **RULING:** (a) Touchdown. The ball became dead when he extended it beyond the goal-line plane. (b) Not a touchdown, because no part of his body touches either the pylon or the end zone. In this case the goal-line plane is not extended. [Cited by 2-9-2, 4-2-4-d, 8-2-1-a]

X. Ball carrier A33 is running toward the Team B goal line. He drops the ball just inside the one-yard line and, thinking he has scored a touchdown, circles through the end zone and runs to his team area. There is no touchdown signal by any official. The fumbled ball hits the ground just outside or just inside the goal line, rolls along the ground in the end zone, and is declared dead there when it comes to rest and no player attempts to recover it. **RULING:** A's ball just inside the one-yard line. (Rule 7-2-5) [Cited by 8-2-1-c]

SECTION 3. Try Down

How Scored

ARTICLE 1. If the try results in what would be a touchdown, safety or field goal under rules governing play at other times, the point or points shall be scored according to the point values in Rule 8-1-1 (**A.R. 8-3-1:I-II**) (**A.R. 8-3-2:I-III and VI**) (**A.R. 10-2-5:X-XV**)

Approved Ruling 8-3-1

I. During a try, after having obtained possession, Team B fumbles and Team A recovers in the Team B end zone. **RULING:** Team B can fumble after intercepting a pass, catching or recovering a fumble or recovering a backward pass. Touchdown. Award Team A two points (Rule 8-3-2-d-1). [Cited by 8-3-1]

II. B19 is the first player beyond the neutral zone to touch Team A's blocked PAT kick when he muffs the kick in the end zone. A66 recovers in the end zone. **RULING:** Award Team A two points. [Cited by 8-3-1]

Opportunity to Score

ARTICLE 2. A try is an opportunity for either team to score one or two points while the game clock is stopped after a touchdown. It is a special interval in the game which, for purposes of penalty enforcement only, includes both a down and the ''ready'' period that precedes it.

a. The ball shall be put in play by the team that scored a six-point touchdown. If a touchdown is scored during a down in which time in the fourth period expires, the try shall not be attempted unless the point(s) would affect the outcome of the game.

   Exceptions:

   1. If the scoring team is ahead by one or two points, they have the option to forego the try.
   2. The try shall not be attempted if the fourth period ends due to a running clock before the ball is snapped.

b. The try, which is a scrimmage down, begins when the ball is declared ready for play.

c. The snap will be midway between the hash marks on the opponent's three-yard line or from any other point on or between the hash marks on or behind the opponent's three-yard line if the position of the ball is selected by the team designated to put the ball in play before the play clock is at 25 seconds or before any subsequent ready-for-play signal. The ball may be relocated after a Team B foul or a charged timeout to either team unless the timeout is preceded by a Team A foul or offsetting fouls (Rules 8-3-3-a and 8-3-3-c-1).

d. The try ends when:

   1. Either team scores.
   2. The ball is dead by rule. (**A.R. 8-3-2:IV and VI**)
   3. An accepted penalty results in a score.
   4. A Team A loss-of-down penalty is accepted (Rule 8-3-3-c-2).
   5. Before a change of team possession, a Team A player fumbles and the ball is caught or recovered by any Team A player other than the fumbler. There is no Team A score. (**A.R. 8-3-2:VIII**)

Approved Ruling 8-3-2

I. On a try attempt, B2 adds new impetus to a Team A fumble that is recovered in the Team B end zone by Team B. **RULING:** Safety, award Team A one point (Rules 8-3-1 and 8-5-1). [Cited by 8-3-1]

II. On a try attempt, B2 kicks a Team A fumble into the Team B end zone where Team B recovers while grounded. **RULING:** Safety, one point for Team A, or Team A may accept the penalty for illegally kicking the ball (Rules 8-3-1 and 8-3-3-b-1) and repeat the down. [Cited by 8-3-1, 8-3-3-b-1]

III. On a one-point try attempt, B2 blocks A1's kick. The ball, which does not cross the neutral zone, is picked up by A2, and he advances the ball across Team B's goal line. **RULING:** Award Team A two points (Rule 8-3-1). [Cited by 8-3-1]

IV. On a one-point try attempt, Team A's kick is blocked. A2 picks up the ball beyond the neutral zone in the field of play. **RULING:** The ball is dead where picked up by A2. The try is ended. [Cited by 8-3-2-d-2]

V. On a one-point try attempt, Team A's kick is blocked. The ball, untouched beyond the neutral zone, (a) is recovered by B3 on his one-yard line or (b) hits the ground in Team B's end zone. **RULING:** (a) B3 may advance the ball. (b) The ball is dead, the try is ended (Rule 8-3-1).

VI. On a one-point try attempt, Team A's kick is blocked. B3 recovers the ball and advances across Team A's goal line. During B3's run, B4 clips. **RULING:** No score, the try is ended, and the penalty is declined by rule (Rule 10-2-7-b). [Cited by 8-3-1, 8-3-2-d-2]

VII. On a try attempt, B1 intercepts Team A's legal forward pass in his end zone. He runs the ball across Team A's goal line, and (a) there are no fouls during the run, (b) B3 clips during the run or (c) A2 fouls during the run. **RULING:** (a) Award Team B two points. (b) No score, the try is ended, and the penalty is declined by rule. (c) Award Team B two points, and the penalty is declined by rule. (Rules 8-3-1, 10-2-7-a and 10-2-7-b). [Cited by 10-2-7-b]

VIII. On a try attempt, A1 muffs the hand-to-hand snap from the snapper. A2 recovers the ball and carries it into Team B's end zone. **RULING:** Award Team A two points (Rule 2-11-2). [Cited by 8-3-2-d-5]

IX. On a one-point try attempt, Team A's kick is blocked and B75 recovers at the two-yard line. B75 then fumbles and the ball rolls into the end zone, where B61 recovers while grounded. **RULING:** Safety. Award Team A one point (Rule 8-1-1).

Fouls During a Try Before a Change of Team Possession

ARTICLE 3. a. *Offsetting fouls:* If both teams foul during the down and Team B fouls before the change of possession, the fouls offset and the down is repeated, even if additional fouls occur after the change of possession. Any repeat of the down after offsetting fouls must be from the previous spot. (**A.R. 8-3-3:II**)

b. *Fouls by Team B on a try:*

1. When the try is successful, Team A shall have the option of declining the score and repeating the try after enforcement, or declining the penalty(ies) and accepting the score. Team A may accept the score with penalties for personal fouls and unsportsmanlike conduct fouls enforced on the succeeding kickoff or from the succeeding spot in extra periods. (**A.R. 3-2-3:VI**) (**A.R. 8-3-2:II**) (**A.R. 8-3-3:I**) (**A.R. 10-2-5:IX-XI**)
2. A repeat of the down after a penalty against Team B may be from any point on or between the hash marks on or behind the yard line where the penalty leaves the ball. (**A.R. 8-3-3:III**)

c. *Fouls by Team A on a try:*

1. After a foul by Team A on a successful try, the ball shall be put in play at the spot where the penalty leaves it. (**A.R. 8-3-3:I**)
2. If Team A commits a foul for which the penalty includes loss of down, the try is over, and the score is cancelled, and no yardage penalty is assessed on the succeeding kickoff.
3. If before a change of team possession Team A commits a foul that is not offset, and during the down there is neither another change of team possession nor a score, the penalty is declined by rule.

d. *Dead-ball enforcement:*

1. Penalties for fouls occurring after the ball is ready for play and before the snap are enforced before the next snap.
2. Penalties for live-ball fouls treated as dead-ball fouls occurring during the try down are enforced on the succeeding kickoff or from the succeeding spot in extra periods. If the try is repeated, these penalties are enforced on the repeat (Rule 10-1-6) (**A.R. 3-2-3:VII**)

e. *Roughing or running into kicker or holder:* Roughing or running into the kicker or holder is a live-ball foul.

f. *Kick catch interference:* The penalty for interference with a kick catch is declined by rule. Any score by Team A is cancelled.

Approved Ruling 8-3-3

I. During a try attempt, Team A's legal kick, untouched and in the air, has crossed the neutral zone when a foul occurs. **RULING:** If the foul is by Team A and the try is unsuccessful, and Team B does not gain possession, the try ends. If the foul is by Team A and the try is successful, the penalty is at the previous spot. If the foul is by Team B and the try is successful, score the point unless Team A chooses to accept the penalty and attempt a two-point play. The try is exempt from postscrimmage kick enforcement. Penalties for Team B personal fouls on a successful try may be enforced on the subsequent kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods. If the try is unsuccessful, Team A may accept the penalty and the down will be repeated. [Cited by 8-3-3-b-1, 8-3-3-c-1]

II. Both teams foul during a try, and Team B had not gained possession. **RULING:** Repeat the down at the previous spot. [Cited by 8-3-3-a]

III. Lined up for the try at the middle of the B-3, Team A commits a false start and is penalised to the B-8. The kick attempt is blocked, but B77 was in the neutral zone at the snap. The penalty takes the ball to the B-4 for the repeat of the down. Team A requests that the ball be placed at the right hash mark. **RULING:** The officials grant the request and the ball is made ready for play at the B-4 on the right hash mark. [Cited by 8-3-3-b-2]

IV. During a try, both teams foul before Team B intercepts a forward pass. On the return, (a) B23 clips or (b) A18 tackles the ball carrier by twisting his face mask. **RULING:** (a) and (b) The fouls offset and the down is repeated.

V. During a try, B79 is in the neutral zone at the snap. B20 intercepts a forward pass and A55 tackles him by pulling the face mask. **RULING:** The fouls offset and the down is repeated.

Fouls During a Try After a Change of Team Possession

ARTICLE 4. Fouls after a change of team possession are treated specially (Rule 10-2-7). (**A.R. 8-3-4:I and II**)

Approved Ruling 8-3-4

I. B15 intercepts Team A's legal forward pass and is running at midfield when tackled by A19, who grasps and pulls B15's face mask. **RULING:** The penalty is declined by rule and the try is ended. [Cited by 8-3-4]

II. B1 intercepts Team A's legal forward pass and runs it to midfield. During the run of the interception, B2 clips in Team B's end zone. **RULING:** The penalty is declined by rule. [Cited by 8-3-4]

III. During a two-point try attempt, Team A is flagged for an illegal shift. B21 recovers a fumble and on the return, B45 clips and A80 slugs an opponent. B21 carries the ball across the goal line. **RULING:** A80 is disqualified. The score does not count, the fouls cancel, the down is not repeated and the try is ended.

IV. During a two-point try attempt, Team A is flagged for an illegal shift. B21 recovers a fumble and on the return, A80 slugs an opponent. B21 carries the ball across the goal line. **RULING:** The score counts and the penalty for A80's flagrant foul is enforced on the succeeding kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods. A80 is disqualified.

Fouls After a Try

ARTICLE 5. Penalties for fouls occuring after a try are enforced on the succeeding kickoff or from the succeeding spot in extra periods. However, if the try is repeated, these penalties are enforced before the repeat (Rule 10-1-6). (**A.R. 10-2-5:XIII-XV**) (**A.R. 3-2-3:VII**)

Next Play

ARTICLE 6. After a try, the ball shall be put in play by a kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods. The team scoring the six-point touchdown shall kick off.

SECTION 4. Field Goal

How Scored

ARTICLE 1. a. A field goal shall be scored if a scrimmage kick, which may be a drop kick or place kick, passes over the crossbar between the uprights of the receiving team's goal before it touches a player of the kicking team or the ground.

b. If a legal field goal attempt passes over the crossbar between the uprights and is dead beyond the end line or is blown back but does not return over the crossbar and is dead anywhere, it shall score a field goal. The crossbar and uprights are treated as a line, not a plane, in determining forward progress of the ball.

Next Play

ARTICLE 2. a. *Successful field goal.* After a field goal is scored, the ball shall be put in play by a kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods. The team scoring the field goal shall kick off.

b. *Unsuccessful field goal attempt.*

1. When the ball is declared dead and is untouched by Team B beyond the neutral zone, it belongs to Team B. Except in an extra period, Team B will snap the ball at either the previous spot, the 20-yard line or the dead ball spot (whichever is most advantageous to Team B).
   (a) The 20-yard-line snap shall be from midway between the hash marks unless Team B selects a different location on or between the hash marks before the ready-for-play signal.
   (b) After the ready-for-play signal, the ball may be relocated after a charged team timeout, unless preceded by a Team A foul or offsetting fouls.
2. If the ball does not cross the neutral zone, or if Team B touches the ball after it crosses the neutral zone, all rules pertaining to scrimmage kicks apply.
   (**A.R. 6-3-4:II**) (**A.R. 8-4-2:I-VI**) (**A.R. 10-2-3:V**)

Approved Ruling 8-4-2

I. Fourth and eight on Team B's 40-yard line. Team A's untouched field goal attempt rolls dead on Team B's seven-yard line. **RULING:** Team B's ball at Team B's 40-yard line. [Cited by 8-4-2-b-2]

II. Fourth and eight on Team B's 40-yard line. Team A's attempted field goal touches B1 at the 10-yard line and goes out of bounds at the five-yard line. **RULING:** Team B's ball at Team B's five-yard line. [Cited by 8-4-2-b-2]

III. Fourth and eight on Team B's 40-yard line. Team A's attempted field goal strikes the ground at the three-yard line and bounces into the end zone, where it is received in the air and then downed by a Team B player. **RULING:** Touchback (Rule 8-6-1-b). Team B's ball at the 20-yard line. [Cited by 8-4-2-b-2]

IV. Fourth and eight on Team B's 18-yard line. Team A's unsuccessful field goal attempt goes out of the end zone. **RULING:** Team B's ball at the 20-yard line. [Cited by 8-4-2-b-2]

V. Team A's unsuccessful field goal attempt strikes the ground beyond the neutral zone and bounces back across the neutral zone, where it is recovered by B1 and advanced into the end zone. **RULING:** Touchdown (Rule 6-3-5). [Cited by 6-3-5, 8-4-2-b-2]

VI. Fourth and six on Team B's 18-yard line. Team A's unsuccessful field goal attempt strikes the ground beyond the neutral zone and bounces back across the neutral zone to Team B's 28-yard line, where it goes out of bounds or is recovered and downed by either team. The kick is untouched beyond the neutral zone. **RULING:** Team B's ball, first and 10 at Team B's 28-yard line (Rules 6-3-6, 6-3-7 and 8-4-2-b). [Cited by 8-4-2-b-2]

VII. Team A snaps the ball at the B-15 to attempt a field goal. The kick is blocked, crosses the neutral zone and lands at the B-12. Before any player touches it beyond the neutral zone, the ball rebounds behind the neutral zone and goes out of bounds at the (a) B-17; (b)

B-25. **RULING:** (a) Team B's ball, first and 10 at the B-20; (b) Team B's ball, first and 10 at the B-25. (Rules 6-3-7 and 8-4-2-b)

VIII. Fourth and goal at the B-10. The field goal attempt is blocked and hits the ground at the B-7. It then rebounds to the B-13 where B44 muffs it. A44 recovers at the B-11. **RULING:** First and 10 for Team A at the B-11. Team B has touched a scrimmage kick that has crossed the neutral zone. (Rule 6-3-3)

SECTION 5. Safety

How Scored

ARTICLE 1. It is a safety when:

a. The ball becomes dead out of bounds behind a goal line, except from an incomplete forward pass, or becomes dead in the possession of a player on, above or behind his own goal line, or becomes dead by rule, and the defending team is responsible for the ball being there. (**A.R. 6-3-1:IV**) (**A.R. 7-2-4:I**) (**A.R. 8-5-1:I-II, IV and VI-X**) (**A.R. 8-7-2:II**) (**A.R. 9-4-1:VIII**)

When in question, it is a touchback, not a safety.

Exception: It is not a safety if a player between his five-yard line and his goal line:

(a) intercepts a pass or fumble; or recovers an opponent's fumble or backward pass; or catches or recovers an opponent's kick; and

(b) his original momentum carries him into his own end zone; and

(c) the ball remains behind his goal line and is declared dead in his team's possession there. This includes a fumble that goes from the end zone into the field of play and out of bounds (Rule 7-2-4-b-1).

If conditions (a)-(c) are satisfied above, the ball belongs to this player's team at the spot where he gained possession.

b. An accepted penalty for a foul leaves the ball on or behind the offending team's goal line. (***Exception:*** Rules 10-2-7-c and 10-2-7-a). (**A.R. 8-5-1:III**) (**A.R. 10-2-2:VI**)

Approved Ruling 8-5-1

I. A10, after receiving the snap in his own end zone, is downed with the ball resting on his goal line, its forward point being in the field of play. **RULING:** Safety. A part of the dead ball is on the ball carrier's goal line. [Cited by 2-9-2, 4-2-4-a, 5-1-3-a-1, 8-5-1-a]

II. A scrimmage kick fails to cross the neutral zone, or crosses the neutral zone and is first touched by Team B, or is untouched and then rebounds into the end zone where it is declared dead in Team A's possession. **RULING:** Safety (Rule 8-7-2-a). [Cited by 8-5-1-a, 8-7-2-a]

III. B1 intercepts a legal forward pass (not a try) deep in his end zone, and advances but does not get out of the end zone, where he is downed. During the run, B2 clips A1 in the end zone. **RULING:** Safety, since the penalty leaves the ball in Team B's possession in the end zone. [Cited by 8-5-1-b]

IV. B1 intercepts a pass or fumble or catches a scrimmage or free kick between his five-yard line and the goal line, and his momentum carries him into the end zone. The ball remains in the end zone and is declared dead there in Team B's possession. **RULING:** Team B's ball at the spot where the pass or fumble was intercepted, or the kick was caught. The ruling is the same if B1 had recovered a fumble, a backward pass or a kick under similar circumstances. [Cited by 8-5-1-a]

V. B1 intercepts a pass or fumble or catches a scrimmage or free kick between his five-yard line and the goal line, and his momentum carries him into the end zone. Before the ball is declared dead, B2 clips in the end zone. B1 does not get out of the end zone, and the ball is declared dead. **RULING:** Safety by penalty. The basic spot is the end of the run where B1 gained possession between the five-yard line and goal line, and the foul is behind the basic spot.

VI. Team A's fumble or backward pass strikes the ground. Team B muffs the ball in an attempt to recover, but it crosses Team A's goal line, where Team A falls on the ball or the ball goes out of bounds from the end zone. **RULING:** Safety. The impetus came from the fumble or pass (Rule 8-7-2-a). [Cited by 8-5-1-a, 8-7-2-a]

VII. A36 intends to punt from behind his goal line, but he muffs the ball. After A36 recovers the ball, he runs into the pylon at the intersection of the sideline and goal line. **RULING:** Safety, unless the entire ball is beyond the goal line as the ball carrier contacts the sideline or pylon. The ball is dead at its most forward point when A36 contacts the pylon or sideline (Rules 2-31-3 and 4-2-4-d). [Cited by 2-31-3-c, 4-2-4-d, 8-5-1-a]

VIII. B40 intercepts a pass on Team B's four-yard line. His momentum is taking him into the end zone when he fumbles the ball on the one-yard line and (a) B40, the fumbler, recovers the fumble in the end zone, or (b) B45, a teammate of the fumbler, recovers the fumble in the end zone. **RULING:** Safety in both (a) and (b). [Cited by 8-5-1-a, 8-7-2-a]

IX. B47 intercepts a pass at the B-3. His momentum carries him into the end zone where he fumbles. The ball rolls into the field of play. A33 recovers at the B-2 but he is hit and fumbles. The ball rolls into the end zone and over the end line. **RULING:** Touchback. Team B's ball, first and 10 at the B-20. The momentum rule applies only if the ball remains in the end zone and is declared dead there. (Rule 8-6-1) [Cited by 8-5-1-a]

X. Third and five at the B-20. Defensive back B44 intercepts a forward pass in his end zone. While still in the end zone he fumbles the ball. It rolls forward, goes into the field of play, and in the scramble the ball goes back into the end zone (a) where B44 recovers while grounded; (b) and over the end line. **RULING:** (a) and (b) Safety, two points for Team A. The impetus for the ball going into the end zone the second time is B44's fumble. The scramble to recover the ball does not add new impetus. The momentum rule does not apply because the ball did not remain in the end zone. (Rule 8-7-2) [Cited by 8-5-1-a]

Kick After Safety

ARTICLE 2. After a safety is scored, the ball belongs to the defending team at its own 20-yard line, and that team shall put the ball in play on or between the hash marks by a free kick that may be a punt, drop kick or place kick (***Exception:*** Extra-period and try rules).

SECTION 6. Touchback

When Declared

ARTICLE 1. It is a touchback when:

a. The ball becomes dead out of bounds behind a goal line, except from an incomplete forward pass, or becomes dead in the possession of a player on, above, or behind his own goal line and the attacking team is responsible for the ball being there (Rule 7-2-4-c) (**A.R. 7-2-4:I**) (**A.R. 8-6-1:I-III**)

b. A kick becomes dead by rule behind the defending team's goal line and the attacking team is responsible for the ball being there (***Exception:*** Rule 8-4-2-b). (**A.R. 6-3-4:III**)

Approved Ruling 8-6-1

I. Team A's fumble strikes the pylon at the intersection of Team B's goal line and sideline. **RULING:** Touchback. Team B's ball at the 20-yard line (Rules 7-2-4-c and 4-2-3-b). [Cited by 2-31-3-c, 7-2-4-c, 8-6-1-a]

II. B1 intercepts Team A's legal forward pass in his own end zone, after which A1 snatches the ball from his hand while in Team B's end zone. **RULING:** Touchdown. The ball is not automatically dead when intercepted, but it becomes dead when A1 gets possession. However, if in the judgement of the official there is perceptible time during which the Team B player made no attempt to advance after the interception, declaring a touchback is justified. [Cited by 8-6-1-a]

III. Third and five at the B-20. Defensive back B44 intercepts a forward pass in his end zone. While still in the end zone he fumbles the ball. It rolls forward, goes into the field of play, and in the scramble A33 kicks the ball into the end zone and over the end line. **RULING:** First and 10 for Team B at the B-30. The result of the play is a touchback, and therefore the basic spot for enforcement of the 10-yard penalty for illegally kicking the ball is the B-20. The touchback results because of the new impetus given by A33 kicking the ball. (Rules 2-16-1-a, 8-7-1, 10-2-2-d-2-a) [Cited by 8-6-1-a]

Snap After a Touchback

ARTICLE 2. After a touchback is declared, the ball belongs to the defending team at its own 20-yard line. The ball shall be put in play on or between the hash marks by a snap (***Exception:*** Extra-period rules). The snap shall be from midway between the hash marks, unless a different position on or between the hash marks is selected by the team designated to put the ball in play before the play clock is at 25 seconds or before any subsequent ready-for-play signal. After the ready-for-play signal, the ball may be relocated after a charged team timeout, unless preceded by a Team A foul or offsetting fouls.

SECTION 7. Responsibility and Impetus

Responsibility

ARTICLE 1. The team responsible for the ball being out of bounds behind a goal line or being dead in the possession of a player on, above or behind a goal line is the team whose player carries the ball or imparts an impetus to it that forces it on, above or across the goal line, or is responsible for a loose ball being on, above or behind the goal line.

Initial Impetus

ARTICLE 2. a. The impetus imparted by a player who kicks, passes, snaps or fumbles the ball shall be considered responsible for the ball's progress in any direction even though its course is deflected or reversed after striking the ground or after touching an official or a player of either team. (**A.R. 6-3-4:III**) (**A.R. 8-5-1:II, VI and VIII**) (**A.R. 8-7-2:I-IV**)

b. Initial impetus is considered expended and the responsibility for the ball's progress is charged to a player:
   1. If he kicks a ball not in player possession or bats a loose ball after it strikes the ground.
   2. If the ball comes to rest and he gives it new impetus by any contact with it, other than through forced touching (Rule 2-11-4-c).

c. A loose ball retains its original status when there is new impetus.

Approved Ruling 8-7-2

I. Ball carrier A1, advancing toward Team B's goal line, fumbles when B1 bats the ball from his hand or tackles him from the rear. In either case, A1 loses possession short of the goal line, and the ball goes into Team B's end zone where Team B recovers. **RULING:** Touchback. Impetus is charged to the fumble by Team A (Rule 8-6-1-a). [Cited by 7-2-4-c, 8-7-2-a]

II. Any kick by Team A strikes the ground and a Team B player bats the ball across Team B's goal line, where Team B recovers it while grounded or it goes out of bounds. **RULING:** New impetus is given by Team B. Safety, two points for Team A. Batting the kick is considered to have destroyed the impetus of the kick and imparted a new impetus. However, merely touching or deflecting the kick, or being struck by it, does not destroy the impetus of the kick (Rule 8-5-1-a). [Cited by 8-5-1-a, 8-7-2-a]

III. Team A punts. The ball is touched by Team B (no impetus added) and crosses Team B's goal line. Then Team B falls on the ball or the ball goes out of bounds from the end zone. **RULING:** Touchback. The same ruling applies if a kick in flight strikes Team B or is merely deflected by an attempted catch. Team B may recover and advance, and it is a touchback if a Team B player is downed in the end zone or goes out of bounds behind the goal line (Rule 8-6-1-a). [Cited by 8-7-2-a]

IV. Team A free kicks from its 35-yard line. The ball is rolling on the ground on Team B's three-yard line when B10 kicks the ball into the end zone and over the end line. **RULING:** Safety, due to the new impetus by B10. Team B foul for illegally kicking the ball. If the penalty (10 yards) is accepted, the down is repeated with the free kick at the A-45. (Rules 9-4-4 and 10-2-2-d-4.) [Cited by 8-7-2-a, 9-4-4]

RULE 9

Conduct of Players and Others Subject to the Rules

SECTION 1. Personal Fouls

All fouls in this section (unless noted) and any other acts of unnecessary roughness are personal fouls. For flagrant personal fouls mandating BAFA review, see Rule 9-6. Except as otherwise noted, the penalties for all personal fouls are as follows:

PENALTY – Personal foul. 15 yards. For dead-ball fouls, 15 yards from the succeeding spot. Automatic first down for fouls by Team B if not in conflict with other rules. Penalties for Team A live-ball personal fouls behind the neutral zone are enforced from the previous spot. Safety if the live-ball foul occurs behind Team A's goal line. [S7, S24, S25, S34, S38, S39, S40, S41, S45 or S46: PF-*]. Flagrant offenders shall be disqualified [S47: DSQ].

For Team A fouls during free or scrimmage kick plays: Enforcement may be either at the previous spot or the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B (field goal plays exempted) (Rules 6-1-8 and 6-3-13).

For Team B personal fouls during a legal forward pass play (Rules 7-3-12 and 10-2-2-e): Enforcement is at the end of the last run when it ends beyond the neutral zone and there is no change of team possession during the down. If the pass is incomplete or intercepted, or if there is a change of team possession during the down, the penalty is enforced at the previous spot.

Flagrant Personal Fouls

ARTICLE 1. Before the game, during the game and between periods, all flagrant personal fouls (Rule 2-10-3) require disqualification. Team B disqualification personal fouls require first downs if not in conflict with other rules.

Striking Fouls and Tripping

ARTICLE 2. a. No person subject to the rules shall strike an opponent with the knee; strike an opponent's helmet (including the face mask), neck, face or any other part of the body with an extended forearm, elbow, locked hands, palm, fist, or the heel, back or side of the open hand; or gouge an opponent. (**A.R. 9-1-2:I**)

b. No person subject to the rules shall strike an opponent with his foot or any part of his leg that is below the knee.

c. There shall be no tripping. Tripping is intentionally using the lower leg or foot to obstruct an opponent below the knee (Rule 2-28).

Approved Ruling 9-1-2

I. A player on defense sticks out his foot and trips an opponent. (a) The opponent is a wide receiver running a passing route. (b) The opponent is the ball carrier. **RULING:** (a) and (b) Personal foul, tripping. Penalty — 15 yards, automatic first down. [Cited by 9-1-2-a]

II. A1, a ball carrier, strikes tackler B6 with his extended forearm just before being tackled. **RULING:** Personal foul. Penalty — 15 yards. Enforce from the previous spot if foul occurs behind the neutral zone. Disqualification if flagrant. Safety if the foul occurs behind Team A's goal line.

III. A11 completes a forward pass to A88 who is tackled in the field of play. During the play defensive end B88 is flagged for a personal foul against A79. **RULING:** The 15-yard penalty is enforced at the spot where A88 is tackled (Rules 7-3-12 and 9-1 Penalty). [Cited by 10-2-2-e-1, 7-3-12]

Targeting and Making Forcible Contact With the Crown of the Helmet

ARTICLE 3. No player shall target and make forcible contact against an opponent with the crown of his helmet. The crown of the helmet is the portion of the helmet above the level of the top of the facemask. This foul requires that there be at least one indicator of targeting (see Rule 2-35). When in question, it is a foul (Rule 9-6). (**A.R. 9-1-3:I**)

PENALTY – Flagrant foul. In addition to the 15-yard penalty, automatic disqualification. The 15-yard penalty is not enforced if the video judge reverses the disqualification. [S38, S24 and S47: PF-TGT/DSQ]

Approved Ruling 9-1-3

I. Forward passer A12 inside the tackle box is looking for an open receiver. Before or just as he releases the ball, A12 is hit from the side at the ribs, thigh or knee by B79, who dives forward and leads with the crown (top) of his helmet. **RULING:** Foul by B79 for targeting his opponent and making forcible contact with the top of his helmet. 15 yards, first down. B79 is automatically disqualified. [Cited by 9-1-3]

Targeting and Making Forcible Contact to Head or Neck Area of a Defenseless Player

ARTICLE 4. No player shall target and make forcible contact to the head or neck area of a defenseless opponent with the helmet, forearm, hand, fist, elbow or shoulder. This foul requires that there be at least one indicator of targeting (see Rule 2-35). When in question, it is a foul (Rule 2-27-14 and 9-6). (**A.R. 9-1-4:I-VI**)

PENALTY – Flagrant foul. In addition to the 15-yard penalty, automatic disqualification. The 15-yard penalty is not enforced if the video judge reverses the disqualification. [S38, S24 and S47: PF-TGT/DSQ]

Approved Ruling 9-1-4

I. Receiver A83 has just leaped and received a forward pass. As A83 is about to regain his balance, B45 launches and drives into A83 above the shoulder area with his helmet or shoulder. **RULING:** Foul by B45 for targeting and making forcible contact with a defenseless opponent above the shoulders. 15 yards, first down. B45 is automatically disqualified. [Cited by 9-1-4]

II. As ball carrier A20 sweeps around the end and heads upfield, he lowers his head and contacts defensive end B89 who is trying to tackle him. The players meet helmet to helmet. **RULING:** No foul. Neither A20 nor B89 is a defenseless player and neither has targeted his opponent in the sense of Rule 9-1-3. [Cited by 9-1-4]

III. A44 is covering the kickoff that opens the second half. As A44 is running at the Team B 45-yard line, B66 targets and launches into A44 from the side, a blind-side block. B66 first makes contact with his forearm at A44's (a) neck; (b) upper arm or shoulder. **RULING:** (a) Foul by B66 for blind-side block with targeting. 15-yard penalty at the end of the run. B66 is disqualified. (b) This is a foul for a blind-side block. No foul for targeting - although A44 is a defenseless player, the contact by B66 is not to the head or neck area. [Cited by 9-1-4]

IV. A12 who normally plays quarterback is lined up as a wide receiver in the backfield and A33 is five yards behind the snapper in a shotgun formation. A33's pass intended for A12 is intercepted. During the interception return B55 targets and launches at A33, striking him in the side of the helmet. **RULING:** Foul by B55 for targeting and making forcible contact at the head of a defenseless player. For the purposes of Rule 2-27-14, A33 is a defenseless player since he played the down in the role of the quarterback. [Cited by 9-1-4]

V. End A81 is split far to the left of the formation, to the outside of defensive end B89. On a sweep play in his direction B89 moves to his left to focus on the ball carrier, losing sight of A81.

A81 then cuts to the inside, takes aim and launches at B89, forcibly contacting him with his forearm to B89's neck. **RULING:** Targeting foul under Rule 9-1-4, 15 yard penalty, A81 is disqualified. B89 is a defenseless player as he is subject to the blind-side block (Rule 2-27-14). [Cited by 9-1-4]

VI. Ball carrier A33 has gained several yards and is in the grasp of two defenders. His forward progress has been stopped but the ball has not been declared dead. Linebacker B55 crouches and thrusts himself forward, driving his forearm into the side of A33's helmet. **RULING:** Targeting foul by B55. 15 yard penalty, B55 is disqualified. A33 is a defenseless player since he is in the grasp of the opponents and his forward progress has been stopped (Rule 2-27-14). [Cited by 9-1-4]

VII. Pass receiver A88 has just caught the ball when defender B55 launches and drives his shoulder and forearm into his upper body. The back judge flags B55 for targeting to the head-neck area and he is disqualified. The referee makes his announcement of the targeting foul, and the play goes to review. **RULING:** After review, the video judge rules that there was not forcible contact to the head-neck area, overturning the disqualification of B55. The referee announces that B55 is not disqualified and that there will be no 15-yard penalty.

VIII. Punt receiver B44 is in position to catch a punt. A88 races down the field and launches at B44, driving the side of his helmet and shoulder into B44's upper body the instant before the ball arrives. The side judge and field judge throw their flags and report to the referee that A88 is charged with kick-catch interference with targeting to the head-neck area. The referee makes his announcement of kick-catch interference with targeting to the head-neck area. The play goes to review. **RULING:** After review, the video judge rules that A88 did not make forcible contact to the head-neck area, overturning his disqualification. The referee announces that A88 is not disqualified and that the 15-yard penalty for interference with the opportunity to catch a kick will be enforced.

IX. In a game without the video judge, the competition or teams have agreed to use the halftime review process for first-half targeting fouls. During the first quarter, pass receiver A88 has just caught the ball when defender B55 launches and drives his shoulder and forearm into his upper body. The back judge flags B55 for targeting to the head-neck area. The referee makes his announcement of the targeting foul and that B55 is disqualified. **RULING:** In the halftime review of the video, the referee and the crew determine that B55 did not make forcible contact to A88's head-neck area, overturning the disqualification. The referee informs both head coaches that B55 may return to the game in the second half. Before the kickoff for the second half, the referee announces to the spectators that after review, the disqualification of B55 is overturned and he may return to the game for the second half.

X. On a punt return, B44 launches at A66 from the blind side and drives his shoulder into him. The force of the contact is at A66's side below the shoulder. **RULING:** Foul for blind-side block. A66 is a defenseless player because B44 executes a blind-side block. However, this is not a targeting foul because the forcible contact is not to the head/neck area.

Clipping

ARTICLE 5. There shall be no clipping (Rule 2-5).

Exceptions:

1. Offensive players who are on the line of scrimmage at the snap within the free-blocking zone (Rule 2-3-6) legally may clip in the free-blocking zone, subject to the following restrictions:
   (a) A player in the free-blocking zone may not block an opponent with the force of the initial contact from behind and at or below the knee.
   (b) A player on the line of scrimmage within the free-blocking zone may not leave the zone and return and legally clip.
   (c) No player may violate Rule 9-1-6 (Blocking Below the Waist).
   NOTE: The free-blocking zone disintegrates when the ball leaves the zone (Rule 2-3-6).

2. When a player turns his back to a potential blocker who has committed himself in intent and direction of movement.
3. When a player attempts to reach a ball carrier or simulated ball carrier or attempts to legally recover or catch a fumble, a backward pass, a kick or a touched forward pass, he may push an opponent below the waist at or to the buttocks (Rule 9-3-6 Exception 3).
4. When an eligible player behind the neutral zone pushes an opponent below the waist at or to the buttocks to get to a forward pass (Rule 9-3-6 Exception 5).
5. Clipping is allowed against the ball carrier or simulated ball carrier.

Blocking Below the Waist

ARTICLE 6.

a. *Team A prior to a change of team possession:*
Linemen with initial position completely inside the tackle box may legally block below the waist inside the tackle box or the free-blocking zone until the ball leaves the tackle box. All other Team A players are allowed to block below the waist only if the force of the initial contact is directed from the front. "Directed from the front" is defined as within the clock face region between "10 o'clock and 2 o'clock" forward of the area of concentration of the player being blocked.

Exceptions:

1. Team A players may not block below the waist when the block occurs five yards or more beyond the neutral zone.
2. Players outside the tackle box at the snap or any time after the snap, or who are in motion at the snap may not block below the waist toward the original position of the ball at the snap.
3. Once the ball has left the tackle box, a player may not block below the waist toward his own end line.

b. *Team B prior to a change of team possession:*
1. Other than in paragraphs 2 and 3 (below), players of Team B may block below the waist only within the area defined by lines parallel to the goal line five yards beyond and behind the neutral zone extended to the sidelines. To be legal, this block must be directed from the front. Blocking below the waist by players of Team B outside this zone is illegal except against the ball carrier. (**A.R. 9-1-6:VI, IX**)
2. Players of Team B may not block below the waist against an opponent who is in position to receive a backward pass.
3. Players of Team B may not block below the waist against an eligible Team A pass receiver beyond the neutral zone unless attempting to get to the ball or ball carrier. This prohibition ends when a legal forward pass is no longer possible by rule.

c. *Kicks:*
During a down in which there is a free kick or scrimmage kick, blocking below the waist by any player is illegal except against a ball carrier.

d. *After change of team possession:*
After any change of team possession, blocking below the waist by any player is illegal except against a ball carrier.

e. *Clipping*. No player may violate Rule 9-1-5 (Clipping).

Approved Ruling 9-1-6

I. A1, an end, is positioned 11 yards to the left of the snapper at the snap. B2 is between the original position of A1 and the sideline. A1 blocks B2 away from the position of the ball at the snap. The block by A1 is below the waist and directly in front of B2 and less than five yards beyond the line of scrimmage. **RULING:** Legal block because it is directly at the opponent's front and less than five yards beyond the line of scrimmage.

II. Quarterback A1 is forced to run out of his protecting pocket, leave the tackle box, and scramble back and forth across the field. A2, a wide receiver, positioned 12 yards to the left of the snapper at the snap, moves downfield and then returns toward the neutral zone. A2 blocks B2 below the waist clearly from the side. **RULING:** Illegal block below the waist since it is not from the front. 15-yard penalty.

III. On a run or pass option play, wide receiver A2 at the snap is positioned 12 yards to the right of the snapper. He moves downfield and then returns toward the neutral zone. The ball has left the tackle box when A2 blocks B2 below the waist in the 10-to-2 region directly at B2's front and slightly toward Team A's end line. **RULING:** Illegal block below the waist. Even though A2 blocks below the waist directly at the front, the block is toward his own end line. 15-yard penalty.

IV. At the snap A82 is positioned on the line of scrimmage to the right side of the formation, 10 yards from the snapper. Back A31, a flanker positioned to the left side of the formation, runs a deep reverse to the right side after receiving the ball from a teammate. As the play develops, A82 blocks linebacker B62 toward the line through the original position of the ball. The block by A82 is below the waist and directly at the front, clearly inside the "10 o'clock to 2 o'clock" region. The block occurs (a) less than five yards downfield; or (b) more than five yards beyond the neutral zone. **RULING:** (a) Illegal crackback block. The block below the waist is directed toward the line through the original position of the ball. 15-yard penalty. (b) Illegal crackback block. 15-yard penalty.

V. Back A41 is stationary at the snap directly behind the right tackle in a balanced line formation. His left shoulder is inside the tackle box. The quarterback hands the ball to back A22 who runs straight ahead. A41 blocks B2 who moves into the offensive backfield to make a play on the ball carrier before A22 reaches the line of scrimmage. The block is below the waist and clearly at the side. **RULING:** Illegal block. A41 is partially inside the tackle box and behind the second lineman at the snap, but the block is not from the front.

VI. Defensive end B88 blocks below the waist against tackle A75 one yard beyond the line of scrimmage. The block is (a) directed from the front; (b) at the opponent's side. **RULING:** (a) Legal block because it is directed from the front and takes place within the 10-yard belt. (b) Foul for blocking below the waist because the block is not directed from the front. [Cited by 9-1-6-b-1]

VII. Back A22 is stationary inside the tackle box at the snap. After the snap he shoots between the tackle and the guard on his side, crosses into Team B's secondary and blocks low on linebacker B55 (a) less than five yards beyond the line of scrimmage; or (b) more than five yards beyond the line of scrimmage. The contact is at B55's thigh from the side and is directed straight ahead of A22. **RULING:** In both (a) and (b), illegal block below the waist. Since A22's initial position is not on the line in the tackle box, he is restricted from blocking other than with a "10-2" block. 15-yard penalty.

VIII. Third and seven at the A-30. The ball is at the left hash mark. Back A22 is split completely outside the frame of the tackle on the left side, and B40 moves out to cover him. The handoff goes to back A44 who sweeps around the right end. As the play develops B40 follows the play and A22 chases him. At the A-40 beyond the right hash mark, A22 overtakes B40 and blocks him below the waist clearly and directly at the front (10-to-2). The direction of this block is downfield and slightly toward the right sideline. A44 is tackled at the B-45. **RULING:** Illegal block below the waist. Even though the block is from the front, it is more than five yards beyond the neutral zone.

IX. First and 10 at the A-40. A12 takes the snap and starts on a sweep to his right. Guard A66 pulls and leads the play. As the play develops linebacker B55 blocks A66 (a) from the front at the thigh at the A-44; (b) from the side at the thigh at the A-44. A12 is driven out of bounds at the A-48. **RULING:** (a) No foul. B55's block below the waist is legal because it occurs fewer than 5 yards beyond the neutral zone and is directed from the front. (b) Foul for a block below the waist. [Cited by 9-1-6-b-1]

X. At the snap tight end A85 is aligned six yards from the snapper. Before the ball has left the tackle box, A85 blocks tackle B77 below the waist at the side. **RULING:** Illegal block below the waist. A85 is outside the tackle box at the snap, so he may block below the waist only within the 10-2 region. 15-yard penalty.

XI. First and 10 at the A-45. Guard A66 is next to the snapper. Immediately after the snap, A66 blocks (a) nose guard B55 at the A-46, or (b) linebacker B33 at the A-49. In either case the block is below the waist at the side of the opponent. **RULING:** (a) Legal block. A66 is still in the free-blocking zone. (b) Foul, illegal block below the waist. In this case A66 has left the tackle box and free-blocking zone and has gone to the second level to make this side block. To be legal this block must be directed from the front in the "10-2" region.

XII. First and 10 at the A-25. A75 is lead blocking for the ball carrier on a run play. Linebacker B55 blocks A75 from the front below the waist at (a) the A-32; (b) the A-28. **RULING:** (a) Illegal block below the waist. (b) Legal play.

XIII. First and 10 at the A-25. A87 is running a pass route while the quarterback holds the ball. Linebacker B55 blocks A87 from the front below the waist at (a) the A-32; (b) the A-28. **RULING:** Illegal block below the waist in both cases because A87 is an eligible receiver and a legal forward pass is still possible.

XIV. Third and 6 at the A-34. Team A is not in a scrimmage kick formation. Quarterback A6 takes the snap, drops back and punts the ball downfield. Linebacker B55 blocks A75 from the front below the waist at the line of scrimmage before the ball is kicked. **RULING:** No foul. It was not obvious to Team B that a kick was going to be made since it was made on third down and Team A was not in scrimmage kick formation.

Late Hit, Action Out of Bounds

ARTICLE 7. a. There shall be no piling on, falling on, or throwing the body on an opponent after the ball becomes dead. (**A.R. 9-1-7:I**)

b. No opponent shall tackle or block the ball carrier or simulated ball carrier when he is clearly out of bounds or throw him to the ground after the ball becomes dead.

c. It is illegal for any player to be clearly out of bounds when he initiates a block against an opponent who is out of bounds. The spot of the foul is the point on the sideline nearest to where the contact occurs.

Approved Ruling 9-1-7

I. After the ball is dead, a player throws himself onto an opponent lying on the ground. **RULING:** Personal foul. Penalty — 15 yards from the succeeding spot and first down if by a Team B player and not in conflict with other rules. "Piling on" applies to a ball carrier or to any other opponent who is prostrate when the ball becomes dead. [Cited by 9-1-7-a]

II. On a sweep play toward the sideline, linebacker B55 goes out of bounds to avoid a block. Guard A66 is leading the play, and just as he steps on the sideline with his front foot he drives his shoulder in the waist at the front of B55 who is still out of bounds. **RULING:** Legal block. A66 does not have both feet out of bounds.

Helmet and Face Mask Fouls

ARTICLE 8. a. No player shall continuously contact an opponent's face, helmet (including the face mask) or neck with hand(s) or arm(s) (***Exception:*** By or against the ball carrier or simulated ball carrier). [S26: PF-HTF]

b. No player shall grasp and then twist, turn or pull the face mask, chin strap or any helmet opening of an opponent. It is not a foul if the face mask, chin strap or helmet opening is not grasped and then twisted, turned or pulled. When in question, it is a foul.

Roughing the Passer

ARTICLE 9. a. No defensive player shall unnecessarily rough a forward passer when it is obvious the ball has been thrown. Illegal actions include but are not limited to:

1. Targeting fouls as noted in Rules 9-1-3 and 9-1-4.

2. Forcible contact to the head or neck area that does not meet the requirements of Rule 9-1-4 (also reference Rule 9-1-2).
3. Forcible contact that is avoidable after it is obvious the ball has left the forward passer's hand. (***Exception:*** A defensive player who is blocked by a Team A player(s) with a force so that he has no opportunity to avoid contact with the forward passer. However, this does not relieve the defensive player of responsibility for personal fouls as described elsewhere in this section.)
4. Forcibly driving the passer to the ground and landing on him with action that punishes the player.
5. Any action that is a personal foul as described elsewhere in this section.

b. When an offensive player is in a passing posture with one or both feet on the ground, no defensive player rushing unabated shall hit him forcibly at the knee area or below. The defensive player also may not initiate a roll or lunge and forcibly hit this opponent in the knee area or below.

Exceptions:

1. It is not a foul if the offensive player is a ball carrier or simulated ball carrier not in a passing posture, either inside or outside the tackle box.
2. It is not a foul if the defender grabs or wraps this opponent in an attempt to make a conventional tackle without making forcible contact with the head or shoulder.
3. It is not a foul if the defender is not rushing unabated or is blocked or fouled into this opponent.

PENALTY – The 15-yard penalty is added to the end of the last run when it ends beyond the neutral zone and there is no change of team possession during the down. (A.R. 9-1-9:II-III)

Approved Ruling 9-1-9

I. After forward passer A17 releases the ball, B68 takes two strides and charges into A17, showing no attempt to avoid contact. **RULING:** Roughing the passer. The forward passer is a defenseless player who is vulnerable to injury and must be fully protected. After taking two strides, B68 should be aware that A17 has released the ball and be able to avoid contacting him.

II. Quarterback A11 drops back in the pocket and sets up to pass. Just as he releases the ball he is hit by end B88 who drives his shoulder into A11's knee. The pass is (a) incomplete; (b) caught by A44 who is tackled after a 12-yard gain to the B-40. **RULING:** Foul by B88 for forcibly hitting the forward passer at the knee or below, in violation of Rule 9-1-9-b. Automatic first down and 15-yard penalty enforced at (a) the previous spot; (b) the B-40, the end of the run by A44. [Cited by 9-1-9 Penalty]

III. Quarterback A11 drops back in the pocket and sets up to pass. He then scrambles to his right, sets up again and is in the passing posture when he is hit by end B88 who drives his shoulder into A11's knee. A11 then pulls the ball in and goes to the ground because of being tackled by B88. **RULING:** Foul by B88, violation of Rule 9-1-9-b. While A11 is technically not a passer because he did not release the ball, the action by B88 is a foul under 9-1-9-b because of the vulnerability of A11 as a potential passer in a passing posture. [Cited by 9-1-9 Penalty]

Chop Blocking

ARTICLE 10. There shall be no chop blocking (Rule 2-3-3). (**A.R. 9-1-10:I-V**)

Approved Ruling 9-1-10

I. On a forward pass play, A75 is blocking B66 at the waist behind the neutral zone. While A75 maintains contact, A47 subsequently blocks B66 at his thigh. **RULING:** Chop block. 15 yards from the previous spot. [Cited by 2-3-3, 9-1-10]

II. As the flow of the play moves to the left, right tackle A77 is disengaging from his block above the thigh with B50 when A27 blocks B50 at his knee. **RULING:** Chop block, 15 yards. Previous-spot enforcement if the foul occurs behind the neutral zone. [Cited by 2-3-3, 9-1-10]

III. Immediately after the snap, left guard A65 and left tackle A79 simultaneously block B66, who is in the neutral zone. (a) Both blocks are at the thigh. (b) One contact is at the waist and the other at the knee. **RULING:** (a) Legal blocks for a low-low combination. (b) Foul, chop block. [Cited by 2-3-3, 9-1-10]

IV. Tight end A87 and wingback A43 are leading the play when both simultaneously block linebacker B17, who is three yards beyond the neutral zone. (a) Both blocks are above the waist. (b) One block is above the waist and the other at the knee. **RULING:** (a) Legal blocks. (b) Foul, chop block. [Cited by 2-3-3, 9-1-10]

V. After snapping the ball, snapper A54 brushes by nose guard B62 on his way to block a linebacker. A54 makes slight contact with B62, or B62 reaches out and uses his arm to initiate contact with A54. While B62 and A54 are in contact, right guard A68 blocks B62 at the knee from the front. **RULING:** Legal. A54 is not blocking B62. The incidental contact or B62's initiating contact does not constitute part of a combination block, and hence there is no chop block. [Cited by 2-3-3, 9-1-10]

Leverage and Leaping

ARTICLE 11. a. No defensive player, in an attempt to gain an advantage, may step, jump or stand on an opponent.

b. It is a foul if a defensive player moves forward and tries to block a kick or apparent kick on a field goal or try by leaving his feet and leaping into the plane directly above the frame of the body of an opponent. It is not a foul if the player was aligned in a stationary position within one yard of the line of scrimmage when the ball was snapped.

c. It is a foul if a defensive player who is inside the tackle box tries to block a punt by leaving his feet and leaping into the plane directly above the frame of the body of an opponent.

1. It is not a foul if the player tries to block the punt by jumping straight up without attempting to leap over the opponent.
2. It is not a foul if a player leaps through or over the gap between players.

d. No defensive player, in an attempt to block, bat or catch a kick, may:

1. Step, jump or stand on a teammate.
2. Place a hand(s) on a teammate to get leverage for additional height.
3. Be picked up by a teammate, or be elevated, propelled or pushed.

PENALTY – 15 yards, previous spot and automatic first down. [S38: PF-LEA]

e. No player may position himself with his feet on the back or shoulders of a teammate before the snap.

PENALTY – Dead-ball foul. 15 yards from the succeeding spot. Automatic first down for fouls by Team B if not in conflict with other rules [S27: UC-UNS].

Contact Against an Opponent Out of the Play

ARTICLE 12. a. No player shall tackle or run into a receiver when a forward pass to him obviously is not catchable. This is a personal foul and not pass interference.

b. No player shall run into or throw himself against an opponent obviously out of the play either before or after the ball is dead.

Hurdling

ARTICLE 13. There shall be no hurdling (***Exception:*** The ball carrier may hurdle an opponent).

Contact Against the Snapper

ARTICLE 14. When a team is in scrimmage kick formation, a defensive player may not initiate contact with the snapper until one second has elapsed after the snap. (**A.R. 9-1-14:I-III**)

Approved Ruling 9-1-14

I. A10 is in a shotgun-type formation 5½ yards behind the snapper, who has his head down and is looking backward through his legs. Immediately after the snap, nose guard B55 charges directly at the snapper and contacts him by pushing him backward. **RULING:** Legal. The snapper is not afforded any special protection because Team A is not in a scrimmage kick formation, since A10 is not at least 7 yards deep (Rule 2-16-10). The snapper does have the usual protection against any personal foul for unnecessary roughness. [Cited by 2-16-10-a, 9-1-14]

II. Team A is in a scrimmage kick formation with the punter 15 yards behind the line of scrimmage. Immediately after the snap, nose guard B55 charges directly at the snapper, contacts him, and drives him backward. The ball is snapped to an upback three yards behind the scrimmage line or to the potential kicker, who instead runs with or passes the ball. **RULING:** Foul. Penalty — 15 yards and automatic first down. The snapper may not be contacted until one second has elapsed after the snap when Team A is in a scrimmage kick formation. [Cited by 2-16-10-a, 9-1-14]

III. Immediately after the snap, with Team A in a scrimmage kick formation, noseguard B71 attempts to "shoot the gap" between the snapper and the adjacent lineman. B71's initial legal contact is with the lineman next to the snapper. **RULING:** Legal. Incidental contact with the snapper after this initial legal contact is not a foul (Rule 2-16-10). [Cited by 2-16-10-a, 9-1-14]

Horse Collar Tackle

ARTICLE 15. All players are prohibited from grabbing the inside back collar of the shoulder pads or jersey, the nameplate area of the jersey or above, or the inside collar of the side of the shoulder pads or jersey, and pulling the ball carrier or simulated ball carrier toward the ground. This does not apply to a ball carrier, including a potential forward passer, who is inside the tackle box (Rule 2-34). Note that the tackle box disintegrates when the ball leaves it.

NOTE: It is not necessary for a player to pull the opponent completely to the ground in order for the act to be illegal. If the opponent's knees are buckled by the action, it is a foul even if he is not pulled completely to the ground.

Approved Ruling 9-1-15

I. As ball carrier A20 races down the field near the sideline, defender B56 grabs him from behind by the back of the jersey at the collar or by the collar of his shoulder pad. B56 continues with this contact for several yards but A20 does not go to the ground until tackled by another defender. **RULING:** Legal play. B56 did not foul because it was not his action that pulled A20 to the ground.

Roughing or Running into Kicker or Holder

ARTICLE 16. a. When it is obvious that a scrimmage kick will be made, no opponent shall run into or rough the kicker or the holder of a place kick. (**A.R. 9-1-16:I, III and VI**)

1. Roughing is a live-ball personal foul that endangers the kicker or holder.

2. Running into the kicker or holder is a live-ball foul that occurs when the kicker or holder is displaced from his kicking or holding position but is not roughed. (**A.R. 9-1-16:II**)
3. Incidental contact with a kicker or holder is not a foul.
4. The kicker's protection under this rule ends:
   (a) When he has had a reasonable time to regain his balance (**A.R. 9-1-16:IV**); or
   (b) When he carries the ball outside the tackle box (Rule 2-34) before kicking.
5. When a defensive player's contact against the kicker or holder is caused by an opponent's block (legal or illegal), there is no foul for running into or roughing.
6. A player who makes contact with the kicker or holder after touching the kick is not charged with running into or roughing the kicker.
7. When a player other than one who blocks a scrimmage kick runs into or roughs the kicker or holder, it is a foul.
8. When in question whether the foul is *running into* or *roughing*, the foul is *roughing*.

PENALTY – Roughing or any other personal foul against the kicker who is in the act of or just after kicking the ball: 15 yards from the previous spot, plus automatic first down if not in conflict with other rules [S38 and S30: PF-RTK/PF-RTH]. Running into the kicker: five yards from the previous spot [S30: RNK/RNH].

b. A kicker or holder simulating being roughed or run into by a defensive player commits an unsportsmanlike act. (**A.R. 9-1-16:V**)

PENALTY – 15 yards from the previous spot [S27: UC-SBR].

c. The kicker of a free kick may not be blocked until he has advanced five yards beyond his restraining line, or until the ball has touched a player, an official or the ground.

PENALTY – 15 yards from the previous spot [S40: PF-RTK].

Approved Ruling 9-1-16

I. A1 catches a long snap and plans to punt from behind his line of scrimmage, but misses the ball, which falls to the ground. A1 is then contacted by B1. **RULING:** Team A fumble. No foul by B1. There is no kicker until the ball is kicked. [Cited by 9-1-16-a]

II. A1 kicks the ball, after which B1, unable to stop his attempt to block the kick, makes contact with the kicker or holder. **RULING:** This action could be either "Roughing" or "Running into" the kicker or holder. When in question, the ruling is to be "Roughing", which carries a penalty of 15 yards and an automatic first down. [Cited by 9-1-16-a-2]

III. A1, from a non-scrimmage kick formation, makes a quick, unexpected kick so suddenly that B1 cannot avoid contact. **RULING:** This is not roughing or running into the kicker, since the rule applies only when it is obvious that a kick will be made. [Cited by 9-1-16-a]

IV. B1 runs into player A1, who has kicked the ball and has had a reasonable time to regain his balance. **RULING:** Not a foul by B1 unless ruled as running into or throwing himself against an opponent obviously out of the play (Rule 9-1-12). [Cited by 9-1-16-a-4-a]

V. After B1 runs into the kicker, kicker A25 simulates being roughed. **RULING:** Offsetting fouls. [Cited by 9-1-16-b]

VI. Team A is in a scrimmage kick formation. Punter A1 moves laterally two or three steps to recover a faulty snap, or recovers a snap that went over his head, and then kicks the ball. B2 contacts A1 in an unsuccessful attempt to block the kick. **RULING:** A1 does not automatically lose his protection in either case unless he carries the ball outside the tackle box. While in the tackle box, A1 is entitled to protection as in any other kicking situation. When it becomes obvious that A1 intends to kick in a normal punting position, defensive players must avoid him after he kicks the ball. [Cited by 9-1-16-a]

VII. Punter A22 is 15 yards behind the neutral zone when he catches the long snap, sprints to his right at an angle toward the line of scrimmage, and runs outside the tackle box. He then stops and punts the ball, and (a) is immediately hit by a diving B89; or (b) is immediately hit by B89, and B89 is guilty of targeting. **RULING:** (a) Legal play, no foul by B89. A22

loses his roughing or running-into protection by carrying the ball outside the tackle box. (b) Even though the kicker is outside the tackle box, targeting is a personal foul and the penalty will be enforced at the previous spot.

Continued Participation Without Helmet

ARTICLE 17. A player whose helmet comes completely off during a down may not continue to participate beyond the immediate action in which he is engaged, whether or not he puts the helmet back on during the down. (**A.R. 9-1-17:I**)

Approved Ruling 9-1-17

I. During a down B55's helmet comes off without a helmet foul by Team A. B55 immediately picks up his helmet, puts it on and continues to chase the ball carrier. **RULING:** Personal foul by B55 for continuing to participate after losing his helmet. The clock stops at the end of the down and B55 must leave the game for the next down (Rule 3-3-9). [Cited by 9-1-17]

Blind-side block

ARTICLE 18. No player shall deliver a blind-side block by attacking an opponent with forcible contact. (***Exceptions:***

1. the ball carrier or simulated ball carrier;
2. a receiver in the act of attempting to make a catch.)

NOTE: In addition, if this action meets all the elements of targeting, it is a blind-side block with targeting (Rules 9-1-3 and 9-1-4).

Approved Ruling 9-1-18

I. B44 intercepts the pass of A12 at the B-20 and turns back up-field on the return. During the return, B21 approaches A88 at midfield from the blind side and blocks A88 (a) with extended hands; (b) with a screen type block; (c) by attacking with forcible contact with his shoulder into the chest of A88; (d) by attacking with forcible contact with the shoulder into the head of A88. B44 returns the pass to the A-20. **RULING:** (a) No foul. (b) No foul. (c) Personal Foul, blind-side block, 15-yard penalty from the spot of the foul. (d) Personal Foul, blind-side block with targeting, 15-yard penalty from the spot of the foul and B21 is disqualified.

SECTION 2. Unsportsmanlike Conduct Fouls

Unsportsmanlike Acts

ARTICLE 1. There shall be no unsportsmanlike conduct or any act that interferes with orderly game administration on the part of players, substitutes, coaches, authorised attendants or any other persons subject to the rules, before the game, during the game or between periods. Infractions for these acts by players are administered as either live-ball or dead-ball fouls depending on when they occur. (**A.R. 9-2-1:I-X**)

a. Specifically prohibited acts and conduct include:

1. No player, substitute, coach or other person subject to the rules shall use abusive, threatening or obscene language or gestures, or engage in such acts that provoke ill will or are demeaning to an opponent, to game officials or to the image of the game, including but not limited to:
   (a) Pointing the finger(s), hand(s), arm(s) or ball at an opponent, or imitating the slashing of the throat.
   (b) Taunting, baiting or ridiculing an opponent verbally.
   (c) Inciting an opponent or spectators in any other way, such as simulating the firing of a weapon or placing a hand by the ear to request recognition.
   (d) Any delayed, excessive, prolonged or choreographed act by which a player (or players) attempts to focus attention upon himself (or themselves).

(e) An unopposed ball carrier obviously altering stride as he approaches the opponent's goal line or diving into the end zone.

(f) A player removing his helmet after the ball is dead and before he is in the team area (***Exceptions:*** Team, media or injury timeouts; equipment adjustment; through play; between periods; and during a measurement for a first down).

(g) Punching one's own chest or crossing one's arms in front of the chest while standing over a prone player.

(h) Going into the stands to interact with spectators, or bowing at the waist after a good play.

(i) Intentionally removing the helmet while the ball is alive.

(j) Dead-ball contact fouls such as pushing, shoving, striking, etc. that occur clearly after the ball is dead and that are not part of the game action. (**A.R. 9-2-1:X**)

(k) After the ball is dead, using forcible contact to push or pull an opponent off the pile. (**A.R. 9-2-1:XI**)

PENALTY – Unsportsmanlike conduct. Live-ball fouls by players: 15 yards [S27: UC-*]. Live-ball fouls by non-players and all dead-ball fouls: 15 yards from the succeeding spot [S7 and S27: UC-*]. Automatic first down for live-ball and dead-ball fouls by Team B if not in conflict with other rules. Flagrant offenders shall be disqualified [S47: DSQ].

2. After a score or any other play, the player in possession immediately must return the ball to an official or leave it near the dead-ball spot. This prohibits:

(a) Kicking, throwing, spinning or carrying (including off the field) the ball any distance that requires an official to retrieve it.

(b) Spiking the ball to the ground (***Exception:*** A forward pass to conserve time (Rule 7-3-2-f)).

(c) Throwing the ball high into the air.

(d) Any other unsportsmanlike act or actions that delay the game.

PENALTY – Unsportsmanlike conduct. Dead-ball foul. 15 yards from the succeeding spot [S7 and S27: UC-*]. Automatic first down for fouls by Team B if not in conflict with other rules. Flagrant offenders shall be disqualified [S47: DSQ].

b. Other prohibited acts include:

1. During the game, coaches, squad members and authorised attendants in the team area shall not be on the field of play or outside the 25-yard lines to protest an officiating decision or to communicate with players or officials without permission from the referee. (***Exception:*** Rules 1-2-4-h, 3-3-4-d, 3-3-8-c and 3-5-1).

2. No disqualified person shall be in view of the field of play (Rule 9-2-6).

3. No person or mascot subject to the rules, except players, officials and eligible substitutes, shall be on the field of play or end zones during any period without permission from the referee. If a player is injured, attendants may come inbounds to attend him, but they must obtain recognition from an official.

4. No substitute(s) may enter the field of play or end zones for purposes other than replacing a player(s) or to fill a player vacancy(ies). This includes demonstrations after any play (**A.R. 9-2-1:I**).

5. Persons subject to the rules, including bands, shall not create any noise that prohibits a team from hearing its signals (Rule 1-1-6).

PENALTY – Unsportsmanlike conduct. Dead-ball foul. 15 yards from the succeeding spot [S7 and S27: UC-*]. Automatic first down for fouls by Team B if not in conflict with other rules. Flagrant offenders shall be disqualified [S47: DSQ].

Approved Ruling 9-2-1

I. Team B scores a touchdown on a kickoff return, and substitutes from the Team B area, with no intention of entering the game, run to the end zone to congratulate the ball carrier. **RULING:** Unsportsmanlike act. Penalty — 15 yards, enforced on the try or the succeeding kick off. Officials should note the numbers of the offending players, for possible disqualification later in the game upon committing a second unsportsmanlike conduct foul (9-2-1-a-Penalty). [Cited by 9-2-1, 9-2-1-b-4]

II. Third and 15 at the B-20. Eligible A88 catches a pass at the B-18 and heads for the goal line. At the B-10 he goes into a "goose step" and continues this action as he crosses the goal line. **RULING:** Live-ball foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. Fifteen-yard penalty enforced at the spot of the foul, which is the B-10, and repeat third down. Third and 20 at the B-25. [Cited by 9-2-1]

III. Second and five at the B-40. Back A22 takes a backward pass from the quarterback, circles right end, and heads for the goal line. Guard A66, who had pulled out to lead the play, legally blocks B90 to the ground and then stands over him at the B-30 taunting and screaming obscenities. This draws a flag from the head linesman, when A22 is at the B-10 before continuing into the end zone. **RULING:** Live-ball foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. Fifteen-yard penalty enforced at the spot of the foul, which is the B-30, and repeat second down. Second and 10 at the B-45. [Cited by 9-2-1]

IV. Third and 15 at the B-20. Eligible A88 catches a pass at the B-18 and heads for the goal line. Very close to the goal line he dives into the end zone, with no Team B player closer than about 10 yards. The field judge is uncertain of the exact spot where A88 started his diving action. **RULING:** Foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. Administer as a dead-ball foul. The touchdown counts and the penalty is enforced on the try or the succeeding kickoff. [Cited by 9-2-1]

V. Second and seven at the B-30. Nose guard B55 is lined up in the neutral zone at the snap. Back A22 takes the ball on a quick play up the middle, bursts into the open, and at the B-10 he turns around and prances backward into the end zone. The head linesman and the line judge both have flags for the offside foul, and the back judge drops his flag for the action by A22. **RULING:** Offsetting fouls, repeat the down. Second and seven at the B-30. [Cited by 9-2-1]

VI. First and 10 at the 50. The quarterback pitches out to running back A44 who circles right end and races toward the goal line. The line judge trailing the play flags linebacker B57 for screaming obscenities at him, complaining that he was held by the tight end. A44 scores a touchdown. **RULING:** Live-ball unsportsmanlike conduct against B57. The penalty carries over to either the try or the kickoff, at the option of Team A. [Cited by 9-2-1]

VII. Third and 15 at the A-45. A12 drops back to pass and is sacked by tackle B77 for a 10-yard loss. B77 leaps to his feet, beats his chest, stands over A12 and taunts him, and showboats to the crowd, drawing flags from the referee and the line judge. **RULING:** Dead-ball unsportsmanlike conduct by B77. Fifteen-yard penalty at the dead-ball spot plus automatic first down. First and 10 for Team A at the 50. [Cited by 9-2-1]

VIII. Safety B33 intercepts a pass at the B-10 and returns for a touchdown. As he is coming down the sideline covering the play the line judge drops his flag after he runs into the Team B head coach who is just on the field of play near the B-40. **RULING:** Although this is a foul that takes place while the ball is alive, it is treated as a dead-ball foul against the team because it is committed by a non-player. The touchdown counts and the 15-yard penalty is enforced on the try or the succeeding kickoff. [Cited by 9-2-1]

IX. Second and five at the A-45. Ball carrier A33 breaks out into the open and has a clear path to the goal line. At the B-2 he suddenly makes a sharp left turn and trots along the B-2 as the Team B players begin to catch up to him. He then carries the ball into the end zone. A33 next runs to the stands and begins to exchange "high-fives" with the fans. **RULING:** No score. A33 is charged with two fouls for unsportsmanlike conduct, one live-ball and the other dead-ball. Both 15-yard penalties are enforced and A33 is ejected from the game. First and 10 for Team A at the B-32 (Rule 9-2-6). [Cited by 9-2-1]

X. After the ball carrier is tackled, A55 and B73 engage in a scuffle such that officials have to separate them and throw flags. Both A55 and B73 are charged with dead-ball personal fouls. **RULING:** Offsetting dead-ball fouls. Each player is also charged with an unsportsmanlike conduct foul which counts toward the two such fouls leading to automatic

disqualification. The referee announces either the first or second unsportsmanlike conduct foul for A55 and B73. [Cited by 9-2-1, 9-2-1-a-1-j]

XI. During the play, the ball carrier fumbles and several players dive for the ball. B55 grabs A33 and slings him off the pile. **RULING:** B55 is charged with a foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. 15 yards and automatic first down. The referee announces that this is either the first or second unsportsmanlike conduct foul against B55. If it is the second, B55 is disqualified from the game. [Cited by 9-2-1-a-1-k]

XII. During a dead-ball time, a head coach or an assistant coach is flagged for coming out to the numbers and cursing the officials in a loud and abusive manner. **RULING:** The officials charge either the head coach or the assistant coach with a foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. The referee announces that this is either the first or second unsportsmanlike conduct foul against the coach in question. If it is the second, the coach in question is disqualified from the game.

Unfair Tactics

ARTICLE 2. a. No player shall conceal the ball in or beneath his clothing or equipment or substitute any other article for the ball.

b. No simulated replacements or substitutions may be used to confuse opponents. No tactic associated with substitutes or the substitution process may be used to confuse opponents (Rule 3-5-2-e). (**A.R. 9-2-2:I-V**)

c. No equipment may be used to confuse opponents (Rule 1-4-2-d).

d. No unusual action or verbiage may be used by Team A to confuse an opponent into believing the snap or free kick is not imminent.

e. No action that simulates an injury may be used to confuse opponents or officials.

PENALTY – [a-e] — Unsportsmanlike conduct. Live-ball foul. 15 yards from the previous spot [S27: UFT]. Automatic first down for fouls by Team B if not in conflict with other rules. Flagrant offenders shall be disqualified [S47: DSQ].

Approved Ruling 9-2-2

I. After the ball is ready for play, Team A goes into a formation with two players split wide on both sides of the snapper and two other Team A linemen adjacent to the snapper. No more than four players are legally in the backfield. Team A sends in two substitutes, who take positions on the line of scrimmage adjacent to the two split offensive linemen on the opposite side of the field of play from their team bench. This leaves Team A with nine players on the line of scrimmage and four backfield players all legally in position. Immediately and before the snap, two Team A linemen nearest their team's bench leave the field and are off at the snap. Seven players are on the line of scrimmage, five of whom are Team A linemen numbered 50 to 79. **RULING:** Penalty — 15 yards from the previous spot. This is a simulated replacement of a player to confuse the opponents. [Cited by 9-2-2-b]

II. On fourth down at Team B's 12-yard line, A1 enters the field with a kicking shoe while his 11 teammates are in the huddle. A1 kneels and measures the distance from the neutral zone to the kicking spot. While his teammates are leaving the huddle, A1 leaves the field with the shoe. Team A quickly runs a play from scrimmage. **RULING:** Team A foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. Penalty — 15 yards from the previous spot. There shall be no simulated replacement of a player to confuse the opponents, and a player who communicates must remain in the game for one down. [Cited by 9-2-2-b]

III. A1 leaves the field of play during a down. Team A huddles with 10 players. Substitute A12 enters and A2 simulates leaving the field, but sets near the sideline for a "hide-out" pass. **RULING:** Penalty — 15 yards from the previous spot. This is a simulated replacement of a player to confuse opponents. [Cited by 9-2-2-b]

IV. While a team is legally set to attempt a field goal, the potential holder for the kick goes toward his team area asking for a shoe. A shoe is thrown on the field and the player, in motion toward his team area, turns toward the goal line. The ball is snapped to the player in the kicking position, who throws a pass to the player who had turned upfield after asking for a shoe. **RULING:** Penalty — 15 yards from the previous spot. [Cited by 9-2-2-b]

V. Team A is lined up in scrimmage kick formation and has been set for one second. One of the offensive backs shouts to and motions to A40, the blocker on the right wing, to get off the field. At the snap, A40 is in legal motion toward his sideline. A40 turns downfield and becomes a pass receiver. **RULING:** Penalty — 15 yards from the previous spot. This is a tactic associated with the substitution process to deceive opponents. [Cited by 9-2-2-b]

VI. After the down is over, Team A sends in three substitutes, and three players begin to leave the field. A88, who participated in the previous play trails the three replaced players toward the Team A sideline. The three replaced players continue into the team area, but A88 stops and sets up on the line of scrimmage very close to the sideline. After the ball is snapped A88 runs down the sideline and catches a forward pass. **RULING:** Team A foul at the snap, unsportsmanlike conduct for unfair tactics: using the substitution process to deceive the opponents. Live-ball foul. Penalty — 15 yards at the previous spot.

Unfair Acts

ARTICLE 3. The following are unfair acts:

a. A team refuses to play within two minutes after ordered to do so by the referee.

b. A team repeatedly commits fouls for which penalties can be enforced only by halving the distance to its goal line.

c. An obviously unfair act not specifically covered by the rules occurs during the game. (**A.R. 4-2-1:II**) (**A.R. 9-2-3:I**)

PENALTY – Unsportsmanlike conduct. The referee may take any action he considers equitable, which includes directing that the down be repeated, assessing a 15-yard penalty, awarding a score, or suspending or forfeiting the game [S27: UFA].

Approved Ruling 9-2-3

I. After the ball is ready for play and the umpire (or centre judge) is in his regular position, Team A quickly replaces some players with substitutes, gets set for the required one second and snaps the ball. The umpire (or centre judge) is attempting to get to the ball to allow the defense to match up, but he is unable to prevent the snap. **RULING:** The play is shut down, the game clock is stopped and the defense is allowed to substitute in response to Team A's late substitutions. No foul. The play clock is set to 25 seconds and starts on the ready-for-play signal. The game clock starts on the ready-for-play signal or the snap, depending on its condition when play was stopped. The referee informs the Team A head coach that any subsequent such actions will result in a foul against the team for unsportsmanlike conduct (Rule 3-5-2). [Cited by 9-2-3-c]

II. Team A, trailing by nine points, has 1st-and-10 on the B-22 with 0:35 showing on the game clock. At the snap, B21, B40 and B44 blatantly hold, wrapping both arms around Team A's wideouts and take them to the ground. Quarterback A12 has no receiver in the route, scrambles and then legally throws the ball away. After the play, the game clock reads 0:26. The back judge, field judge and side judge have a flag down for Team B holding on each of their keys. **RULING:** This is a blatant and obvious unfair act designed to take time off the clock. The referee will convert the holding fouls to unsportsmanlike conduct fouls. Penalise half the distance to the goal. Team A will have 1st and 10 at the B-11. The game clock is reset to 0:35 and starts on the next snap. B21, B40 and B44 each have one unsportsmanlike foul counter.

III. Team A, ahead in the score by four points, has 4th-and-10 at the A-30 with 0:14 seconds remaining in the game. From a shotgun formation, A12 receives the snap, retreats back toward his own goal line, and moves out of the tackle box. At the snap, each Team A lineman blatantly holds the Team B player in front of them, preventing the defensive linemen from immediately rushing the passer. When rushers approach A12 he throws the ball high so that it lands beyond the line of scrimmage and out of bounds. When the pass hits the ground, the game clock reads 0:00. The umpire, centre judge (if applicable) and referee each have a flag on the ground for holding on Team A. **RULING:** This is a blatant and obvious unfair act designed to take time off the clock. The referee will convert the holding fouls to unsportsmanlike conduct fouls. Penalise Team A 15 yards from the previous spot. Team A will have 4th and 25 at the A-15. The game clock is reset to 0:14 and starts on the next snap. Each Team A lineman guilty of holding will have one unsportsmanlike foul counter.

Contacting an Official

ARTICLE 4. Persons subject to the rules (Rule 1-1-6) shall not intentionally contact a game official forcibly during the game.

PENALTY – Unsportsmanlike conduct. Administer as a dead-ball foul. 15 yards from the succeeding spot and automatic disqualification. Automatic first down for fouls by Team B if not in conflict with other rules [S7, S27 and S47: FCO/DSQ].

Game Administration and Sideline Interference

ARTICLE 5. While the ball is alive and during the continuing action after the ball has been declared dead:

a. Coaches, substitutes and authorised attendants in the team area must be behind the coaching line.

PENALTY – Administer as a dead-ball foul.

First infraction: Warning for sideline interference. No yardage penalty. [S15: SLW]

Second and third infractions: Delay of game for sideline interference, five yards from the succeeding spot. [S21 and S29: SLI]

Fourth and subsequent infractions: Team unsportsmanlike conduct for sideline interference, 15 yards from the succeeding spot. Automatic first down for fouls by Team B if not in conflict with other rules. [S27 and S29: SLM]

b. Physical interference with an official is a foul charged to the team for unsportsmanlike conduct. (**A.R. 9-2-5:I**)

PENALTY – Team unsportsmanlike conduct. Administer as a dead-ball foul. 15 yards from the succeeding spot. Automatic first down for fouls by Team B if not in conflict with other rules. [S27: UNS]

Approved Ruling 9-2-5

I. On the opening kickoff, B22 catches the kick at his goal line and returns the ball down the sideline on Team B's side of the field. As he moves down the sideline officiating the play, the side judge either runs into or must run around a Team B coach or squad member in the restricted area ("the white"). B22 is driven out of bounds at the A-20. **RULING:** Either situation is physical interference with an official during the play. No warning. Team B foul for unsportsmanlike conduct administered as a dead-ball foul. After the 15-yard penalty, Team B will have first and 10 at the A-35. [Cited by 9-2-5-b]

II. During a long kickoff return, the Side Judge has to stop and run around the head coach who is out of the coaching box in the restricted area or on the field of play near the sideline. **RULING:** Team foul for unsportsmanlike conduct. Administer as a dead-ball foul. Penalise 15 yards at the succeeding spot. This is a team foul, and is not charged as an unsportsmanlike conduct foul against the head coach.

III. During a long kickoff return, the head coach and/or other coaches are outside the coaching box and are in the restricted area or on the field of play near the sideline. No physical interference is made with an official during the play. **RULING:** Administer as a dead-ball foul.
First infraction: Warning for sideline interference. No yardage penalty.
Second and third infractions: Delay of game for sideline interference, five yards from the succeeding spot.
Fourth and subsequent infractions: Team unsportsmanlike conduct foul for sideline interference. Penalise 15 yards at the succeeding spot. This is a team foul, and is not charged as an unsportsmanlike conduct foul against any coach.

Disqualified players and coaches

ARTICLE 6. a. Any coach, player or identified squad member in uniform who commits two unsportsmanlike conduct fouls in the same game shall be disqualified.

b. A player disqualified from the game (Rule 2-27-12) must leave the playing enclosure (Rule 2-31-5) under team supervision within a reasonable amount of time after his disqualification. He must remain out of view of the field of play under team supervision for the remainder of the game.

c. A coach disqualified from the game must leave the playing enclosure within a reasonable amount of time after the disqualification and must remain out of view of the field of play for the remainder of the game.

d. A head coach disqualified from the game may designate a new head coach.

Approved Ruling 9-2-6

I. During a long kickoff return, the head coach of the kicking team comes onto the field of play, vigorously and angrily protesting that there should have been a flag for holding by the receiving team during the return. **RULING:** Unsportsmanlike conduct foul against the head coach. Administer as a dead-ball foul. Penalise 15 yards at the succeeding spot. This counts as one of the unsportsmanlike conduct fouls against the head coach. If this were his second foul for unsportsmanlike conduct, the head coach would be disqualified from the game. A head coach disqualified from the game may designate a new head coach.

Removing persons from the playing enclosure

ARTICLE 7. The referee may require game management to remove any person from the playing enclosure (Rule 2-31-5) who he believes poses a threat to the safety of persons subject to the rules or the officials, or whose behaviour is prejudicial to the orderly conduct of the game. The referee may suspend the game (Rule 3-3-3-a) while this takes place.

REPORT – Persons removed from the field.

SECTION 3. Blocking, Use of Hands or Arms

Who May Block

ARTICLE 1. Players of either team may block opponents, provided it is not pass interference, interference with the opportunity to catch a kick, or a personal foul (***Exception:*** Rules 6-1-12 and 6-5-4).

Interfering for or Helping the Ball Carrier or Passer

ARTICLE 2. a. The ball carrier or forward passer may use his hand or arm to ward off or push opponents.

b. The ball carrier shall not grasp a teammate; and no other player of his team shall grasp, pull, or lift him to assist him in forward progress. (**A.R. 9-3-2:I**)

c. Teammates of the ball carrier or forward passer may interfere for him by blocking but shall not use interlocked interference by grasping or encircling one another in any manner while contacting an opponent.

PENALTY – Five yards [S44: ATR].

Approved Ruling 9-3-2

I. In trying to gain yardage, ball carrier A44 is slowed by defensive players attempting to make the tackle. Back A22 (a) puts his hands on the buttocks of A44 and pushes him forward; (b) pushes the pile of teammates who begin to surround A44; (c) grabs the arm of A44 and tries to pull him forward for more yardage. **RULING:** (a) and (b) Legal. It is not a foul to push the ball carrier or the pile. (c) Foul for assisting the runner. Five-yard penalty with three-and-one enforcement (Rule 9-3-2-b). [Cited by 9-3-2-b]

Holding and Use of Hands or Arms: Offense

ARTICLE 3. a. *Use of hands*

A teammate of a ball carrier or a forward passer legally may block with his shoulders, his hands, the outer surface of his arms or any other part of his body under the following provisions.

1. The hand(s) shall be:
   (a) In advance of the elbow.
   (b) Inside the frame of the opponent's body (***Exception:*** When the opponent turns his back to the blocker). (**A.R. 9-3-3:VI and VII**)
   (c) At or below the shoulder(s) of the blocker and the opponent (***Exception:*** When the opponent squats, ducks or submarines).
   (d) Apart and never in a locked position.
2. The hand(s) shall be open with the palm(s) facing the frame of the opponent or closed or cupped with the palms not facing the opponent. (**A.R. 9-3-3:I-IV, VI-VIII**)

b. *Holding*

The hand(s) and arm(s) shall not be used to grasp, pull, hook, clamp or encircle in any way that illegally impedes or illegally obstructs an opponent.

PENALTY – 10 yards. Penalties for Team A fouls behind the neutral zone are enforced from the previous spot. Safety if the foul occurs behind Team A's goal line [S42: IUH/OFH].

c. *Kicking team*

A player on the kicking team may:

1. During a scrimmage kick play, use his hand(s) and/or arm(s) to ward off an opponent attempting to block him when he is beyond the neutral zone.
2. During a free kick play, use his hand(s) and/or arm(s) to ward off an opponent who is attempting to block him.
3. During a scrimmage kick play or a free kick play, when he is eligible to touch the ball, legally use his hand(s) and/or arm(s) to push an opponent in an attempt to reach a loose ball.

d. *Passing team*

An eligible player of the passing team legally may use his hand(s) and/or arm(s) to ward off or push an opponent in an attempt to reach a loose ball after a legal forward pass has been touched by any player or official (Rules 7-3-5, 7-3-8, 7-3-9 and 7-3-11).

Approved Ruling 9-3-3

I. A6 is advancing the ball. During the run, A12 vigorously blocks B2 with a rough push in the back above the waist. **RULING:** Illegal block in the back. Penalty — 10 yards. [Cited by 2-3-4-a, 9-3-3-a-2, 9-3-6]

II. A teammate of the forward passer or ball carrier, while charging across the neutral zone, contacts an opponent with his hands and arms not parallel to the ground or his hands cupped or closed but with the palms not facing the opponent. **RULING:** Legal use of hands. [Cited by 2-3-4-a, 9-3-3-a-2]

III. A teammate of the forward passer or ball carrier, behind the neutral zone, has his arms parallel to the ground and contacts an opponent above the shoulders. **RULING:** Illegal use of hands. Penalty — 10 yards or 15 yards for personal foul, previous-spot enforcement. Safety if the foul occurs behind Team A's goal line. [Cited by 2-3-4-a, 9-3-3-a-2]

IV. A teammate of the forward passer or ball carrier delivers a blow with the hand(s) closed to an opponent below the shoulders. **RULING:** Personal foul. Penalty — 15 yards. Enforce at the previous spot if foul occurs behind the neutral zone. Safety if foul occurs behind Team A's goal line. [Cited by 2-3-4-a, 9-3-3-a-2]

V. A2's hands contact defensive player B2 in a legal block. B2 spins to avoid blocker A2 whose hands then contact B2's back. **RULING:** Legal block. [Cited by 2-3-4-a]

VI. A2's hands contact defensive player B2's back when B2 spins to avoid A2. A2 keeps his hands on B2's back while B2 advances toward the forward passer. **RULING:** Legal block. [Cited by 2-3-4-a, 9-3-3-a-1-b, 9-3-3-a-2]

VII. A2's hands contact defensive player B2 when B2 spins to avoid blocker A2, whose hands then contact B2's back. After A2's hands lose contact with B2, A2 advances and pushes B2 in the back. **RULING:** Illegal block in the back. Penalty — 10 yards. Enforce at the previous spot if the foul occurs behind neutral zone (Rule 2-3-4). Safety if the foul occurs behind Team A's goal line. [Cited by 2-3-4-a, 9-3-3-a-1-b, 9-3-3-a-2, 9-3-6]

VIII. A1 in, beyond or behind the neutral zone contacts an opponent with an open hand or with hands closed or cupped and palms not facing the opponent. **RULING:** Legal block. [Cited by 9-3-3-a-2]

IX. A12 takes the snap and retreats to pass. Defensive end B95 gets past tackle A75 and is about to tackle A12, who is still inside the tackle box. A75 pushes B95 in the back at the numbers to prevent him from making the tackle. A12's pass is complete for a touchdown. **RULING:** Foul for an illegal block in the back. Penalty — 10 yards. [Cited by 9-3-6]

Holding and Use of Hands or Arms: Defense

ARTICLE 4. a. Defensive players may use hands and arms to push, pull, ward off or lift offensive players:

1. When attempting to reach the ball carrier or simulated ball carrier
2. Who are obviously attempting to block them.

b. A defensive player legally may use his hands or arms to ward off or block an opponent in an attempt to reach a loose ball (Rule 9-1-5 Exceptions 3 and 4 and Rule 9-3-6 Exceptions 3 and 5):

1. During a backward pass, fumble or kick that he is eligible to touch.
2. During any forward pass that crossed the neutral zone and has been touched by any player or official.

c. When making no attempt to get at the ball or the ball carrier or simulated ball carrier, defensive players must comply with Rules 9-3-3-a and 9-3-3-b above.

d. Defensive players may not use hands and arms to tackle, hold or otherwise illegally obstruct an opponent other than a ball carrier or simulated ball carrier.

e. Defensive players may ward off or legally block an eligible pass receiver until that player occupies the same yard line as the defender or until the opponent could not possibly block him. Continuous contact is illegal. (**A.R. 9-3-5:I**)

PENALTY – [c-e] 10 or 15 yards [S38, S42, S43 or S45: IUH/DEH/PF-*].

Use of Hands or Arms by Defense: Passing Downs

ARTICLE 5. During a legal forward pass play in which the pass crosses the neutral zone, if before the pass is touched there is a contact foul by Team B beyond the neutral zone against an eligible receiver (other than pass interference), the penalty includes an automatic first down.

PENALTY – 10 or 15 yards and automatic first down if the first down is not in conflict with other rules [S38, S42, S43 or S45: IUH/DEH/PF-*].

Approved Ruling 9-3-5

I. Before a legal forward pass that crosses the neutral zone is thrown, Team B holds eligible A1, who is beyond the neutral zone. **RULING:** Team B foul, holding. Penalty — 10 yards and first down, previous-spot enforcement. [Cited by 9-3-4-e]

Blocking in the Back

ARTICLE 6. A block in the back (other than against the ball carrier) is illegal. (**A.R. 9-3-3:I, VII and IX**) (**A.R. 10-2-2:XII**)

Exceptions:

1. Offensive players who are on the line of scrimmage at the snap within the free-blocking zone (Rule 2-3-6) may legally block in the back in the free-blocking zone, subject to the following restrictions:
   (a) A player on the line of scrimmage within this free-blocking zone may not leave the zone, return and block in the back.
   (b) The free-blocking zone disintegrates when the ball leaves the zone (Rule 2-3-6).
2. When a player turns his back to a potential blocker who has committed himself in intent and direction of movement.
3. When a player attempts to reach a ball carrier or simulated ball carrier or legally attempts to recover or catch a fumble, a backward pass, a kick or a touched forward pass, he may push an opponent in the back above the waist (Rule 9-1-5 Exception 3).
4. When the opponent turns his back to the blocker under Rule 9-3-3-a-1-b.
5. When an eligible player behind the neutral zone pushes an opponent in the back above the waist to get to a forward pass (Rule 9-1-5 Exception 4).

PENALTY – 10 yards. Penalties for Team A fouls behind the neutral zone are enforced from the previous spot. Safety if the foul occurs behind Team A's goal line [S43: IBB].

SECTION 4. Batting and Kicking

Batting a Loose Ball

ARTICLE 1. a. While a pass is in flight, only a player who is eligible to touch the ball may bat it in any direction (***Exception:*** Rule 9-4-2).

b. Any player may block a scrimmage kick in the field of play or the end zone.

c. No player shall bat other loose balls forward in the field of play or in any direction if the ball is in the end zone (Rule 2-2-3-a) (***Exception:*** Rule 6-3-11). (**A.R. 6-3-11:I**) (**A.R. 9-4-1:I-X**) (**A.R. 10-2-2:II**)

PENALTY – 10 yards and loss of down for fouls by Team A if the loss of down is not in conflict with other rules [S31 and S9: BAT]. [*Exception:* No loss of down if the foul occurs when a legal scrimmage kick is beyond the neutral zone].

Approved Ruling 9-4-1

I. Team A attempts a field goal from Team B's 30-yard line. A Team B player in the end zone leaps above the crossbar and bats the ball in flight. The ball goes into the end zone and is recovered by Team A. **RULING:** Foul for batting the ball in the end zone. The result of the play is a touchdown. [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

II. Team A attempts a field goal from Team B's 30-yard line. A Team B player in the end zone leaps above the crossbar and bats the ball in flight. The ball goes into the end zone and is recovered by Team B. **RULING:** Foul for batting the ball in the end zone. The result of the play is a touchback. Safety if penalty is accepted. [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

III. Team A attempts a field goal from Team B's 30-yard line. A Team B player in the end zone leaps above the crossbar and bats the ball in flight. The ball goes into the field of play. **RULING:** Foul for batting the ball in the end zone. During regulation play, postscrimmage kick enforcement gives a safety by penalty. The ball remains alive, and normal scrimmage kick rules apply. Team A may elect the result of the play. If Team A recovers, does not score and accepts the penalty, or if the play occurs in an extra period, enforcement is at the previous spot. [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

IV. Team A attempts a place kick on the try. A Team B player in the end zone leaps above the crossbar and bats the ball in flight. The ball goes out of bounds in the end zone. **RULING:** Foul for batting the ball in the end zone. Penalty — Half the distance from the previous spot. Postscrimmage kick rules do not apply on the try (Rule 10-2-3). [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

V. Team A attempts a place kick on the try. A Team B player in the end zone leaps above the crossbar and bats the ball in flight. The ball goes into the end zone and is recovered by Team A. **RULING:** Foul for batting the ball in the end zone. Team A may decline the penalty and scores two points. [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

VI. Team A attempts a field goal, and B23, in the end zone, goes above the crossbar and catches the ball. **RULING:** Legal play. [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

VII. Team A's fumble in flight is batted forward by B1, and the ball goes out of bounds behind Team A's goal line. **RULING:** Safety. Batting a fumble in flight does not add a new impetus (Rule 8-7-2-b). Team B foul. Penalty — 10 yards. [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

VIII. Team A's backward pass in flight is batted by B1, and the ball goes out of bounds behind Team A's goal line. **RULING:** Safety. A pass may be batted in any direction and the impetus is charged to Team A's pass (Rule 8-5-1-a). [Cited by 8-5-1-a, 9-4-1-c]

IX. A free kick is muffed in flight by a Team B player in his end zone. While the ball is loose in the end zone, a Team B player bats the ball out of the end zone. **RULING:** The result of the play is a touchback. Team B foul for illegally batting a ball in the end zone. Penalty — 10 yards from the previous spot. [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

X. After intercepting a legal forward pass at the B-20, B1 fumbles at the B-38. At the B-30, B2 illegally bats the loose ball, which goes forward and out of bounds. **RULING:** Team B foul. Penalty — 10-yards from the spot of the foul. Team B's ball, first and 10 at the 20-yard line. No loss of down is included in the penalty since Team B is awarded a new series after the penalty enforcement (Rule 5-1-1-e-1). [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

XI. Team A is prepared to kick off. The ball is on the tee and the referee has signaled it ready for play. As the kicker approaches the ball it begins to roll off the tee just as he starts his kicking motion. The kicker follows through and kicks the ball as it continues to roll off or near the tee. **RULING:** No foul. This is not a violation of either 9-4-4 or 9-2-1-a-2-a. The officials should stop play and have the teams line up for a new kickoff. If weather conditions dictate, Team A should have a player hold the ball on the tee. [Cited by 9-4-4]

Batting a Backward Pass in Flight

ARTICLE 2. A backward pass in flight shall not be batted forward by the passing team.
PENALTY – 10 yards [S31: BAT].

Batting Ball in Possession

ARTICLE 3. A ball in player possession may not be batted forward by a player of that team.
PENALTY – 10 yards [S31: BAT].

Illegally Kicking a Ball

ARTICLE 4. A player shall not kick a loose ball, a forward pass or a ball being held for a place kick by an opponent. These illegal acts do not change the status of the loose ball or forward pass; but if the player holding the ball for a place kick loses possession during a scrimmage down, it is a fumble and a loose ball; if during a free kick, the ball remains dead. (**A.R. 8-7-2:IV**) (**A.R. 9-4-1:XI**)

PENALTY – 10 yards, plus loss of down for fouls by Team A if the loss of down is not in conflict with other rules [S31 and S9: IKB] (*Exception:* No loss of down if the foul occurs when a legal scrimmage kick is beyond the neutral zone).

Approved Ruling 9-4-4

I. Fourth and eight at the A-48. From a scrimmage kick formation, A32 punts the ball to the B-7 where it hits B25 on the leg. As the ball rolls along the ground, B25 then kicks it at the B-4 to prevent Team A from recovering. The ball bounces into Team B's end zone and over the end line. **RULING:** The result of the play is a safety, as B25's kicking the ball provides new

impetus. Foul by B25 for illegally kicking the ball. Team A may decline the penalty and take the two points, or accept the penalty. The foul by B25 is governed by postscrimmage kick rules, so the accepted penalty would give Team B the ball at the B-2, first down and 10 (Rules 8-5-1-a and 8-7-2-b).

SECTION 5. Fighting

ARTICLE 1. a. Before, during and after the game, including the half-time intermission, squad members in uniform or coaches shall not participate in a fight (Rule 2-32-1).

PENALTY – 15 yards. For dead-ball fouls, 15 yards from the succeeding spot. Automatic first down for Team B fouls if not in conflict with other rules. Disqualification for the remainder of the game [S7, S27 or S38, and S47: FGT/DSQ].

b. During either half, coaches and substitutes shall not leave their team area to participate in a fight, nor shall they participate in a fight in their team area.

PENALTY – 15 yards from the succeeding spot. Automatic first down for Team B fouls if not in conflict with other rules. Disqualification for the remainder of the game and the next game [S7, S27 or S38, and S47: FGT/DSQ].

ARTICLE 2. The referee will notify (in writing) his assigning agency of all disqualifications for fighting. The assigning agency becomes responsible for implementation of the penalty.

SECTION 6. Flagrant Fouls

Player Ejection

ARTICLE 1. When a player is disqualified from the game due to a flagrant personal foul (Rule 2-10-3), or flagrant unsportsmanlike conduct, the disciplinary authority shall where possible initiate a video review for possible additional sanctions before the next scheduled game.

Foul Not Called

ARTICLE 2. If subsequent review of a game by the disciplinary authority reveals plays involving flagrant personal fouls or flagrant unsportsmanlike conduct that game officials did not call, the disciplinary authority may impose sanctions prior to the next scheduled game.

RULE 10

Penalty Enforcement

SECTION 1. Penalties Completed

How and When Completed

ARTICLE 1. a. A penalty is completed when it is accepted, declined, offset or cancelled according to rule, or when the choice is obvious to the referee.

b. Any penalty may be declined, but a disqualified player must leave the game whether the penalty is accepted or declined (Rule 2-27-12).

c. When a foul is committed, the penalty shall be completed before the ball is declared ready for play for any ensuing down.

d. Penalties as stated are not enforced if in conflict with other rules.

Simultaneous with Snap

ARTICLE 2. A foul that occurs simultaneously with a snap or free kick is considered as occurring during that down (***Exception:*** Rule 3-5-2-e).

Live-Ball Fouls by the Same Team

ARTICLE 3. When two or more live-ball fouls by the same team are reported to the referee, the offended team may elect only one of these penalties. Any player who commits a foul that mandates disqualification must leave the game.

Offsetting Fouls

ARTICLE 4. If live-ball fouls by both teams are reported to the referee, the fouls offset and the down is repeated. (**A.R. 10-1-4:I and VII**) Any player who commits a foul that mandates disqualification must leave the game.

Exceptions:

1. When there is a change of team possession during a down, and the team last gaining possession had not fouled before last gaining possession, it may refuse offsetting fouls and thereby retain possession after completion of the penalty for its foul. (**A.R. 10-1-4:II-VII**)
2. When all Team B fouls that occur before possession changes are governed by postscrimmage kick rules, Team B may refuse offsetting fouls and accept postscrimmage kick enforcement.
3. Rule 10-2-7-c (during a try or extra period after Team B possession).

Approved Ruling 10-1-4

I. On a Team A kickoff, Team B fouls before the untouched ball goes out of bounds between the goal lines. **RULING:** Offsetting fouls. Team A re-kicks at the previous spot. [Cited by 10-1-4]

II. On a Team A kickoff from its 35-yard line, Team B commits a personal foul after the untouched ball goes out of bounds between the goal lines. **RULING:** Team B may elect a repeat with Team A free-kicking at its 45-yard line. If Team B retains the ball, it will be at its 20-yard line, after the 15-yard penalty from its 35-yard line, or 15 yards behind the spot where the five-yard penalty against Team A left the ball (Rules 6-1-8 and 10-1-6). [Cited by 10-1-4 Exception 1]

III. Team A is in an illegal formation at the snap. A1's forward pass is intercepted by B1, who advances five yards and is tackled. Team B clips during B1's run. **RULING:** Team B has the option to accept offsetting fouls and repeat the down or to decline offsetting fouls and retain the ball after its penalty is completed. In the latter case Team A may accept or decline the penalty for Team B's clipping foul. [Cited by 10-1-4 Exception 1, 5-2-8]

IV. A1 throws an illegal forward pass and Team B is in the neutral zone at the snap. B23 intercepts the pass and B10 clips on the return. B23 is tackled in the field of play. **RULING:** No option. The fouls offset and the down is repeated. Team B may not decline offsetting fouls because it had fouled before getting possession of the ball. [Cited by 10-1-4 Exception 1, 5-2-8]

V. A1's forward pass is intercepted by B1, who advances and fumbles. B2 recovers and returns the ball five more yards. Team A fouls during or after the down, and Team B fouls during the fumble or during the return by B2. **RULING:** If Team A's foul was a live-ball foul, Team B may select offsetting fouls and repeat the down or select an option to retain the ball following the completion of the penalty for its foul. If Team A's foul was a dead-ball foul, Team B retains the ball after enforcement of both penalties. [Cited by 10-1-4 Exception 1, 5-2-8]

VI. Team A's legal forward pass is intercepted by B45, who advances several yards. On the return, B23 clips and A78 tackles B45 by pulling and twisting his face mask. **RULING:** Since Team B had not fouled before the change of possession, it may decline offsetting fouls and retain possession after completion of the clipping penalty. [Cited by 10-1-4 Exception 1, 5-2-8]

VII. A1 receives the snap while standing on his end line. Team B is offside at the snap. **RULING:** Team A's foul, out of bounds at the snap, offsets Team B's offside, and the down is repeated. [Note: If Team B had not been offside, Team B could accept the penalty for Team A's foul or a safety (Rule 8-5-1-a)]. [Cited by 10-1-4, 10-1-4 Exception 1, 5-2-8]

Dead-Ball Fouls

ARTICLE 5. Penalties for dead-ball fouls are administered separately and in order of occurrence (**A.R. 10-1-5:I-III**) [***Exception:*** When dead-ball unsportsmanlike or dead-ball personal fouls by both teams are reported to the referee and none of the penalties have been completed, the yardage penalties cancel and the number or type of down established before the fouls occurred is unaffected. Any disqualified player must leave the game (Rules 5-2-6 and 10-2-2-a)].

Approved Ruling 10-1-5

I. With fourth and eight, Team A gains four yards and the ball is declared dead, after which B1 is called for piling on. **RULING:** Team B personal foul. Penalty – 15 yards from the succeeding spot. First and 10 for Team B (Rule 5-1-1-c). The clock starts on the snap. [Cited by 10-1-5, 5-1-1-c, 5-2-6]

II. A personal foul occurs during action after a snap infraction that was made before the ball was ready for play. **RULING:** Every effort should be made to prevent any such premature snap and resulting action, but if such a foul does occur, it is between downs. Both penalties are enforced. If the personal foul is by Team B, there is likely a net of 10 yards for Team A. The penalty for Team B's foul carries an automatic first down. [Cited by 10-1-5, 5-2-6]

III. Second and goal at the three-yard line. Ball carrier A14 is downed at the one-yard line and then B67 piles on. A14 retaliates by slugging B67. **RULING:** The penalties cancel since neither has been completed. A14 is disqualified for fighting. Third and goal (Rule 10-1-1). [Cited by 10-1-5, 5-2-6]

Live-Ball – Dead-Ball Fouls

ARTICLE 6. a. Live-ball fouls do not offset dead-ball fouls.

b. When a live-ball foul by one team is followed by one or more dead-ball fouls (including live-ball fouls treated as dead-ball fouls) by an opponent or by the same team, the penalties are administered separately and in the order of occurrence. (**A.R. 10-1-6:I-VI**)

Approved Ruling 10-1-6

I. Team A punts and is illegally in motion at the snap. The untouched ball goes out of bounds between the goal lines, after which Team B commits a personal foul. **RULING:** Possible options: (1) If Team B elects to repeat the down, Team A will be penalised five yards at the previous spot followed by a 15-yard penalty against Team B, which includes an automatic first down. (2) Team B could decline the illegal-motion penalty and have the ball first and 10 after a 15-yard penalty from the out-of-bounds spot. (3) Team B could accept the five-yard penalty enforced at the out of bounds spot (Rule 6-3-13) followed by the 15-yard penalty against Team B. In all options, the clock starts on the snap (Rule 3-3-2-d-8). [Cited by 10-1-6-b]

II. Ball carrier B17 at Team A's 11-yard line taunts pursuing A55 before scoring a touchdown on an intercepted pass. After B17 crosses the goal line, he is tackled by A55 five yards into the end zone. **RULING:** Unsportsmanlike conduct by B17 and A55. Both penalties are enforced. The penalty for B17's live-ball foul is enforced at the A-11, and that for the dead-ball foul by A55 is enforced at the succeeding spot. First and 10 for Team B at the A-13. [Cited by 10-1-6-b]

III. B1 fouls during a down before B2 intercepts a legal forward pass. After the ball is declared dead, A1 piles on. **RULING:** Team A retains the ball after the penalty against Team B is enforced. Team A then will be penalised for the dead-ball foul (Rule 5-2-3). [Cited by 10-1-6-b]

IV. Team B is offside on the snap at its three-yard line (not a try) and Team A throws a legal forward pass into Team B's end zone. Team B intercepts and runs 101 yards to Team A's end zone, after which Team A clips. **RULING:** Repeat the down with Team A putting the ball in play at the Team B 16½-yard line. [Cited by 10-1-6-b]

V. No fouls have occurred when Team B intercepts Team A's legal forward pass. On the runback, a Team B player clips. When the ball becomes dead, a Team A player piles on. **RULING:** Team B retains possession. Penalise Team B for its clipping foul, followed by a penalty for Team A's dead-ball foul. The yardages will cancel unless one enforcement spot was inside the 30-yard line and enforcement was toward that goal. [Cited by 10-1-6-b]

VI. Team A punts and commits a touching violation. B1 clips during the runback of the punt, which is fumbled by B2. A1 recovers the fumble, and A2 fouls after the ball is dead. **RULING:** Team A has the first option because Team B fouled during the live ball. If Team A declines the penalty for Team B's foul, Team B will have the ball at the point of the violation, along with the option of accepting enforcement of the penalty for Team A's dead-ball foul. If Team A accepts the penalty for Team B's foul, the ball will belong to Team B after enforcement of the penalty for its live-ball foul followed by the penalty against Team A for the dead-ball foul. [Cited by 10-1-6-b]

Interval Fouls

ARTICLE 7. Penalties for fouls that occur between the end of the fourth period and the start of the extra period for overtime, between possession series during an extra period, and between extra periods are enforced from the 25-yard line, the spot of the next possession series (***Exception:*** Rule 10-2-5). (**A.R. 10-2-5:I-XII**)

SECTION 2. Enforcement Procedures

Enforcement Spots

ARTICLE 1. a. For many fouls, the enforcement spot is specified in the statement of the penalty. When the enforcement spot is not specified in the statement of the penalty, the enforcement spot is determined by the Three-and-One Principle (Rules 2-33 and 10-2-2-c).

b. Possible enforcement spots are: the previous spot, the spot of the foul, the succeeding spot, the spot where the run ends, and — for scrimmage kicks only — the postscrimmage kick spot.

Determining the Enforcement Spot and the Basic Spot

ARTICLE 2. a. Dead-ball fouls. The enforcement spot for a foul committed when the ball is dead is the succeeding spot.

b. Fouls by Team A behind the neutral zone. For the following fouls committed by Team A behind the neutral zone, the penalty is enforced at the previous spot: illegal use of hands, holding, illegal block and personal foul (***Exception:*** If the foul occurs in Team A's end zone the penalty is a safety). However, see Rule 6-3-13 for kicking team fouls during scrimmage kick plays.

c. The Three-and-One Principle (Rule 2-33) is as follows:
   1. When the team in possession commits a foul *behind* the basic spot, the penalty is enforced at the spot of the foul.
   2. When the team in possession commits a foul *beyond* the basic spot, the penalty is enforced at the basic spot.
   3. When the team not in possession commits a foul *either behind or beyond* the basic spot, the penalty is enforced at the basic spot.

d. The following are basic spots for the various categories of plays:
   1. *Running plays.*
      (a) *Previous spot*, when the related run ends behind the neutral zone.
      (b) *End of the related run*, when the related run ends beyond the neutral zone.
      (c) *End of the related run*, on running plays that have no neutral zone.
   2. *Running plays when the run ends in the end zone after change of team possession (not on a try).*
      (a) *Succeeding spot*, when a foul occurs after a change of team possession in the end zone and the result of the play is a touchback.
      (b) *Goal line*, when a foul occurs after a change of team possession in the field of play and the related run ends in the end zone (***Exception:*** Rule 8-5-1-Exceptions).
      (c) *Goal line*, when a foul occurs after a change of team possession in the end zone, the related run ends in the end zone, and the result of the play is not a touchback.
   3. *Pass plays*.
      Previous spot, on legal forward pass plays.
   4. *Kick plays*.
      (a) *Previous spot*, on legal kick plays unless the foul is governed by postscrimmage kick rules.
      (b) *Postscrimmage kick spot*, if the foul is governed by postscrimmage kick rules.

e. For Team B fouls during a legal forward pass play:
   1. Penalty enforcement for Team B for personal fouls is at the end of the last run when it ends beyond the neutral zone and there is no change of team possession during the down (Rule 7-3-12). (**A.R. 7-3-12:I**) (**A.R. 9-1-2:III**)
   2. If the pass crosses the neutral zone and Team B commits a contact foul against an eligible receiver beyond the neutral zone before the ball is touched, the penalty includes an automatic first down (Rule 9-3-5).

Approved Ruling 10-2-2

I. A kickoff untouched by Team B goes out of bounds after illegal touching by Team A. Team A is flagged for holding or a personal foul during the kick. **RULING:** Team B has these options: It may snap the ball at the spot of the illegal touching; accept a five-, 10- or 15-yard penalty from the previous spot with Team A re-kicking; snap the ball five, 10 or 15 yards beyond the spot where the ball went out of bounds; or snap the ball 30 yards beyond Team A's restraining line.

II. A Team A fumble or backward pass is loose in Team A's end zone, where A33 kicks or bats the ball. **RULING:** Penalty – Safety (Rule 8-5-1-b). [Cited by 9-4-1-c]

III. A55 clips in Team B's end zone during a scrimmage kick that touches B44 in the field of play. **RULING:** Penalty – 15 yards. Enforcement is either at the previous spot (Team A retaining possession) or at the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B.

IV. Team A punts from its end zone and the ball is returned to the A-30. A23 clips B35 in Team A's end zone during the return. **RULING:** Penalty – 15 yards from the basic spot, which is the end of the run (the A-30). Team B's ball, first and 10.

V. Team A punts from its end zone and the ball is returned to the A-30, where it is fumbled. A23 clips B35 in Team A's end zone during the fumble. The ball is recovered in the field of play. **RULING:** Penalty – 15 yards from the basic spot, which is the spot of the fumble, the A-30. Team B's ball, first and 10.

VI. Team A's untouched punt from its end zone goes out of bounds at Team A's 40-yard line. A2, in his end zone, clips Team B before the ball is kicked. **RULING:** Penalty – Safety (Rule 9-1 penalty) or Team B may snap the ball at the Team A 25-yard line after enforcement of the penalty from where the ball went out of bounds. [Cited by 8-5-1-b]

VII. Team A snaps at its one-yard line, and ball carrier A1 is downed on his five-yard line. Team B commits a personal foul in the end zone while the ball is in play. **RULING:** Penalty – 15 yards from the basic spot (five-yard line).

VIII. During a punt, B1 holds A2 behind or beyond the neutral zone after the kick crosses the neutral zone and before it has touched Team B. **RULING:** Penalty – 10 yards. Subject to postscrimmage kick enforcement if Team B is next to snap the ball.

IX. During A1's run, B25 fouls 10 yards beyond the neutral zone. After advancing 30 yards, A1 fumbles. B48 recovers and carries the ball across Team A's goal line. **RULING:** Penalise Team B from the basic spot, which is the spot of the fumble. Team A retains possession of the ball (Rule 5-2-3).

X. First and 10 at the A-30. A1 advances the ball to the B-40, where he is downed. During the run, B1 clips on Team A's 45-yard line. **RULING:** Penalty – 15 yards at the B-40, which is the basic spot. First and 10 at the B-25.

XI. First and 10 at the A-40. A1 advances to the B-40, where he fumbles. During A1's run or during the fumble, B2 commits a personal foul at the 50-yard line. B1 recovers the fumble and returns the ball across Team A's goal line. **RULING:** Penalty – 15 yards from the basic spot, which is the end of the related run (Team B's 40-yard line) and first down for Team A.

XII. During the return of a scrimmage kick, B40 blocks A80 in the back above the waist at the B-25. Team B's ball carrier is downed with the ball in his possession at Team B's 40-yard line. **RULING:** Team B foul, illegal block in the back. Penalty – 10 yards from the spot of the foul. Team B's ball, first and 10, from its 15-yard line. [Cited by 2-3-4-a, 9-3-6]

XIII. Team B intercepts a legal forward pass, and the player who threw the pass is fouled during the return. **RULING:** Team B's ball, first down and 10, after enforcement of the penalty (Rules 2-27-5, 5-2-4 and 9-1).

XIV. B1 intercepts a legal forward pass (not a try) deep in his end zone and is unable to get out of the end zone, where he is downed. During the run, B2 clips A1 (a) at the B-25; (b) at the B-14; (c) in the end zone. **RULING:** The basic spot is the B-20. (a) First and 10 at the B-10. (b) First and 10 at the B-7. (c) Safety. (Rules 8-5-1-b, 8-6-1 and 10-2-2-d-2-a).

XV. B17 intercepts a legal forward pass (not a try) deep in his end zone and, as he attempts to run the ball out, A19 clips in the end zone. After the foul and before B17 leaves the end zone, B17 fumbles with A26 recovering on the two-yard line. **RULING:** Penalty – 15 yards from the goal line. Team B's ball, first and 10 at its 15-yard line (Rule 10-2-2-d-2-c).

XVI. After a safety, Team A punts the ball at Team A's 20-yard line. The ball goes out of bounds untouched by Team B. **RULING:** Team B has the choice of the down being repeated at the A-15, or of putting the ball in play at the 50-yard line, or five yards beyond the inbounds spot.

XVII. Second and 10 at the B-40. A4 takes the snap and scrambles to the right side of the field, going out of bound at the B-12. During the play, A73 blocks B95 in the back at the B-24 to prevent him from making the tackle. **RULING:** Penalty – 10 yards enforced from the spot of the foul. Second and 4 on the B-34.

Postscrimmage Kick Enforcement

ARTICLE 3. a. Under postscrimmage kick enforcement rules, fouls by Team B that satisfy the conditions in paragraph b (below) are treated as if Team B had been in possession at the time the foul was committed, even though by Rule 2-4-1-b-3 team possession had not changed.

b. Postscrimmage kick enforcement applies *only* to fouls by Team B during a scrimmage kick and *only* under the following conditions:

1. The kick is not during a try, a successful field goal, or in an extra period. (**A.R. 10-2-3:IV**)
2. The ball crosses the neutral zone.
3. The foul occurs before the end of the kick. (**A.R. 10-2-3:I, II and V**)
4. Team B will next put the ball in play.

If these conditions are all met, the penalty is enforced according to the Three-and-One Principle. Team B is taken as the team in possession with the postscrimmage kick spot as the basic spot (Rule 10-2-2-c). See Rule 2-25-11 for the postscrimmage kick spot. (**A.R. 10-2-3:I-VII**)

Approved Ruling 10-2-3

I. Either team fouls during a scrimmage kick after the ball has been touched beyond the neutral zone. The foul is beyond the neutral zone, and Team B will next put the ball in play. **RULING:** For fouls by Team B, penalty enforcement will be by the Three-and-One Principle with the postscrimmage kick spot as the basic spot (Rule 2-25-11). Team B's ball first and 10. For fouls by Team A, penalty enforcement is either from the previous spot or from the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B (Rule 6-3-13). [Cited by 10-2-3-b-3, 10-2-3-b-4, 5-2-3-a]

II. Team A's punt is blocked, crosses the neutral zone and is untouched by Team B beyond the neutral zone. It rebounds behind the neutral zone before Team B clips or holds. The ball is loose at the time of the foul. **RULING:** The foul is during the kick. If Team B is next to snap the ball, enforcement is according to postscrimmage kick rules. [Cited by 10-2-3-b-3, 10-2-3-b-4]

III. Team A's punt is blocked behind the neutral zone before Team B clips or holds beyond the neutral zone. The ball never crosses the neutral zone during the play. **RULING:** Rule 10-2-3 applies only when a scrimmage kick crosses the neutral zone. Team A retains possession after the penalty is enforced at the previous spot. [Cited by 10-2-3-b-4]

IV. Team A's successful field goal attempt is snapped from Team B's 30-yard line, and a Team B player commits a personal foul at the 20-yard line during the kick. **RULING:** Team A may void the score and have Team B penalised at the previous spot or accept the score and have Team B penalised on the ensuring kickoff (Rule 10-2-5-d). [Cited by 10-2-3-b-1, 10-2-3-b-4]

V. Team A's untouched, unsuccessful field goal attempt is snapped from Team B's 30-yard line. Team B fouls at the 15-yard line during the kick. **RULING:** Team B's ball. The postscrimmage kick spot is at the 30-yard line and the enforcement is from the 15-yard line, the spot of the foul, with no possible repeat (Rules 2-25-11 and 8-4-2-b). [Cited by 10-2-3-b-3, 10-2-3-b-4, 2-25-11-b-1-a, 8-4-2-b-2]

VI. Team A's punt crosses the neutral zone. During the kick, B79 holds A55 one yard beyond the neutral zone. B44 catches the kick at the B-25 and returns to the B-40 where he is tackled. **RULING:** B79's foul is covered by postscrimmage kick enforcement. The 10-yard penalty is enforced at the end of the kick, which is the B-25. First and 10 for Team B at the B-15. [Cited by 10-2-3-b-4]

VII. Team A snaps the ball at the A-35 on fourth and seven. Just after the snap lineman B77 grabs guard A66 and pulls him to one side, allowing linebacker B43 to shoot the gap to try to block the kick. B44 catches the kick at the B-25 and returns to the B-40 where he is tackled. **RULING:** B77's holding foul is not covered by postscrimmage kick enforcement since it is before the kick. The 10-yard penalty is enforced at the previous spot. The penalty yardage gives Team A first down at the A-45. [Cited by 10-2-3-b-4]

Fouls by Team A During Kicks

ARTICLE 4. Penalties for all fouls by the kicking team other than kick-catch interference (Rule 6-4) during a free kick play or a scrimmage kick play in which the ball crosses the neutral zone (except field goal attempts) are enforced either at the previous spot (***Exception:*** Penalty option is a safety for fouls in Team A's end zone) or at the spot where the subsequent dead ball belongs to Team B, at the option of Team B. (Rules 6-1-8 and 6-3-13)

Fouls During or After a Touchdown, Field Goal or Try

ARTICLE 5. a. Fouls by the nonscoring team during a down that ends in a touchdown (not on the try).

1. Fifteen-yard penalties for personal fouls and for unsportsmanlike conduct fouls are enforced on the try or the succeeding kickoff, at the option of the scoring team. If there is no kickoff, the accepted penalty is enforced on the try.
2. Five- and 10-yard penalties are not enforced on the try or the succeeding kickoff. Such penalties are declined by rule unless enforcement is made possible by illegal touching of a kick during the down. (**A.R. 6-3-2:III-IV**)

b. Penalties for defensive pass interference fouls on a try from the three-yard line are enforced one-half the distance to the goal line. If the try is successful, the penalty is declined by rule.

c. When a foul(s) occurs after a touchdown and before the ball is ready for play on the try or there was a live-ball foul treated as a dead-ball foul on the touchdown play, enforcement is on the try or the succeeding kickoff, at the option of the offended team. If there is no kickoff, the accepted penalty is enforced on the try. (**A.R. 3-2-3:V**)

d. Penalties for live-ball fouls during field goal plays are administered by rule. When the field goal is successful, Team A shall have the option of cancelling the score and have the penalty enforced from the previous spot or declining the penalty(ies) and accepting the score. Team A may accept the score with penalties for personal fouls and unsportsmanlike conduct fouls enforced on the succeeding kickoff or from the succeeding spot in extra periods.

e. Penalties for fouls during and after a try down are administered under Rules 8-3-3, 8-3-4, 8-3-5 and 10-2-5-b. (**A.R. 3-2-3:VI-VII**)

f. Distance penalties for fouls by either team may not extend a team's free kick restraining line behind its five-yard line. Penalties that would otherwise place the free kick restraining line behind a team's five-yard line are enforced from the next succeeding spot.

Approved Ruling 10-2-5

Fouls during a touchdown or field goal by Team A:

I. During a touchdown run Team B clips in the field of play or the end zone. **RULING:** Team A has the option of the penalty being enforced on the try or the succeeding kickoff (Rule 10-2-5-a-1). [Cited by 10-1-7]

II. Team B commits a personal foul during a down when Team A scores a touchdown, and then Team A fouls after the score and before the ready-for-play signal on the try. **RULING:** Allow the score. Team A has the option of enforcement on the try or the succeeding kickoff. Team B then also has the option of Team A being penalised on the try or the succeeding kickoff. The yardage assessed on the live-ball/dead-ball penalties may cancel (Rule 10-2-5). [Cited by 10-1-7]

III. Team B holds during Team A's touchdown run. Team A fouls after the score. **RULING:** Allow the score. The penalty for Team B's holding foul is declined by rule. Team B has the option of Team A being penalised on the try or the succeeding kickoff (Rule 10-2-5-a-2 and 10-2-5-c). [Cited by 10-1-7]

IV. A Team B player slugs an opponent during or after Team A's touchdown run. Team B is offside on the successful try. **RULING:** Allow the touchdown. Disqualify the Team B player for fighting. Team A has the option of a penalty against Team B on the try or the succeeding kickoff. After the successful try, Team A has the option of repeating the try with the offside penalty enforced on the try (Rules 10-2-5 and 8-3-3-b). [Cited by 10-1-7]

V. Team B roughs the forward passer during a touchdown pass play. **RULING:** Allow the touchdown. Team A has the option of enforcement on the try or the succeeding kickoff. [Cited by 10-1-7]

VI. Team B is offside during a successful field goal down. **RULING:** Team A has the option to accept the penalty at the previous spot and repeat the down or to keep the points by declining the penalty. [Cited by 10-1-7]

VII. Team B fouls on a successful field goal. **RULING:** Team A shall have the option of cancelling the score and have the penalty enforced from the previous spot or they may decline the penalty and accept the score. Team A may accept the score and have penalties for personal fouls and unsportsmanlike conduct enforced on the succeeding kickoff or from the succeeding spot in extra periods. [Cited by 10-1-7]

Fouls after a touchdown by Team A:

VIII. Team A fouls after it scores a touchdown, and Team B fouls on the successful try. **RULING:** Allow the touchdown. Team B has the option of Team A being penalised on the try or the succeeding kickoff. Team A then has the option of Team B being penalised on a repeat of the try. Team B personal-foul penalties may be enforced on the subsequent kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods. Yardages assessed on the succeeding kickoff may cancel. [Cited by 10-1-7]

IX. Team A fouls after it scores a touchdown, and Team B fouls after a successful try. **RULING:** Allow the score. Team B has the option of Team A being penalised on the try or the succeeding kickoff. For the foul after the try, Team B is penalised on the kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods. [Cited by 10-1-7, 8-3-3-b-1]

Fouls during a try with no change of team possession (this does not include live-ball fouls treated as dead-ball fouls or loss-of-down fouls):

X. Team B fouls during a successful try. **RULING:** Repeat the down after enforcement, or the penalty is declined by rule. Penalties for personal fouls and unsportsmanlike conduct fouls may be enforced on the succeeding kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods (Rule 8-3-3-b-1). [Cited by 10-1-7, 8-3-1, 8-3-3-b-1]

XI. Team B fouls during a successful try. **RULING:** Repeat the down after enforcement or the penalty is declined by rule. Penalties for personal fouls may be enforced on the succeeding kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods (Rule 8-3-3-b-1). [Cited by 10-1-7, 8-3-1, 8-3-3-b-1]

XII. During a successful kick try from the three-yard line, Team B is offside. After the ball is dead, Team B commits a personal foul. **RULING:** If Team A elects to repeat the try, both penalties against Team B are enforced before the snap (Rule 10-1-6). If Team A declines the offside penalty and accepts the point, the penalty for Team B's dead-ball foul is then enforced on the kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods (Rule 8-3-5). [Cited by 10-1-7, 8-3-1]

XIII. During an unsuccessful kick try from the three-yard line, Team A commits an illegal motion foul. After the ball becomes dead, Team B fouls. **RULING:** Team B obviously will refuse the penalty for the Team A foul. Team B is penalised on the kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods. [Cited by 8-3-1, 8-3-5]

Fouls after a try and before the succeeding kickoff:

XIV. Either team fouls. **RULING:** Enforce the penalty on the kickoff unless the try is the last down of the game. [Cited by 8-3-1, 8-3-5]

XV. Both teams foul before either penalty is completed. **RULING:** The fouls cancel. [Cited by 8-3-1, 8-3-5]

XVI. The penalty for Team B's foul after a successful try is accepted and will be enforced on the free kick; then:

1. Team A fouls after the try. **RULING:** Enforce the penalties in occurrence order on the kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods.

2. Team B fouls after the try. **RULING:** Enforce both Team B penalties in occurrence order on the kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods.
3. Both teams foul before either penalty is completed. **RULING:** These fouls cancel. The penalty for Team B's original foul is enforced on the kickoff or at the succeeding spot in extra periods.

Half-Distance Enforcement Procedures

ARTICLE 6. No distance penalty, including tries from on or inside the three-yard line, shall exceed half the distance from the enforcement spot to the offending team's goal line [***Exceptions:*** (1) Defensive pass interference on scrimmage downs, other than the try (Rules 7-3-8 and 10-2-5-b); and (2) On the try, defensive pass interference when the ball is snapped from outside the three-yard line].

Special Enforcement of Post-Possession Fouls

ARTICLE 7. In extra periods or during a try, fouls after a change of team possession have special enforcement.

a. Penalties against either team are declined by rule. (***Exception:*** Penalties for flagrant personal fouls, unsportsmanlike conduct fouls, dead-ball personal fouls and live-ball fouls treated as dead-ball fouls are enforced on the succeeding play.)
b. A score by a team committing a foul during the down is cancelled. (***Exception:*** Live-ball foul treated as a dead-ball foul.) (**A.R. 8-3-2:VII**)
c. If both teams foul during the down and Team B had not fouled before the change of possession, the fouls cancel and the down is not repeated. On a try, the try is over.

RULE 11

The Officials: Jurisdiction and Duties

SECTION 1. Jurisdiction

ARTICLE 1. # The officials' jurisdiction begins 60 minutes before the scheduled kickoff and ends when the referee declares the score final [S14].

SECTION 2. Responsibilities

ARTICLE 1. # The game shall be played under the supervision of four, five, six, seven or eight officials. The game may be played under the supervision of three officials under exceptional circumstances such as injury or delay in travel.

ARTICLE 2. Officiating responsibilities and mechanics are specified in the current edition of the *Manual of Football Officiating*, published by IAFOA. Officials are responsible for knowing and applying the material in the Manual.

NOTE: The use of mechanics systems that span 3-man to 8-man crews is essential. The use of manuals that only specify a subset of the mechanics is prohibited in international competition. National federations and officiating bodies are encouraged to use standard mechanics in games played under their jurisdiction to facilitate their officials moving between domestic and international games (***Exceptions:*** USA, Canada and Japan).

RULE 12

Video judge

SECTION 1. Philosophy and rationale

Philosophy

ARTICLE 1. NCAA Instant Replay permits a replay official to review a specified range of situations that may occur in a game and rule on their correct outcome. We believe that now is the time to give the off-field official a new role in advising the on-field officials of evidence that is available from video.

Rationale

ARTICLE 2. The rationale for this includes:

a. NCAA replay was designed at a time when communication between the on-field officials and replay official was limited. Modern radio technology makes two-way communication much easier. We wish to take advantage of that.

b. Modern technology makes the provision of video much easier. Replay does not have to be limited to games where there is full-scale television coverage.

c. If there is a stadium screen, the on-field officials should be able to take advantage of any view they can see on it, provided that choice of view is not biased.

d. We do not want to delay the game unnecessarily, but there is increasing pressure from fans and media for officials to get the call right.

e. We must make sure that replay is equally available to both teams — it cannot be under the sole control of the home team, for instance.

f. What we have adopted is not new. It has been used successfully for several years in both codes of Rugby football. See https://laws.worldrugby.org/downloads/TMO_Trial_From_August_2019_EN.pdf for how it is used in Rugby Union.

SECTION 2. Scope of the video judge

Requesting a review

ARTICLE 1. a. At the suggestion of any official (including the video judge), the referee may request a review of any play within scope.

b. A head coach may request a review by taking a team timeout before the ball is next legally put in play.

   1. After a review has been completed:
      (a) If any on-field ruling is changed, the team is not charged with a timeout.
      (b) If the on-field ruling is not changed, the timeout is charged and that team's privilege to request a review is revoked for the remainder of the game.
   2. If the play review being requested is not reviewable (see Rule 12-2-2), the timeout is charged but the team retains the privilege to request a review.
   3. A head coach may not request a review if his team has used all its permitted timeouts for that half or in that extra period.

4. A request for a review shall be ignored when the privilege has been revoked or if the team has used all its timeouts.

Reviewable plays

ARTICLE 2. a. A review can only be used for a play in which there is doubt about:

1. a score
2. a change of team possession
3. a foul on the list of explicitly reviewable fouls (Rule 12-2-3)
4. any foul on a play that ends with less than two minutes of the game remaining or during an extra period
5. a disqualification
6. the status of the ball (e.g. live/dead, touched/untouched), including when and/or where the ball or a player is out of bounds or in an end zone, which player has possession of the ball, whether a pass is forward or backward or whether a forward pass is complete/incomplete
7. the location of a player with regard to substitutions, illegal passes (including intentional grounding), illegal kicks and handing (a foul may be created)
8. the location of the ball with respect to a first down
9. the down number within a series of downs or before the next series
10. clock status
11. any obvious errors that may have a significant impact on the outcome of the game

b. A review can equally be used to determine whether a reviewable action occurred or not.

c. While undertaking a review of a particular aspect of a play, other reviewable aspects may come under consideration. A review can consider any reviewable aspect of the play for which the game was stopped.

Approved Ruling 12-2-2

I. While reviewing a play to see whether the pass was complete or incomplete, the video judge spots a personal foul by A88. **RULING:** Foul by A88. Team B may accept or decline the penalty once the ruling of complete/incomplete has been finalised.

Explictly reviewable fouls

ARTICLE 3. The following plays are explicitly reviewable and the video judge may create a foul when there is no call by the on-field officials or cancel a foul called by an on-field official:

a. A foul that normally carries a 15-yard penalty, including pass interference.

b. Player throwing a forward pass or making a forward handoff when beyond the neutral zone or after a change of team possession.

c. Player beyond the neutral zone when kicking the ball.

d. Blocking by a Team A player before he is eligible to touch the ball on an onside kick.

e. The number of players on the field for either team during a live ball.

f. Illegal touching of a forward pass by an originally eligible receiver who has gone out of bounds.

g. Player who is out of bounds touching a free kick that had not been touched inbounds.

h. Forward pass that becomes illegal as a second forward pass after an on-field ruling of a backward pass is changed.

Injured players

ARTICLE 4. The video judge may declare an injury timeout if he observes an injured participant that the on-field officials have not (Rule 3-3-5).

SECTION 3. Procedures

Equipment and personnel

ARTICLE 1. a. The video judge may use whatever video equipment is reasonably available. The sources of video to be used shall be determined by the video judge before the game.

b. When a replay is shown on a stadium screen, the on-field officials may observe it during a review and use clear evidence from it to change a decision. This may include situations when there is no video judge, but the referee has the ability to request a replay to be shown.

c. Review will not be used if there is no video judge AND the decision as to which plays to replay on the stadium screen is in the control of only one team.

Initiating review

ARTICLE 2. a. A review can be initiated by stopping the game at any time before the ball is next legally put in play. This includes when there is a positive intention by any official to initiate a review, even if the whistle or signal to denote it comes after the ball is snapped or free kicked.

b. A review can be initiated whenever an official believes that:

1. There is reasonable evidence to believe an error was made in the initial on-field ruling, and
2. The play is reviewable, and
3. The outcome of a review would have a direct, competitive impact on the game. Review shall not be used when there would be no competitive impact on the game, including when the running clock rule is in force (Rule 3-3-2).

c. An official shall not initiate a review in a situation when it would give one team an advantage with respect to time (on either the game clock or play clock).

d. There is no limit on the number of reviews initiated by the officials nor is there a time limit for a review. However, officials should have regard to the duration of the game and not instigate reviews that have little impact on the game.

e. Disqualifications may be reviewed at any time since the impact normally includes the player's ability to play in the next game.

Criteria for reversing an on-field ruling

ARTICLE 3. a. If there is clear, indisputable evidence that a ruling on the field was incorrect or that something within the scope of the review procedure occurred and was missed by the on-field officials, the video judge will advise the on-field officials to change their ruling(s).

b. If there is other evidence (e.g. not indisputable), the video judge shall inform the on-field officials of the evidence available and give them the opportunity to change their ruling(s) when that evidence is combined with evidence from their own observations. The video judge may not override the judgment of any of the on-field officials, but may advise them. The final determination of fact(s) shall remain with the on-field officials.

c. An official (usually the referee) may act for any other on-field official who is unable to communicate with the video judge.

d. When, in the judgment of the video judge, a foul should have been called, the referee may override that judgment if he believes the action as described to him would not have been ruled as a foul if it had been observed by an on-field official. The video judge is subject to the same officiating interpretations and philosophies as the on-field officials.

Information provision

ARTICLE 4. a. The relevant official should repeat information provided to him by the video judge to ensure that both are satisfied that the on-field official has heard the information correctly.

b. Normally, an on-field official (or the referee on their behalf) will ask the video judge to answer a specific question of fact.

c. If a ruling is changed, the video judge shall provide the referee with all pertinent information as needed (next down, distance, yard line, position of the ball, clock status/adjustment) in order to resume play under the correct game conditions.

   1. If the video judge does not know the precise information, an estimate can be used.
   2. If the game clock was running and was stopped solely for a review, it should be adjusted such that no more than 40 seconds can elapse since the end of the previous play.
   3. With less than one minute in either half, if the correct ruling would not have stopped the game clock, then the clock will be reset to the time the ball is declared dead by the video judge. The referee will subtract 10 seconds from the game clock and the game clock will start on the referee's signal. Either team may use a team timeout to avoid the runoff.
   4. If the game clock expires at the end of any quarter, either during a down in which it should be stopped by rule through play when the ball becomes dead or after the down upon a request for an available team timeout, the video judge may restore time.

d. After a review is completed, the referee shall announce that:

   1. the ruling on the field **is confirmed**, if the video evidence confirms the on-field ruling;
   2. the ruling on the field **stands**, if the video evidence is inconclusive;
   3. the ruling on the field **is changed**, why and what the impact of the ruling is, if the video evidence reveals an error occurred.

RULE 13

Standards for Game Management

SECTION 1. Medical Provision

Minimum Medical Requirements

ARTICLE 1. The minimum medical facilities during a game are:

a. # A professional practitioner who meets the requirements below must be available.
   1. The general characteristics are that the person must:
      (a) Be a graduate in an appropriate discipline.
      (b) Be a registered member of an appropriate professional body.
      (c) Possess professional indemnity insurance.
      (d) Hold a NQF Level 3 or higher first aid qualification.
   2. Persons in the following categories who also have appropriate experience and training in immediate care (as represented by a NQF Level 3 first aid qualification) are likely to meet the requirement:
      (a) Doctor registered with the GMC.
      (b) Nurse registered with the NMC.
      (c) Physiotherapist registered with the HCPC.
      (d) Paramedic registered with the HCPC.
      (e) Sports rehabilitator registered with BASRaT.
      (f) Sports therapist registered with the Society of Sports Therapists.
      (g) Sports massage therapist registered with the Sports Massage Association.
      (h) Osteopath registered with the GOC.
      (i) Chiropractor registered with the GCC.
   3. This person must not be a squad member.
   4. This person must have carried out a risk assessment and determined that they are competent and equipped to carry out emergency life saving.

b. # A suitable first aid kit, approved by the professional practitioner above (or the lead practitioner, if there is more than one), must be available.

c. # A telephone capable of use to summon the emergency services must be available (**A.R. 13-1-1:II**).

NOTE: Available means inside or immediately outside the stadium and fit for use.

STOP, REPORT & SANCTION – Under no circumstances may the game commence, nor proceed if suspended. BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
• Minimum medical requirement not met.

Approved Ruling 13-1-1

I. If the game is suspended because of lack of medical provision, how long do you wait before abandoning the game? **RULING:** Rule 13-5-8-c applies: "The referee shall wait for a reasonable time to permit the problem(s) to be rectified. However, if it becomes clear that the game cannot continue, the referee shall abandon the game and notify game management." A reasonable time would be at least 30 minutes but probably not longer than an hour unless there was a clear indication that a resumption was imminent. Of course don't wait 30 minutes if it is obvious that a restart is never going to be possible.

II. A mobile telephone is available, but due to poor reception conditions a reliable signal cannot be obtained. **RULING:** The game cannot proceed until either another mobile telephone with a better signal is found, or a working land-line telephone inside or immediately outside the stadium is available. [Cited by 13-1-1-c]

Medical Requirement Administration

ARTICLE 2. a. # Game management is responsible for the provision and suitability of medical facilities that meet the requirements of Rule 13-1-1.

b. # The senior game management representative shall certify to the referee prior to the game that the medical requirement has been met.

c. Game management shall inform the referee if at any stage during the game the medical requirement ceases to be met. The game will then be suspended (Rule 3-3-3-b).

Concussion protocol

ARTICLE 3. a. A participant suspected of concussion by an official must leave the game to undergo concussion assessment (see Appendix C). The participant may not return until a professional practitioner has cleared them of a concussion diagnosis. This decision must be communicated to the referee by the professional practitioner.

b. A player diagnosed with concussion (or suspected of concussion but not cleared by a professional practitioner) may not return to play or practice until they have completed the BAFA Graduated Return to Play protocol.

PENALTY – Disqualification. [S27 and S47: UC-OTH/DSQ].

SECTION 2. Changing Facilities

Changing Rooms

ARTICLE 1. a. # Game management must provide changing rooms for the home team, the visiting team and the officials. These changing rooms must be separate and access to one should not be via another.

b. # Each room must be large enough to accommodate the appropriate number of people, and must be available two hours prior to the scheduled kickoff time. The officials' changing room must accommodate at least the size of crew normally assigned to the game.

c. # Seating for an appropriate number of people must be provided, and each room must not be unreasonably dirty, cold, wet or noisy. Washing (preferably shower) and toilet facilities are desirable. An appropriate number of coat hooks should also be provided.

d. # Where the standard of the two teams' changing facilities is different, the visiting team must be provided the higher standard one (unless the visiting team head coach agrees otherwise).

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **Changing room not provided, not separate, not large enough, or without appropriate seating.**
- **Changing room unreasonably dirty, cold, wet or noisy.**
- **Visiting team not given higher standard changing facilities.**

Security and Access

ARTICLE 2. # Changing rooms should be secure, i.e. either the occupants should be provided with a key to the room, or a responsible member of the game management assigned to lock and unlock the room as required by the occupants. Game management should inform the occupants if there is any threat to the security of items left in the changing room.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

- **Changing rooms not secured.**

SECTION 3. Stadium Clocks

Minimum Standards for Game Clocks

ARTICLE 1. □ A stadium game clock is not mandatory but where provided must meet the following requirements:

a. It shall be visible from all areas of the pitch. More than one clock is permissible.
b. It must count downwards. A clock that only counts upwards shall not be used.
c. The stadium clock operator shall have control of the game clock via a proper panel, and he shall be situated in a place from which he can see the entire playing surface including end zones.
d. The clock controls must allow the following:
    1. Starting and stopping the clock.
    2. Setting the time to any value.
    3. Correcting of errors.
    4. Turning it off in case of malfunction.
e. The clock shall be maintained regularly and checked for accuracy before each game.
f. If a stadium game clock is provided, and the following criteria are satisfied, then the clock shall be used:
    1. The stadium clock shall comply with the minimum standards set out above.
    2. A competent operator shall be provided who has no duties during the game other than to operate the game clock.
    3. There shall be a means of communication between the on-field time keeper and the stadium clock operator.

Minimum Standards for Play Clocks

ARTICLE 2. □ 40/25-second clocks are not mandatory (overrules Rule 3-2-4-b) but where provided must meet the following requirements:

a. At least two clocks shall be provided, situated at either end of the ground and visible to players in the field of play and end zones. The rules specify that if one clock is not working then the other shall be turned off.
b. Clocks shall count downwards.
c. A separate operator shall be provided to run the play clock.
d. There should be a separate control box for the play clock.
e. The control box for the play clock must allow the following:
    1. Starting and stopping the clock.
    2. Reset to 25 seconds.
    3. Reset to 40 seconds (if the 40/25-second rule is in force).
    4. Turning it off should malfunction occur or for game situations such as crowd noise delay, end of quarter, etc.
f. If 0 seconds is reached the clock shall stop there automatically without counting further.
g. The clock shall be maintained regularly and checked for accuracy before each game.

Procedures for Operating Game Clocks

ARTICLE 3. a. The stadium game clock shall show the official time. It is up to the on-field time keeper, sideline assistant and stadium clock operator to work as a team to ensure that it always shows the correct time.

b. # The stadium clock (if it is working properly) shall be used as the official time piece. An unofficial stadium clock shall not be used.

c. # If the clock malfunctions or if the operator is inadequate, the Referee should order the clock turned off and the game time kept only on the field. If this becomes necessary, the Referee must inform both head coaches, and an incident report made.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
• Stadium clock malfunctions or operator is inadequate.

d. Proper briefing of the stadium clock operator(s) is of paramount importance before any game.

e. The stadium clock operator shall start the clock only on the Referee's signal (even if incorrect by rule) and stop it on his own positive knowledge that the clock should stop by rule or on the signal of an official.

f. If the clock is stopped in error, the stadium clock operator shall restart it immediately.

g. The on-field time keeper should ordinarily correct the stadium clock only after instances where a significant error has occurred.

Procedures for Operating Play Clocks

ARTICLE 4. # If play clocks are provided and they meet the specified standards, they shall be used and shall be the official 40/25-second timers. Unofficial 40/25-second timers shall not be used.

Instructions to Stadium Game Clock Operators

ARTICLE 5. Prior to the game, an official shall inform the stadium clock operator of the length of the periods, and instruct him that:

a. The clock should start on the Referee's winding signal only, or when the ball is snapped (whichever happens first). The clock must not be started if any other official gives a winding signal (***Exception:*** during a free kick).

b. The clock stops if any official gives a stopping the clock signal, or if a touchdown is scored, a safety conceded, a touchback declared, a field goal attempt scores or fails, or a forward pass is declared incomplete. Each of these latter signals stops the clock in its own right. The stadium clock operator shall stop the clock on his own positive knowledge that the clock should stop by rule.

c. If the on-field time keeper wants the time displayed to be adjusted, he shall either:
   1. Order a correction by asking an assistant to use the walkie-talkie or phone line (if provided).
   2. Use agreed signals during a time out or other convenient pause in the game.
   3. Ask the Referee to use his radio-microphone to announce a correction.

Instructions to Stadium Play Clock Operators

ARTICLE 6. Prior to the game, an official shall instruct the play clock operator that:

a. If the 40/25-second clock rule is in force, the play clock should start a 40-second count when an official signals the ball dead, unless the clock was stopped for one of the reasons set out in Rule 3-2-4-c.

b. If the 40/25-second clock rule is not in force, the play clock should be reset to 25 seconds whenever, before the play clock reaches zero, the ball is snapped, kicked, or any official blows his whistle. Also the play clock should be reset to 25 seconds when the Referee signals (one open palm in an over-the-head pumping motion). The play clock should

then be started whenever the Referee gives either the ready for play signal or a winding the clock signal simultaneously with blowing his whistle.

c. If, before the play clock reaches zero, the ball is snapped, kicked, or any official blows his whistle, the time shall be reset immediately to 40 seconds (if the 40/25-second rule is in force) or 25 seconds (if not), and the clock shall not continue to count down.

d. If the clock winds down to zero before the ball is snapped or kicked, it must be left showing 0 until the delay of game penalty is completed, and then reset to 25 seconds.

e. There is one instance in the game when the play clock does not run:
   1. If the game clock is running with less than 40/25 seconds left in any quarter, the 40/25-second clock shall not run.

f. If one of the two play clocks becomes inoperative, the other one must be turned off immediately.

SECTION 4. Game Personnel

Officials' Assistants

ARTICLE 1. # a. Game management shall be responsible for providing 30 minutes prior to the kickoff a minimum of five persons to act as officials' assistants (ball persons and chain crew). ∇ [From 1st October 2019] The Competition Authority may require the away team to provide one of the official's assistants to act as a ball person.

b. The officials' assistants shall be appointed to the following duties:
   1. Down box operator.
   2. Stake operator #1.
   3. Stake operator #2.
   4. Ball person #1.
   5. Ball person #2.
   6. Chain clip operator (if six or more).
   7. Alternate line to gain stake operator (if seven or more).
   8. Alternate down box operator (if eight or more).
   9. Ball person #3 (if more than three balls are to be used).
   10. Ball person #4 (if more than three balls are to be used).

c. # It is mandatory that persons under the age of 14 years must not be used as officials' assistants. Teams are recommended to appoint a regular crew of assistants who will be available to do these jobs for every game.
   1. Officials' assistants under the age of 18 remain the responsibility of game management at all times, and must be supervised by a responsible person appointed by game management.

d. □ It is desirable that officials' assistants be attired with brightly coloured vests to enable them to be distinguished on the sideline.
   1. Down box operators: red.
   2. Stake operators and chain clip operator: 3-inch black and yellow stripes.
   3. Ball persons: dark blue with red diagonal stripes front and back.

e. When provided with an inexperienced crew of assistants, the referee is recommended to use the best individual as down box operator, the next two best as stake operators, and the next two best as ball persons.

f. Where only five assistants are available, the down box operator shall also perform the duties of the chain clip operator. Alternate operators are optional.

STOP, REPORT & SANCTION – Under no circumstances may the game commence, nor proceed if suspended. BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
- **Officials' assistants under age 14.**
- **Fewer than minimum number of assistants provided.**

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
- **Officials' assistants provided later than 30 minutes before kickoff.**

Approved Ruling 13-4-1

I. Competition regulations state that the away team must provide at least one officials' assistant. At the scheduled kickoff time, no assistant has been provided by the away team.
RULING: The game cannot start without a minimum of 5 officials' assistants and it will be up to Game Management to find the away team's contributor. Normally, if the kickoff is delayed for game management reasons, we would penalise the home team 10 yards for delay of game. However, because the delay is due to the away team not providing their personnel, this is regarded as one of the "circumstances beyond the control of the home management" that mean the penalty is waived (Rule 3-4-1-b).

Water Carriers

ARTICLE 2. a. Persons carrying liquid refreshment for use or consumption by players shall only be permitted on the field of play with the permission of the referee. (The referee may delegate the authority to give this permission to other officials if he so wishes.)

b. The water carrier may only provide refreshment and may not communicate coaching information to players. Water carriers shall only be permitted on the field during charged team timeouts, two-minute warning timeouts, injury timeouts or between periods. It is a contravention of rule 9-2-1 for a water carrier to be on the field at any other time or without permission or to communicate with players.

c. At other times when the ball is dead, a player may go to the team area for refreshment (but the water carrier must stay outside the sideline).

Liaison with Game Personnel

ARTICLE 3. a. Prior to the kickoff, the officials shall carry out their pre-game duties including speaking to the following personnel:

1. Head coach of each team – to obtain coaches' certification and names/numbers of captains.
2. Chain crew and ball persons – to brief them as to their duties.
3. Public address announcers – to ensure familiarity with officials' signals, to ascertain what announcements are to be made and if and when the National Anthem is to be played.
4. Clock operator (where provided) – to ensure familiarity with officials' signals and to be briefed on the mechanism to be used to correct errors on the stadium clock.
5. Medical personnel – to ascertain their location.

b. # Game personnel must be available to speak to the officials in the period 30-10 minutes prior to the start of the game.

Stewards

ARTICLE 4. # Game management shall be responsible for providing stewards to remove unauthorised persons from the team areas and within the limit lines.

SECTION 5. Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games

General Principle

ARTICLE 1. a. # The referee shall be the sole arbiter in respect of decisions as to whether to cancel, delay, suspend or abandon the game, however he shall consult his fellow officials, and at all times keep game management and, where appropriate, both head coaches informed of the reason(s) for the cancellation, delay, suspension or abandonment, and, in the case of a delay or suspension, the likely duration.

1. The referee shall take into account, where available, the opinions of the senior medical person present and the senior groundsman present where their expertise is relevant to the decision made.

b. # The referee shall make every effort to play the game at the place and time scheduled, but if circumstances do not permit play to proceed he shall not hesitate to carry out the procedures specified here.

REPORT – The circumstances of any cancellation, delay, suspension or abandonment.

c. Once the referee has made the decision to cancel or abandon a game, that decision shall only be reversed by mutual agreement of the referee and opposing head coaches. This includes agreement to change field at the same venue or change kickoff time. A change of venue or a change to the date on which the game is played must in addition have the agreement of the relevant competition authority.

Team Arrival

ARTICLE 2. a. # The game shall not be cancelled if both teams have arrived at the ground prior to the scheduled kickoff time (even though they may not be ready to start at that time). In case of dispute, the scheduled kickoff time shall be defined to be the kickoff time notified to the referee.

b. Where the kickoff is delayed because of the late arrival of a team, the offending team shall be penalised on the opening kickoff under rule 3-4-1-a. The referee may waive the penalty for circumstances beyond either team's control. (Note: delays due to traffic hold-ups, navigational difficulties, etc. are not to be considered as being beyond a team's control.)

Game Management

ARTICLE 3. # The referee shall delay the start of the game until such time as:

a. The goal posts have been adequately padded according to rule.

b. The match balls have been obtained and checked.

c. The chain set has been obtained and checked.

d. The officials' assistants have been briefed.

e. The minimum medical requirement is met.

PENALTY – 10 yards from the succeeding spot (Rule 3-4-1-b) [S7 and S21].

The Field

ARTICLE 4. Rule 1-2-9-b authorises the referee to effect any improvement to the field surface deemed necessary for proper game administration. Rule 1-2-8-a authorises the referee to order the removal of any obstructions within the playing enclosure that constitute a hazard. The referee shall delay the start of the game until such time as these tasks are

complete. A delay caused by circumstances under the control of the game management shall be considered a contravention of rule 3-4-1-b.

PENALTY – 10 yards from the succeeding spot (Rule 3-4-1-b) [S7 and S21].

Game Supervision

ARTICLE 5. a. # Rule 11-2-1 requires that a game be supervised by a minimum of three officials.

b. # The referee (or the senior official present who shall act as the referee in the appointed referee's absence) shall delay the start of the game until three or more officials are present. If three or more officials are present at the scheduled kickoff time then the game shall proceed, even if more officials are expected to arrive shortly thereafter. Officials who arrive late shall be assimilated into the crew at the referee's discretion.

c. ∅ If fewer than three officials are available, persons who meet the minimum officiating requirement (as defined in Rule 13-9-6-d) (attending the game as spectators or in another capacity) may be appointed officials with the agreement of the referee and the head coach (or his designated representative) of each team.

d. # If one or more officials become incapacitated and the size of the crew drops below three then the referee (or senior official if the referee is incapacitated) shall suspend the game.

STOP, REPORT – Under no circumstances may the game commence, nor proceed if suspended. Fewer than three officials or persons who meet the officiating requirement.

REPORT – Any appointed official is not present or becomes incapacitated.

Approved Ruling 13-5-5

I. Only two qualified officials turn up to a game. The following volunteer to be appointed to assist them in officiating the game: (a) a spectator who holds a BAFRA certificate of competency and is registered with BAFRA and BAFA; (b) a spectator who holds a BAFCA level-1 certification and is registered with BAFCA and BAFA; (c) a coach of one of the participating teams who holds a BAFCA level-1 certification and is registered with BAFCA and BAFA; (d) a spectator who used to hold a BAFRA certificate of competency but is no longer registered with BAFA; (e) a spectator who used to be a BAFCA level-1 certified coach but is no longer registered with BAFA; (f) a sideline assistant of one of the participating teams who used to hold a BAFCA level-1 certification but is no longer registered with BAFCA; (g) a sideline assistant of one of the participating teams who used to hold a BAFRA certificate of competency but is no longer registered with BAFRA. **RULING:** In cases (a), (b) and (c), the individual may be appointed as an official with the agreement of the referee and the head coach of each team. In cases (d), (e), (f) and (g), the individual MAY NOT be appointed - only persons who are currently registered with BAFA as an official or coach meet the minimum officiating requirement (Rule 13-9-6-d).

Weather

ARTICLE 6. a. American football is a game designed to be played in any weather conditions except those that are judged hazardous to player, official or spectator safety (e.g. lightning).

b. # The referee shall delay the start of the game or suspend a game in progress if conditions are construed to be hazardous to life or limb of the participants or spectators.

REPORT – Hazardous weather conditions.

Procedure for Delaying the Start of a Game

ARTICLE 7. a. If the referee delays the start of the game due to any of the reasons above, or for any other reason(s), he shall:

1. Notify game management of the reason(s) for the delay.

2. Wait at least one hour before cancelling the game, unless it is clear or becomes clear that the problem(s) will not be rectified (e.g. away team telephones to say they are not coming, or necessary equipment to improve the pitch surface is not available), then the referee shall immediately cancel the game without further delay.
3. Cancel the game if it is not started within 60 minutes of the scheduled kickoff time (or a specified longer period agreed unanimously by both head coaches and the referee).

Procedure for Suspending the Game

ARTICLE 8. a. The procedure for suspending the game is stipulated in Rule 3-3-3.

b. The referee shall suspend the game under the following circumstances:
   1. If all match balls are illegal.
   2. If the chain set is inoperative.
   3. If one or more officials' assistants become unavailable or are dismissed due to incompetence.
   4. If the medical cover drops below the minimum level.
   5. If the field surface makes proper game administration impossible or an obstruction becomes a hazard.
   6. If fewer than three officials are able to supervise the game, due to injury or for any other reason.
   7. If weather conditions become hazardous to players, officials or spectators.
   8. If the behaviour of any person is prejudicial to the orderly conduct of the game.
   9. For any other reason which poses a hazard to player, official or spectator safety.
   10. For any other contingency not covered by the rules.

c. The referee shall wait for a reasonable time to permit the problem(s) to be rectified. However, if it becomes clear that the game cannot continue, the referee shall abandon the game and notify game management.

d. The referee shall abandon the game if it is not resumed within 60 minutes (or a specified longer period agreed unanimously by both head coaches and the referee).

REPORT – Game abandoned.

Competition Notification

ARTICLE 9. The referee shall make a report to BAFA of all cancellations and abandonments and all delays and suspensions of more than five minutes duration. Shorter delays and suspensions may be reported at the referee's discretion.

REPORT – Game suspended for more than 5 minutes.

SECTION 6. Miscellaneous

Access to Officials

ARTICLE 1. a. # Members of the game management staff, members of the press with enquiries, players and coaches shall only be allowed into the officials' changing room with the expressed permission of the referee (or in his absence the senior official present). This applies before, during and after the game.

b. # The referee shall be available after the game to answer questions on rules and interpretations. The referee shall not be available to answer questions on judgement calls. Questions addressed to other officials shall be redirected to the referee.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:

• Unauthorised access to officials' changing room.

Public Address Announcers

ARTICLE 2. a. # Announcers must cooperate with the officials by not criticising judgement calls made by the officials. Whether the official gets a good view of the play or not, he can only call what he sees.

b. # In order to ensure fairness to both teams, announcers must not describe the play to the advantage or disadvantage of either team, especially while the ball is live.

REPORT & SANCTION – BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
• Infractions by public address announcers.

Ceremonies

ARTICLE 3. a. □ Team announcements should be completed before the start of the coin toss ceremony.

b. □ If game management wishes, the toss of the coin at the start of the game may be performed by an individual or attended by a small group of persons. (This is not to be considered a contravention of rule 3-1-1.) Such persons shall not, however, be permitted to perform a kickoff.

SECTION 7. Sanctions

Authority to impose sanctions

ARTICLE 1. # BAFA may impose sanctions on teams for breaches of mandatory game management rules.

a. # Sanctions shall be applied to the team responsible for game management (***Exception:*** Rule 1-4-5-b-1).
   1. No sanctions shall be applied if neither of the participating teams in a game is responsible for the management of the game.
   2. No sanction shall be applied if the breach is beyond the reasonable control of game management. Game management is expected to make contingency plans for all breaches that reasonably can be foreseen, and shall be liable if the contingency plan does not exist or cannot be implemented without good reason.

b. # No sanction will be applied if the breach is rectified before the designated kickoff time.

c. # Sanctions shall only apply in competitive games.

Possible sanctions

ARTICLE 2. # a. BAFA may impose any of the following sanctions for a game management breach (or any combination of these):
   1. A warning about future breaches.
   2. A monetary fine.
   3. A restriction on the use of the venue where the breach occurred.
   4. Cancelling (or abandoning, if started) a game.
   5. Deduction of competition points or the award of the game.

b. # The sanction of warning about future breaches may only be applied for a first offence in a season of a particular breach.

c. # The sanction of deducting competition points or awarding a game may only be applied in cases where there is evidence that the integrity of the game was compromised (e.g. a team did something to cheat).

d. # The referee shall cancel the game (or abandon the game, if started) in cases where a sanction so specifies, and a mandatory breach is not rectified within the time limit (if specified).

SECTION 8. Roster form breaches

Player not on roster

ARTICLE 1. a. # No player who is not on his team's roster form may participate.

b. # A head coach may request a coach's conference with the referee if he believes an opposition player is not on the roster (Rule 3-3-4-e). If the player is on the roster, the coach's team shall be charged a timeout, or a delay penalty if all timeouts have been used. (**A.R. 13-8-1:I-IV**)

PENALTY – Disqualification [S47].

Approved Ruling 13-8-1

I. After the ball is dead, a Team B player requests a coach's conference because his coach believes that A99, who participated in the previous down, is not on his team's roster. **RULING:** The referee shall check the roster form. If A99 is not on the form, disqualify him. If A99 is on the form, charge Team B with a timeout, or a delay penalty if all timeouts have been used. [Cited by 13-8-1-b]

II. A Team A player leaves the field and A99 enters the field to replace him and communicates with a teammate or an official, enters the huddle, or is positioned in an offensive formation. A Team B player requests a coach's conference because his coach believes that A99 is not on his team's roster. **RULING:** The referee shall check the roster form. If A99 is not on the form, disqualify him. If A99 is on the form, charge Team B with a timeout, or a delay penalty if all timeouts have been used. [Cited by 13-8-1-b]

III. During a down, an official observes player A99 who he believes is not on his team's roster form. **RULING:** Referee's timeout when the ball is dead. The referee shall check the roster form. If A99 is not on the form, disqualify him. If A99 is on the form, the game continues. [Cited by 13-8-1-b]

IV. After the ball is dead, a Team B player requests a coach's conference because his coach believes that A18 and A99, who participated in the previous down, are not on their team's roster. After checking the roster form, the referee discovers that A18 is on the form but A99 isn't. **RULING:** Disqualify A99. Team B will not be charged for the coach's conference since at least part of their appeal was upheld. (Rule 13-8-1-b) [Cited by 13-8-1-b]

SECTION 9. Status of BAFA games

BAFA game

ARTICLE 1. # a. The following are categorised as BAFA games and subject to these rules:

1. A regular season or playoff game played by teams in leagues or other competitions affiliated to or sanctioned by BAFA.
2. Any other game played in Great Britain where at least one of the teams is affiliated to or sanctioned by BAFA or one of its member organisations.
3. Any "all-star" or exhibition game played in Great Britain involving persons sanctioned directly or indirectly by BAFA.

Controlled scrimmage

ARTICLE 2. # a. A controlled scrimmage is defined as a playing event between players representing the same club or two or more different clubs provided that:

1. No gate money is taken.
2. The score is not published.
3. It is not part of any competition.
4. The primary purpose is the training and/or evaluation of players.

b. A controlled scrimmage may be played under the supervision of licensed coaches.

c. With the mutual agreement of the head coaches, the playing rules may be modified in ways that do not reduce the safety of the participants.

Age groups

ARTICLE 3. ∇ A Competition Authority may define the maximum and/or minimum age for players in its competition.

Licensed coach

ARTICLE 4. # A coach is defined as licensed if, at the time of the game:

a. He is registered with BAFA.
b. He is registered with BAFCA.
c. He holds public liability insurance for coaching.

Licensed official

ARTICLE 5. # An official is defined as licensed if, at the time of the game:

a. He is registered with BAFA.
b. He is registered with BAFRA.
c. He holds public liability insurance for officiating.

Playing games

ARTICLE 6. # A BAFA game may not be played unless:

a. All players meet any age group requirements.
b. The players of each BAFA-affiliated team are registered with BAFA.
c. Each BAFA-affiliated team has at least one licensed coach who meets the minimum coaching requirement. All coaches must hold a current valid BAFCA Level 1 certification.
d. The officials must be licensed and meet the minimum officiating requirement. All officials must hold either (a) a BAFRA certificate of competency; (b) a BAFRA qualification; or (c) a BAFCA Level 1 certification.
e. The referee has declared the field safe and ready to play.
f. The minimum medical requirements (Rule 13-1-1) are met.

STOP, REPORT & SANCTION – Under no circumstances may the game commence, nor proceed if suspended. BAFA may apply sanctions for the following breaches:
• BAFA game requirements not met.
Participants risk not being fully covered by BAFA's insurance policy if this is violated.

Period between games: teams

ARTICLE 7. # a. No game shall take place if, at its kickoff time, fewer than 36 hours have elapsed since the end of the last game played by either team. ***Exceptions:***

1. Any flag football game.
2. A suspended game that is resumed.
3. Where a series of games is played on the same day, the series will count as a single game provided the total playing time is not more than the equivalent of 60 minutes (excluding extra periods).
4. Where an explicit waiver in writing has been provided by the Chair of the BAFA Rules Committee.

Period between games: officials

ARTICLE 8. a. # Where two games are scheduled at the same venue and one or more officials are scheduled to officiate both games, there shall be a minimum interval between the scheduled kickoff of the two games.

1. If the first game is scheduled with 15-minute quarters, the second game shall be scheduled to kickoff no sooner than 3½ hours after the scheduled kickoff time of the first game.
2. If the first game is scheduled with 12-minute quarters, the second game shall be scheduled no sooner than 3 hours after the scheduled kickoff time of the first game.
3. If the first game is scheduled with 10-minute or 8-minute quarters, the second game shall be scheduled no sooner than 2½ hours after the scheduled kickoff time of the first game.

b. # If the first game of a double header finishes less than 30 minutes prior to the scheduled kickoff time of the second game, the start of the second game shall be delayed to allow a minimum interval of 30 minutes between the two games.

c. # This rule does not normally apply to 5-man and 7-man football.

Summary of penalties

Officials' signals (see pages 208 - 210), the numbers refer to numbered illustrations; R, Rule; S, Section; A, Article; P, Page. Where a signal is marked *, the referee shall also give Signal 9.

Index		O	R	S	A	P
	LOSS OF A DOWN					
1	Illegal scrimmage kick	31*	6	3	10	115
2	Illegally handing ball forward	35*	7	1	6	127
3	Planned loose ball play	19*	7	1	7	127
4	Intentionally throwing backward pass out of bounds	35*	7	2	1	127
5	Illegal forward pass by Team A	35*	7	3	2	129
6	Intentionally grounding forward pass	36*	7	3	2	129
7	Forward pass illegally touched by player out of bounds	16*	7	3	4	131
8	Illegally batting loose ball	31*	9	4	1	167
9	Illegally kicking ball	31*	9	4	4	168
	LOSS OF FIVE YARDS					
1	Alteration of playing surface for an advantage	27	1	2	9	48
2	Improper numbering	23	1	4	2	51
3	Coin toss infractions	19	3	1	1	77
4	Illegal delay of game	21	3	4	2	91
5	Advancing a dead ball	21	3	4	2	91
6	Disconcerting offensive signals	21	3	4	2	91
7	Substitution rules infraction	22	3	5	2	94
8	Delay of game (substitutions)	21	3	5	2	94
9	More than 11 players in the formation or during the play (dead ball)	22	3	5	3	96
10	More than 11 players in the formation or during the play (live ball)	22	3	5	3	96
11	Putting ball in play before it is ready	19	4	1	4	101
12	Exceeding play clock count	21	4	1	5	101
13	Infraction of free kick formation	18, 19	6	1	2	107
14	Player out of bounds when ball free-kicked	19	6	1	2	108
15	Team A player illegally goes out of bounds (free kick)	19	6	1	11	111
16	Team A blocking during a free kick	19	6	1	12	111
17	Free kick out of bounds [or 30-yard option]	19	6	2	1	111
18	Return kick	31	6	3	10	115
19	Illegal scrimmage kick (also loss of down)	31*	6	3	10	115
20	Marking spot of place kick	19	6	3	10	115
21	Team A player illegally goes out of bounds (scrimmage kick)	19	6	3	12	116
22	Defensive linemen 3-on-1 in field goal formation	19	6	3	14	116
23	Taking more than two steps after a fair catch	21	6	5	2	119
24	Illegal snap	19	7	1	1	122
25	Snapper's position and ball adjustment	19	7	1	3	123

Index		O	R	S	A	P
26	Team A not within nine-yard marks after ready for play	19	7	1	3	123
27	Encroachment (offense) at snap	19	7	1	3	123
28	False start or simulating start of a play	19	7	1	3	123
29	Player out of bounds when ball is snapped	19	7	1	4	125
30	Offensive player illegally in motion at the snap	20	7	1	4	125
31	Illegal formation	19	7	1	4	125
32	Illegal formation due to numbering exception	19	7	1	4	125
33	Illegal shift	20	7	1	4	125
34	Interference with opponent or ball	18	7	1	5	126
35	Defensive player charging unabated toward a back	18	7	1	5	126
36	Abrupt defensive actions	21	7	1	5	126
37	Offside (defense)	18	7	1	5	126
38	Defensive player out of bounds at snap	19	7	1	5	126
39	Illegally handing ball forward (also loss of down)	35*	7	1	6	127
40	Planned loose ball play (also loss of down)	19*	7	1	7	127
41	Intentionally throwing backward pass out of bounds (also loss of down)	35*	7	2	1	127
42	Player on scrimmage line receiving snap	19	7	2	3	128
43	Illegal forward pass by Team A (also loss of down)	35*	7	3	2	129
44	Ineligible receiver downfield	37	7	3	10	137
45	Forward pass illegally touched	16	7	3	11	137
46	Running into kicker or holder	30	9	1	16	157
47	Game administration interference (also 15 yards)	29	9	2	5	163
48	Interlocked interference or helping ball carrier	44	9	3	2	164
	LOSS OF 10 YARDS					
1	Home team delay	21	3	4	1	90
2	Illegal use of hands or arms (offense)	42	9	3	3	165
3	Holding or obstruction (offense)	42	9	3	3	165
4	Locked hands	42	9	3	3	165
5	Illegal use of hands (defense)	42	9	3	4	166
6	Illegal contact with eligible receiver (first down)	38	9	3	5	166
7	Illegal block in the back (offense)	43	9	3	6	167
8	Illegally batting loose ball (also loss of down)	31*	9	4	1	167
9	Illegally batting a backward pass	31	9	4	2	168
10	Batting a ball in possession by player in possession	31	9	4	3	168
11	Illegally kicking ball (also loss of down)	31*	9	4	4	168
12	Game management delay of game	21	13	5	3	190
13	Field needs improvement delay of game	21	13	5	4	191
	LOSS OF 15 YARDS					
1	Marking ball	27	1	3	3	50
2	Numbers changed (also disqualification)	27	1	4	2	51
3	Illegal signal devices (also disqualification)	27, 47	1	4	10	56
4	Team not ready to play at start of either half	21	3	4	1	90

Index		O	R	S	A	P
5	Blocking a free kicker	40	6	1	9	110
6	Illegal wedge	27	6	1	10	110
7	Interference with opportunity to catch kick	33	6	4	1	117
8	Illegal block by fair catch signaller	40	6	5	4	121
9	Tackling or blocking fair catcher	38	6	5	5	121
10	Offensive pass interference	33	7	3	8	133
11	Defensive pass interference (first down)	33	7	3	8	134
12	Personal foul (first down)	38	9	1	0	148
13	Striking an opponent (first down)	38	9	1	2	148
14	Tripping (first down)	46	9	1	2	148
15	Targeting/forcible contact with crown of helmet (first down) (also disqualification)	24, 38, 47	9	1	3	149
16	Forcible contact to head/neck area of a defenseless player (first down) (also disqualification)	24, 38, 47	9	1	4	149
17	Clipping (first down)	39	9	1	5	151
18	Blocking below the waist (first down)	40	9	1	6	151
19	Late hit (first down)	38	9	1	7	153
20	Action out of bounds (first down)	38	9	1	7	153
21	Helmet/face mask fouls (first down)	38, 45	9	1	8	153
22	Roughing the passer (first down)	34	9	1	9	154
23	Chop blocking (first down)	41	9	1	10	154
24	Leverage/Leaping (first down)	38	9	1	11	155
25	Defensive restrictions	27	9	1	11	155
26	Fouling an opponent obviously out of the play (first down)	38	9	1	12	155
27	Hurdling (first down)	38	9	1	13	156
28	Illegal contact against the snapper (first down)	38	9	1	14	156
29	Horse collar tackle (first down)	25, 38	9	1	15	156
30	Roughing kicker or holder (first down)	30, 38	9	1	16	157
31	Simulating roughed or run into	27	9	1	16	157
32	Blocking a free kicker	40	9	1	16	157
33	Continued participation without a helmet (first down)	38	9	1	17	158
34	Blind-side block (first down)	38	9	1	18	158
35	Unsportsmanlike conduct	27	9	2	1	159
36	Obscene or vulgar language	27	9	2	1	159
37	Persons illegally on the field	27	9	2	1	159
38	Engendering ill will	27	9	2	1	159
39	Player not returning ball to official	27	9	2	1	159
40	Persons leaving team area	27	9	2	1	159
41	Noise by persons subject to the rules	27	9	2	1	159
42	Concealing the ball	27	9	2	2	161
43	Simulated replacements or substitutions	27	9	2	2	161
44	Equipment to confuse opponents	27	9	2	2	161
45	Unusual action or verbiage to confuse opponents	27	9	2	2	161
46	Simulating injury to confuse opponents or officials	27	9	2	2	161
47	Intentionally contacting an official (also disqualification)	27, 47	9	2	4	163

Index		O	R	S	A	P
48	Game administration interference (also 5 yards)	29	9	2	5	163
49	Physical interference with an official	27	9	2	5	163
50	Fighting (first down) (also disqualification)	27, 38, 47	9	5	1	169
	LOSS OF HALF DISTANCE TO GOAL LINE					
1	If distance penalty exceeds half the distance (except on defensive pass interference)	-	10	2	6	178
	OFFENDED TEAM'S BALL AT SPOT OF FOUL					
1	Defensive pass interference (if less than a 15-yard penalty) (first down)	33	7	3	8	134
	CHARGED TIMEOUT FOR A VIOLATION					
1	Illegal jersey numbers	23	1	4	5	53
2	Head coach's conference	21	3	3	4	87
3	Head coach's review	21	12	2	1	180
	VIOLATION					
1	Illegal touching of free kick by kicking team	16	6	1	3	109
2	Illegal touching of scrimmage kick by kicking team	16	6	3	2	112
3	Scrimmage-kick-batting exception	16	6	3	11	115
	DISQUALIFICATION					
1	Prohibited signal devices	47	1	4	10	56
2	Flagrant fouls	47	9	1	1	148
3	Targeting/forcible contact with crown of helmet	38	9	1	3	149
4	Forcible contact to head/neck area of a defenseless player	38	9	1	4	149
5	Intentionally contacting an official	47	9	2	4	163
6	Two unsportsmanlike fouls	47	9	2	6	163
7	Fighting	47	9	5	1	169
8	Concussed player returns to game	47	13	1	3	185
	AUTOMATIC FIRST DOWNS (DEFENSIVE FOULS)					
1	Defensive pass interference	33	7	3	8	134
2	Defensive pass interference (if less than a 15-yard penalty)	33	7	3	8	134
3	Personal foul	38	9	1	0	148
4	Striking an opponent	38	9	1	2	148
5	Tripping	46	9	1	2	148
6	Targeting/forcible contact with crown of helmet (also disqualification)	24, 38, 47	9	1	3	149
7	Forcible contact to head/neck area of a defenseless player (also disqualification)	24, 38, 47	9	1	4	149
8	Clipping	39	9	1	5	151
9	Blocking below the waist	40	9	1	6	151
10	Late hit	38	9	1	7	153
11	Action out of bounds	38	9	1	7	153

Index		O	R	S	A	P
12	Helmet/face mask fouls	38, 45	9	1	8	153
13	Roughing the passer	34	9	1	9	154
14	Chop blocking	41	9	1	10	154
15	Leverage/Leaping	38	9	1	11	155
16	Fouling an opponent obviously out of the play	38	9	1	12	155
17	Hurdling	38	9	1	13	156
18	Illegal contact against the snapper	38	9	1	14	156
19	Horse collar tackle	25, 38	9	1	15	156
20	Roughing kicker or holder	30, 38	9	1	16	157
21	Continued participation without a helmet	38	9	1	17	158
22	Blind-side block	38	9	1	18	158
23	Illegal contact with eligible receiver	38	9	3	5	166
24	Fighting (also disqualification)	27, 38, 47	9	5	1	169
	REFEREE'S DISCRETION					
1	Penalty for unfair acts	-	9	2	3	162
	WHEN IN QUESTION RULES					
1	Block below waist	-	2	3	2	59
2	Block in the back	-	2	3	4	59
3	Catch, recovery or interception not completed	-	2	4	3	61
4	Ball accidentally touched rather than batted	-	2	11	3	63
5	Ball not touched on kick or forward pass	-	2	11	4	63
6	Ball is accidentally kicked (touched)	-	2	16	1	65
7	Forward pass rather than backward pass	-	2	19	2	67
8	Forward pass and not fumble	-	2	19	2	68
9	It is a catchable forward pass	-	2	19	4	68
10	A player is defenseless	-	2	27	14	73
11	Stop clock for injured player	-	3	3	5	87
12	Forward progress stopped	-	4	1	3	99
13	Kick-catch interference	-	6	4	1	117
14	It is a catchable forward pass	-	7	3	8	134
15	Touchback rather than safety	-	8	5	1	145
16	Forcible contact and targeting with crown of helmet	-	9	1	3	149
17	Forcible contact and targeting defenseless opponent at or above the shoulders	-	9	1	4	149
18	Twisting, turning or pulling face mask (helmet opening)	-	9	1	8	153
19	Roughing kicker rather than running into	-	9	1	16	157
	REPORT TO APPROPRIATE AUTHORITY					
1	Field markings inadequate	-	1	2	1	43
2	Limit lines or coaching lines inadequate	-	1	2	3	44
3	Team area inadequate	-	1	2	4	44
4	Goals inadequate	-	1	2	5	46
5	Coaches agree to play without goals	-	1	2	5	46
6	Pylons inadequate	-	1	2	6	46

Index		O	R	S	A	P
7	Line-to-gain or down indicator inadequate	-	1	2	7	47
8	Sideline markers inadequate	-	1	2	8	47
9	Field surface improvement required	-	1	2	9	48
10	Balls inadequate	-	1	3	2	50
11	Colour of jerseys clash	-	1	4	5	52
12	Prohibited field equipment used	-	1	4	11	57
13	Playing time shortened due to darkness	-	3	2	1	80
14	Persons removed from the field	-	9	2	7	164
15	Changing room inadequate	-	13	2	1	185
16	Security inadequate	-	13	2	2	185
17	Clock malfunction	-	13	3	3	187
18	Officials' assistants provided later than 30 minutes before kickoff	-	13	4	1	189
19	Bad weather	-	13	5	6	191
20	Game abandoned	-	13	5	8	192
21	Game suspended for more than 5 minutes	-	13	5	9	192
22	Unauthorised access to officials' changing room	-	13	6	1	192
23	Public address announcer infraction	-	13	6	2	193
	COMPETITIONS MAY APPLY SANCTIONS					
1	One or both sidelines is incomplete	-	1	2	1	43
2	One or both goal lines is incomplete	-	1	2	1	43
3	One or both end lines is incomplete	-	1	2	1	43
4	One or more yard lines across the field every 5 yards is incomplete	-	1	2	1	43
5	The hash marks are incomplete	-	1	2	1	43
6	The short yard-line extensions at the sideline are incomplete	-	1	2	1	43
7	End zones smaller than 7 yards or bigger than 13 yards in depth, or where the end zones are not of equal size	-	1	2	1	43
8	Field of play less than 80 yards in length	-	1	2	1	43
9	Field of play not a multiple of 10 yards in length	-	1	2	1	43
10	Field of play not 160 feet in width	-	1	2	1	43
11	White field markings closer than four feet to an end zone line	-	1	2	1	43
12	Absence of nine-yard marks if the field is not numbered according to Rule 1-2-1-j	-	1	2	1	43
13	Game management fail to enforce rule regarding persons outside the team area	-	1	2	3	44
14	Limit lines closer than six feet to any boundary line	-	1	2	3	44
15	Absence of coaching line, team area markings, or team area not marked to 25-yard lines	-	1	2	4	45
16	Media personnel in team area or coaching box	-	1	2	4	45
17	Persons in team area not wearing proper credentials	-	1	2	4	45

Index		O	R	S	A	P
18	Game management failure to remove unauthorised persons from team area	-	1	2	4	45
19	Practice kicking nets outside the team area (except where permitted)	-	1	2	4	45
20	Goal posts inbounds	-	1	2	5	45
21	Uprights less than 20 feet in height	-	1	2	5	46
22	Crossbar not 10 feet above ground	-	1	2	5	46
23	Goal not 18 feet six inches wide	-	1	2	5	46
24	Goal not in plane of end line	-	1	2	5	46
25	Decorative material on the posts or crossbar (other than streamers)	-	1	2	5	46
26	Padding on goal posts absent or less than six feet in height	-	1	2	5	46
27	One or both goals missing or taken down	-	1	2	5	46
28	Illegal pylons that had to be removed	-	1	2	6	46
29	Rods not of minimum height or not with flat ends	-	1	2	7	47
30	Repeated breakages of the line-to-gain or down indicators	-	1	2	7	47
31	Failure to provide line-to-gain or down indicators	-	1	2	7	47
32	Markers that are not constructed and/or placed to avoid hazard and had to be removed	-	1	2	8	47
33	Trip hazard(s)	-	1	2	9	48
34	Markings or facilities inadequate for game to proceed	-	1	2	9	48
35	Home team provides fewer than three legal balls	-	1	3	2	50
36	No towels are provided when conditions warrant it	-	1	3	2	50
37	Balls do not have white stripes	-	1	3	2	50
38	Both teams are playing in the same predominant jersey colour	-	1	4	5	52
39	Players of a team not wearing jerseys of the same colour and design	-	1	4	5	52
40	Prohibited field equipment used	-	1	4	11	57
41	Prohibited media equipment used	-	1	4	11	57
42	Artificial sound amplification used	-	1	4	11	57
43	Recording opponent's signals	-	1	4	11	57
44	Drone inside the playing enclosure	-	1	4	11	57
45	Minimum medical requirement not met	-	13	1	1	184
46	Changing room not provided, not separate, not large enough, or without appropriate seating	-	13	2	1	185
47	Changing room unreasonably dirty, cold, wet or noisy	-	13	2	1	185
48	Visiting team not given higher standard changing facilities	-	13	2	1	185
49	Changing rooms not secured	-	13	2	2	185
50	Stadium clock malfunctions or operator is inadequate	-	13	3	3	187
51	Officials' assistants under age 14	-	13	4	1	189
52	Fewer than minimum number of assistants provided	-	13	4	1	189
53	Officials' assistants provided later than 30 minutes before kickoff	-	13	4	1	189
54	Unauthorised access to officials' changing room	-	13	6	1	192

Index		O	R	S	A	P
55	Infractions by public address announcers	-	13	6	2	193
56	BAFA game requirements not met	-	13	9	6	195
	GAME CANNOT PROCEED RULES					
1	Inadequate field markings	-	1	2	1	43
2	Goal posts inbounds	-	1	2	5	45
3	Trip hazards	-	1	2	9	48
4	Markings and facilities inadequate for game to proceed	-	1	2	9	48
5	Medical facilities inadequate for game to proceed	-	13	1	1	184
6	Officials' assistants inadequate	-	13	4	1	189
7	Circumstances do not permit play to proceed	-	13	5	1	190
8	Number of officials below minimum	-	13	5	5	191
9	Any appointed official not present or becomes incapacitated	-	13	5	5	191
10	BAFA game requirements not met	-	13	9	6	195

Summary of foul codes

By code:

Code	Foul	
APS	Altering playing surface	
ATR	Assisting the runner	
BAT	Illegal batting	
DEH	Holding, defense	
DOD	Delay of game, defense	
DOF	Offside, defense	
DOG	Delay of game, offense	
DPI	Pass interference, defense	
DSH	Delay of game, start of half	
DSQ	Disqualification	
ENC	Encroachment (offense)	
FGT	Fighting	
FST	False start	
IBB	Illegal block in the back	
IBK	Illegal block during kick	
IBP	Illegal backward pass	
IDP	Ineligible downfield on pass	
IFD	Illegal formation, defense (3-on-1)	
IFH	Illegal forward handing	
IFK	Illegal free kick formation	
IFP	Illegal forward pass	
IJY	Illegal jerseys	NEW 2020
IKB	Illegally kicking ball	
ILF	Illegal formation	
ILM	Illegal motion	
ING	Intentional grounding	
IPN	Improper numbering	NEW 2020

Code	Foul
IPR	Illegal procedure
ISH	Illegal shift
ISP	Illegal snap
ITP	Illegal touching of a forward pass
IUH	Illegal use of hands
IWK	Illegal wedge on kickoff
KCI	Kick-catch interference
KIK	Illegal kick
KOB	Free kick out of bounds
OBK	Out of bounds during kick
OFH	Holding, offense
OFK	Offside, free kick
OPI	Pass interference, offense
PF-BBW	Personal foul, blocking below the waist
PF-BOB	Personal foul, blocking out of bounds
PF-BTH	Personal foul, blow to the head
PF-CHB	Personal foul, chop block
PF-CLP	Personal foul, clipping
PF-FMM	Personal foul, face mask
PF-HCT	Personal foul, horse collar tackle
PF-HDR	Personal foul, hit on defenseless receiver
PF-HTF	Personal foul, hands to the face
PF-HUR	Personal foul, hurdling
PF-ICS	Personal foul, illegal contact with snapper
PF-LEA	Personal foul, leaping
PF-LHP	Personal foul, late hit/piling on
PF-LTO	Personal foul, late hit out of bounds
PF-OTH	Personal foul, other
PF-RFK	Personal foul, roughing free kicker
PF-RTH	Personal foul, roughing the holder
PF-RTK	Personal foul, roughing the kicker
PF-RTP	Personal foul, roughing the passer
PF-SKE	Personal foul, striking/kneeing/elbowing
PF-TGT	Personal foul, targeting
PF-TRP	Personal foul, tripping
PF-UNR	Personal foul, unnecessary roughness
RNH	Running into the holder
RNK	Running into the kicker
SLI	Sideline interference, 5 yards
SLM	Sideline interference, 15 yards
SLW	Sideline interference, warning
SUB	Illegal substitution
UC-ABL	Unsportsmanlike conduct, abusive language
UC-BCH	Unsportsmanlike conduct, bench
UC-DEA	Unsportsmanlike conduct, delayed/excessive act
UC-FCO	Unsportsmanlike conduct, forcibly contacting an official
UC-RHT	Unsportsmanlike conduct, removal of helmet
UC-SBR	Unsportsmanlike conduct, simulating being roughed

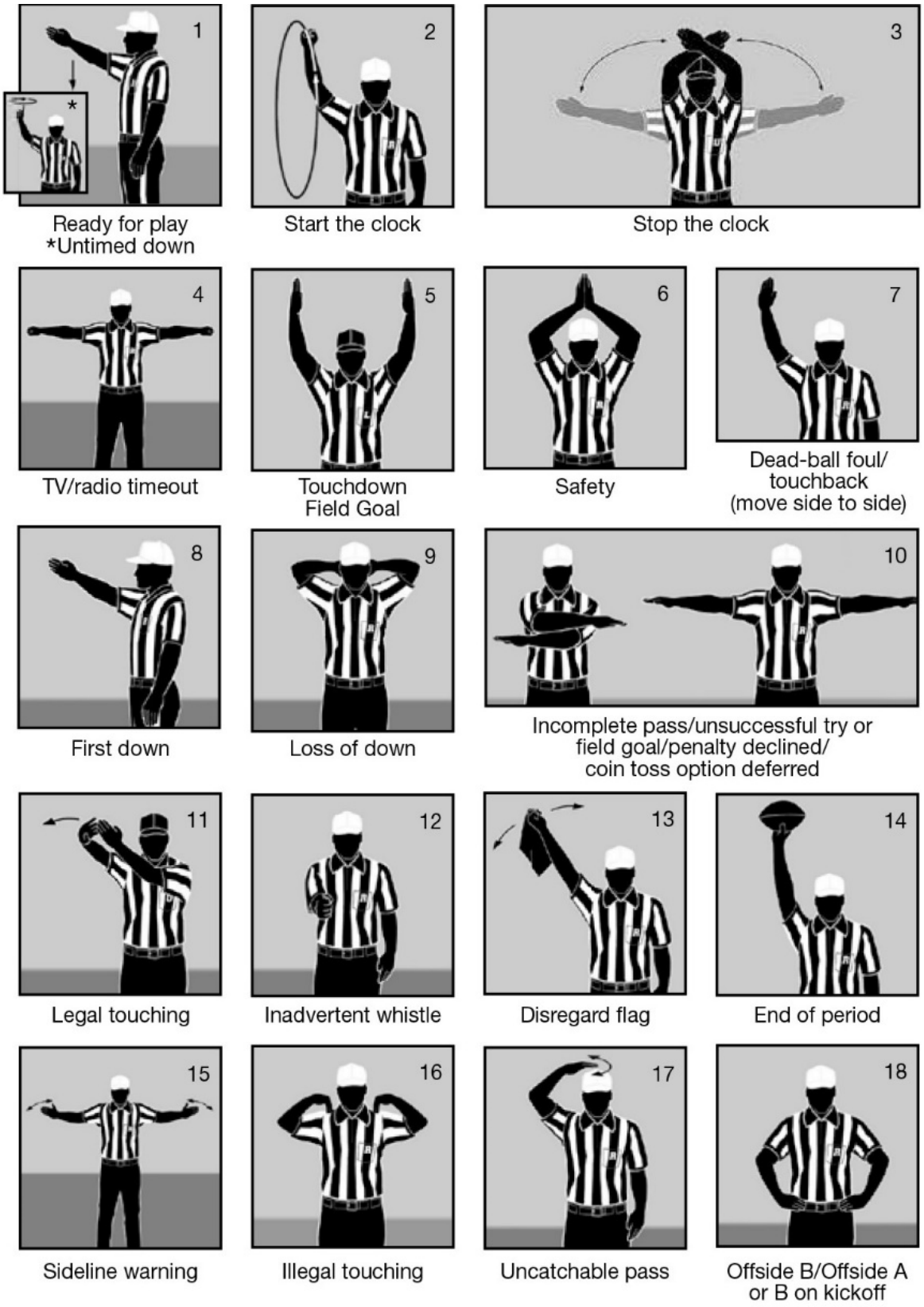
Code	Foul	
UC-STB	Unsportsmanlike conduct, spiking/throwing ball	
UC-TAU	Unsportsmanlike conduct, taunting/baiting	
UC-UNS	Unsportsmanlike conduct, other	
UFA	Unfair acts	
UFT	Unfair tactics	

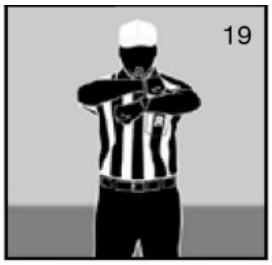
By foul:

Code	Foul	
APS	Altering playing surface	
ATR	Assisting the runner	
DOD	Delay of game, defense	
DOG	Delay of game, offense	
DSH	Delay of game, start of half	
DSQ	Disqualification	
ENC	Encroachment (offense)	
FST	False start	
FGT	Fighting	
KOB	Free kick out of bounds	
DEH	Holding, defense	
OFH	Holding, offense	
IBP	Illegal backward pass	
BAT	Illegal batting	
IBK	Illegal block during kick	
IBB	Illegal block in the back	
ILF	Illegal formation	
IFD	Illegal formation, defense (3-on-1)	
IFH	Illegal forward handing	
IFP	Illegal forward pass	
IFK	Illegal free kick formation	
IJY	Illegal jerseys	NEW 2020
KIK	Illegal kick	
IKB	Illegally kicking ball	
ILM	Illegal motion	
IPR	Illegal procedure	
ISH	Illegal shift	
ISP	Illegal snap	
SUB	Illegal substitution	
ITP	Illegal touching of a forward pass	
IUH	Illegal use of hands	
IWK	Illegal wedge on kickoff	
IPN	Improper numbering	NEW 2020
IDP	Ineligible downfield on pass	
ING	Intentional grounding	
KCI	Kick-catch interference	
DOF	Offside, defense	
OFK	Offside, free kick	
OBK	Out of bounds during kick	
DPI	Pass interference, defense	

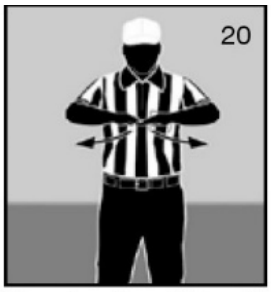
Code	Foul
OPI	Pass interference, offense
PF-BBW	Personal foul, blocking below the waist
PF-BOB	Personal foul, blocking out of bounds
PF-BTH	Personal foul, blow to the head
PF-CHB	Personal foul, chop block
PF-CLP	Personal foul, clipping
PF-FMM	Personal foul, face mask
PF-HTF	Personal foul, hands to the face
PF-HDR	Personal foul, hit on defenseless receiver
PF-HCT	Personal foul, horse collar tackle
PF-HUR	Personal foul, hurdling
PF-ICS	Personal foul, illegal contact with snapper
PF-LTO	Personal foul, late hit out of bounds
PF-LHP	Personal foul, late hit/piling on
PF-LEA	Personal foul, leaping
PF-OTH	Personal foul, other
PF-RFK	Personal foul, roughing free kicker
PF-RTH	Personal foul, roughing the holder
PF-RTK	Personal foul, roughing the kicker
PF-RTP	Personal foul, roughing the passer
PF-SKE	Personal foul, striking/kneeing/elbowing
PF-TGT	Personal foul, targeting
PF-TRP	Personal foul, tripping
PF-UNR	Personal foul, unnecessary roughness
RNH	Running into the holder
RNK	Running into the kicker
SLI	Sideline interference, 5 yards
SLM	Sideline interference, 15 yards
SLW	Sideline interference, warning
UFA	Unfair acts
UFT	Unfair tactics
UC-ABL	Unsportsmanlike conduct, abusive language
UC-BCH	Unsportsmanlike conduct, bench
UC-DEA	Unsportsmanlike conduct, delayed/excessive act
UC-FCO	Unsportsmanlike conduct, forcibly contacting an official
UC-UNS	Unsportsmanlike conduct, other
UC-RHT	Unsportsmanlike conduct, removal of helmet
UC-SBR	Unsportsmanlike conduct, simulating being roughed
UC-STB	Unsportsmanlike conduct, spiking/throwing ball
UC-TAU	Unsportsmanlike conduct, taunting/baiting

Official Signals

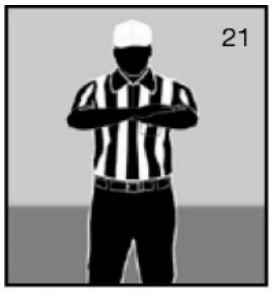




False start/
Encroachment A
Illegal formation

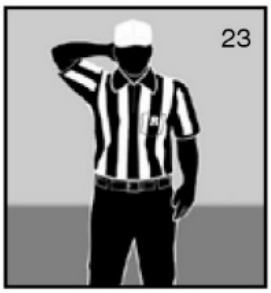


Illegal motion (1 hand)
Illegal shift (2 hands)

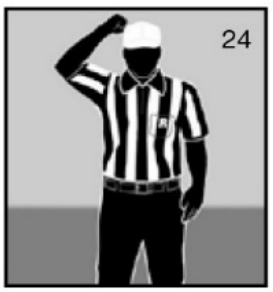


Delay of game

Substitution
infraction

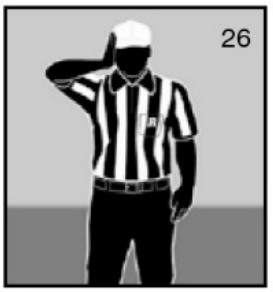


Equipment violation

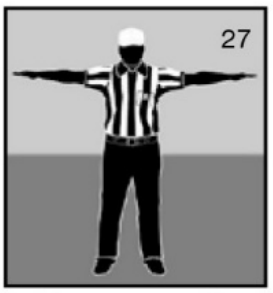


Targeting

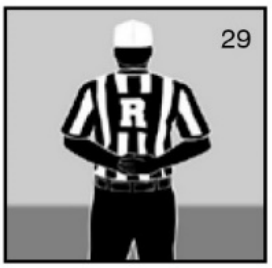
Horse-collar



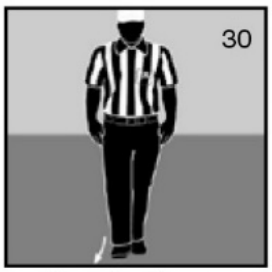
Hands to the face



Unsportsmanlike
conduct



Sideline interference
Note: Face press box
when giving signal.



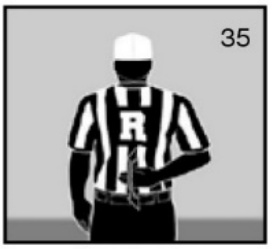
Running into or
roughing the kicker
or holder

Illegal batting/kicking
(for illegal kicking, follow
with a point toward foot)

Illegal fair catch

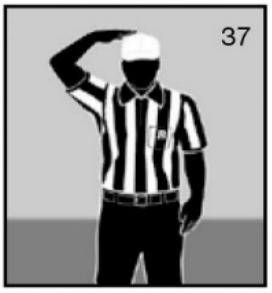
Pass interference
Kick-catching
interference

Roughing the passer



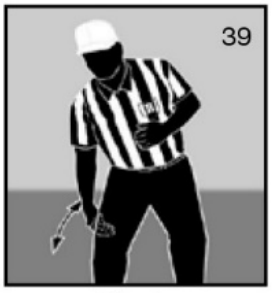
Illegal pass
Illegal forward handing
Note: Face press box
when giving signal.

Intentional grounding

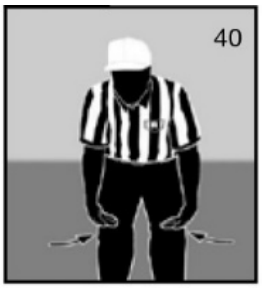


Ineligible downfield
on pass

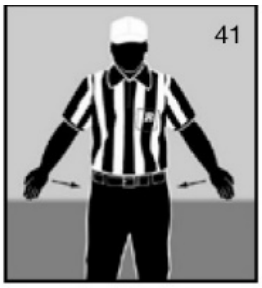
Personal foul



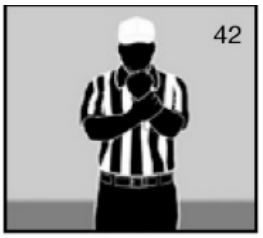
Clipping



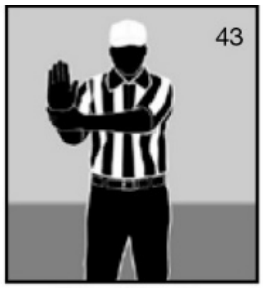
Block below the waist
Illegal block



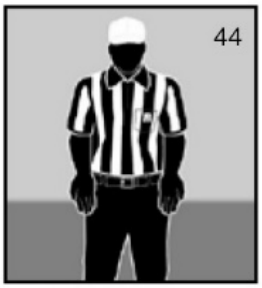
Chop block



Holding
Obstructing
Illegal use of the
hands or arms

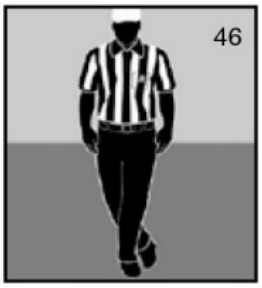


Illegal block
in the back



Helping the runner
Interlocked blocking

Grasping of
face mask or
helmet opening



Tripping

Disqualification

Appendix A

Guidelines for Game Officials for Serious On-Field Player Injuries

1. Players and coaches must go to and remain in the bench area. Direct players and coaches accordingly. Always ensure adequate lines of vision between the medical staffs and available emergency personnel.
2. Attempt to keep players a significant distance away from the seriously injured player or players.
3. Do not allow a player to roll an injured player over.
4. Do not allow players to assist a teammate who is lying on the field; i.e., removing the helmet or chin strap, or attempting to assist breathing by elevating the waist.
5. Do not allow players to pull an injured teammate or opponent from a pile.
6. Once the medical staff begins to assist an injured player, all members of the officiating crew should control the total playing field environment and team personnel, and allow the medical staff to perform services without interruption or interference.
7. Players and coaches should be appropriately controlled to avoid dictating medical services to the athletic trainers or team physicians, or taking up their time to perform such service.

Note: Officials should have a reasonable knowledge of the location of emergency personnel equipment at all stadiums.

(The Rules Committee expresses its appreciation to the National Football League for development of these guidelines.)

Appendix B

Guidelines for Game Officials and Game Management To Use Regarding Lightning

The purpose of this appendix is to provide information to those responsible for making decisions about suspending and restarting games based on the presence of lightning.

Lightning is the most consistent and significant weather hazard that may affect outdoor sport. While the probability of being struck by lightning is low, the odds are significantly greater when a storm is in the area and proper safety precautions are not followed.

Education and prevention are the keys to lightning safety. Authorities should begin prevention long before any athletics event or practice by being proactive and having a lightning safety plan in place. The following steps are recommended to mitigate the lightning hazard:

1. Designate a person to monitor threatening weather and to make the decision to remove a team or individuals from an athletics site or event. A lightning safety plan should include planned instructions for participants and spectators, designation of warning and all-clear signals, proper signs, and designation of safer places for shelter from the lightning.
2. Monitor local weather reports each day before any practice or event. Be diligently aware of potential thunderstorms that may form during scheduled athletics events or practices. Weather information can be found through various means via local television news coverage, the Internet, or the Met Office website at www.metoffice.gov.uk.
3. Be informed of Met Office severe weather warnings, and the warning signs of developing thunderstorms in the area, such as high winds or darkening skies.
4. Know where the closest safer structure or location is to the field or playing area, and know how long it takes to get to that location. A safer structure or location is defined as:
    a. Any building normally occupied or frequently used by people, i.e., a building with plumbing and/or electrical wiring that acts to electrically ground the structure. Avoid using the shower or plumbing facilities and having contact with electrical appliances during a thunderstorm.
    b. In the absence of a sturdy, frequently inhabited building, any vehicle with a hard metal roof (neither a convertible, nor a golf cart) with the windows shut provides a measure of safety. The hard metal frame and roof, not the rubber tyres, are what protects occupants by dissipating lightning current around the vehicle and not through the occupants. It is important not to touch the metal framework of the vehicle.
5. Lightning awareness should be heightened at the first flash of lightning, clap of thunder, and/or other criteria such as increasing winds or darkening skies, no matter how far away. These types of activities should be treated as a warning or wake-up call to event personnel. Lightning safety experts suggest that if you hear thunder, begin preparation for evacuation; if you see lightning, consider suspending activities and heading for your designated safer locations.

The following specific lightning safety guidelines have been developed with the assistance of lightning safety experts. Design your lightning safety plan to consider local safety needs, weather patterns and thunderstorm types.

a. As a minimum, lightning safety experts strongly recommend that by the time the monitor observes 30 seconds between seeing the lightning flash and hearing its associated thunder, all individuals should have left the athletics site and reached a safer structure or location.
b. Please note that thunder may be hard to hear if there is an athletics event going on, particularly in stadiums with large crowds. Implement your lightning safety plan accordingly.
c. The existence of blue sky and the absence of rain are not guarantees that lightning will not strike. At least 10 percent of lightning occurs when there is no rainfall and when blue sky is often visible somewhere in the sky, especially with summer thunderstorms. Lightning can, and does, strike as far as 10 (or more) miles away from the rain shaft.
d. Avoid using landline telephones, except in emergency situations. People have been killed while using a landline telephone during a thunderstorm. Cellular or cordless phones are safe alternatives to a landline phone, particularly if the person and the antenna are located within a safer structure or location, and if all other precautions are followed.
e. To resume athletics activities, lightning safety experts recommend waiting 30 minutes after both the last sound of thunder and last flash of lightning. If lightning is seen without hearing thunder, lightning may be out of range and therefore less likely to be a significant threat. At night, be aware that lightning can be visible at a much greater distance than during the day as clouds are being lit from the inside by lightning. This greater distance may mean that the lightning is no longer a significant threat. At night, use both the sound of thunder and seeing the lightning channel itself to decide on resetting the 30-minute return-to-play clock before resuming outdoor athletics activities.
f. People who have been struck by lightning do not carry an electrical charge. Therefore, cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) is safe for the responder. If possible, an injured person should be moved to a safer location before starting CPR. Lightning-strike victims who show signs of cardiac or respiratory arrest need prompt emergency help. Call 999 for assistance. Prompt, aggressive CPR has been highly effective for the survival of victims of lightning strikes.

Automatic external defibrillators (AEDs) have become a common, safe and effective means of reviving persons in cardiac arrest. Planned access to early defibrillation should be part of your emergency plan. However, CPR should never be delayed while searching for an AED.
Note: Weather watchers, real-time weather forecasts and commercial weatherwarning devices are all tools that can be used to aid in decision-making regarding stoppage of play, evacuation and return to play.

Dangerous Locations

Outside locations increase the risk of being struck by lightning when thunderstorms are in the area. Small covered shelters are not safe from lightning. Dugouts, rain shelters, golf shelters and picnic shelters, even if they are properly grounded for structural safety, are usually not properly grounded from the effects of lightning and side flashes to people. They are usually very unsafe and may actually increase the risk of lightning injury. Other dangerous locations include areas connected to, or near, light poles, towers and fences that can carry a nearby strike to people. Also dangerous is any location that makes the person the highest point in the area.

Adapted by IFAF from NCAA guidelines.

For more information see http://www.rospa.com/leisuresafety/information/lightning.htm.

Appendix C

Concussions

A concussion is a brain injury that may be caused by a blow to the head, face, neck or elsewhere on the body with an "impulsive" force transmitted to the head. Concussions can occur without loss of consciousness or other obvious signs. A repeat concussion that occurs before the brain recovers from the previous one (hours, days or weeks) can slow recovery or increase the likelihood of having long-term problems. In rare cases, repeat concussions can result in brain swelling, permanent brain damage and even death.

Recognize and Refer: To help recognize a concussion, watch for the following two events among your players during both games and practices:

1. A forceful blow to the head or body that results in rapid movement of the head. -AND-
2. Any change in the player's behavior, thinking or physical functioning (see signs and symptoms).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Signs Observed By Coaching Staff	**Symptoms Reported By Player**
Appears dazed or stunned	Headache or "pressure" in head.
Is confused about assignment or position	Nausea or vomiting.
Forgets plays	Balance problems or dizziness.
Is unsure of game, score or opponent	Double or blurry vision.
Moves clumsily	Sensitivity to light.
Answers questions slowly	Sensitivity to noise.
Loses consciousness (even briefly)	Feeling sluggish, hazy, foggy or groggy.
Shows behavior or personality changes	Concentration or memory problems.
Canât recall events before hit or fall	Confusion.
Canât recall events after hit or fall	Does not "feel right."

An athlete who exhibits signs, symptoms or behaviors consistent with a concussion, either at rest or during exertion, should be removed immediately from practice or competition and should not return to play until cleared by an appropriate health care professional. Sports have injury timeouts and player substitutions so that players can get checked.

IF A CONCUSSION IS SUSPECTED:

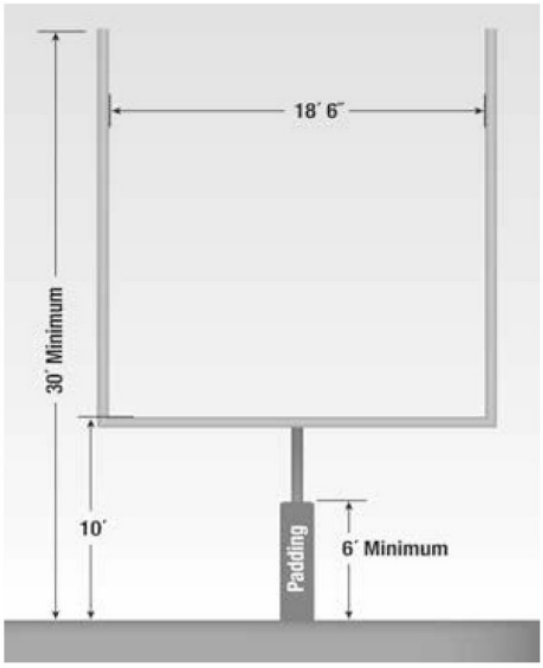
1. Remove the athlete from play. Look for the signs and symptoms of concussion if the athlete has experienced a blow to the head. Do not allow the athlete to just "shake it off". Each individual athlete will respond to concussions differently.
2. Ensure that the athlete is evaluated right away by an appropriate health care professional. Do not try to judge the severity of the injury yourself. Immediately refer the athlete to the appropriate athletics medical staff, such as a certified athletic trainer, team physician or health care professional experienced in concussion evaluation and management.
3. Allow the athlete to return to play only with permission from medical personnel. Allow athletics medical staff to rely on their clinical skills and protocols in evaluating the athlete to establish the appropriate time to return to play. A return-to-play progression should

occur in an individualized, step-wise fashion with gradual increments in physical exertion and risk of contact. Follow your institution's physician supervised concussion management protocol.

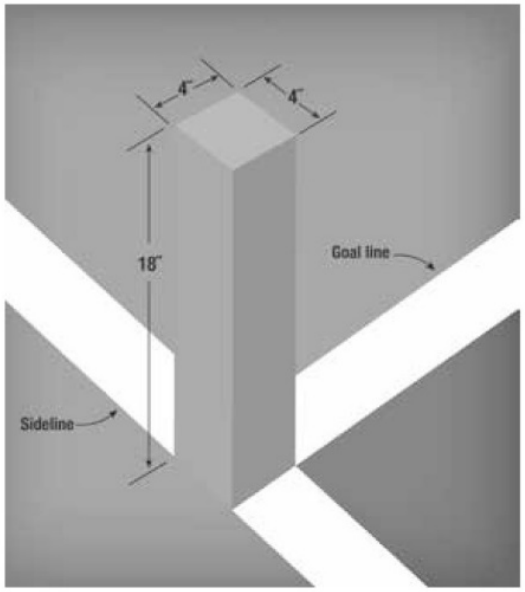
4. Develop a game plan. Athletes should not return to play until cleared by the appropriate medical personnel. In fact, as concussion management continues to evolve with new science, the care is becoming more conservative and return-to-play time frames are getting longer. Coaches should have a game plan that accounts for athletes to be out for at least the remainder of the day.

Appendix D

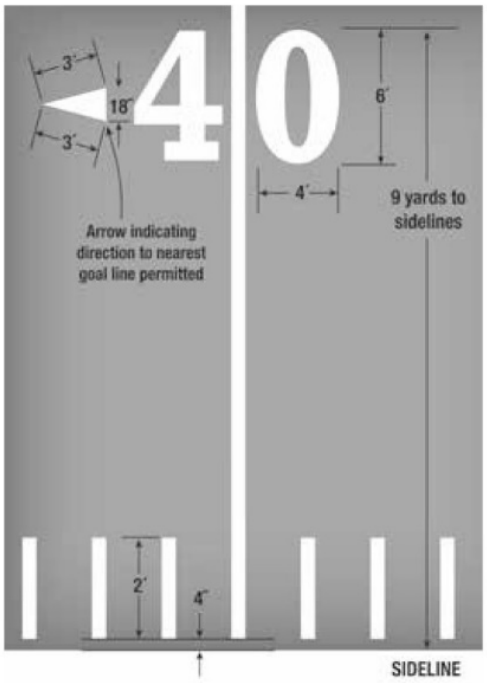
Field Diagrams



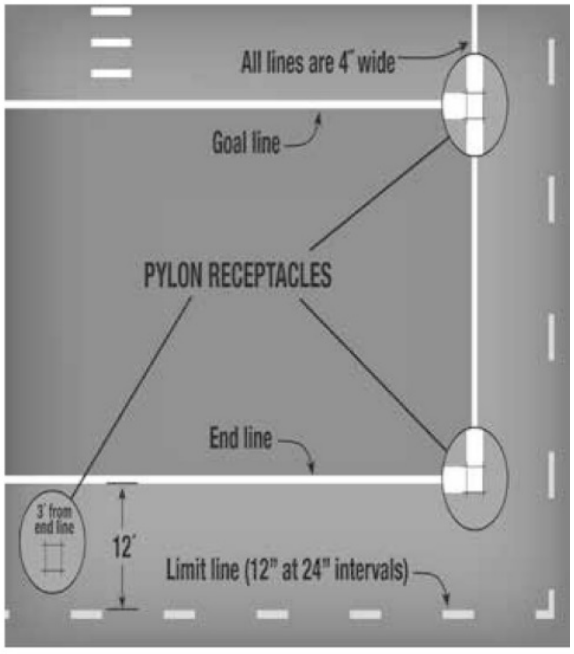
GOAL POST DETAIL



PYLON DETAIL

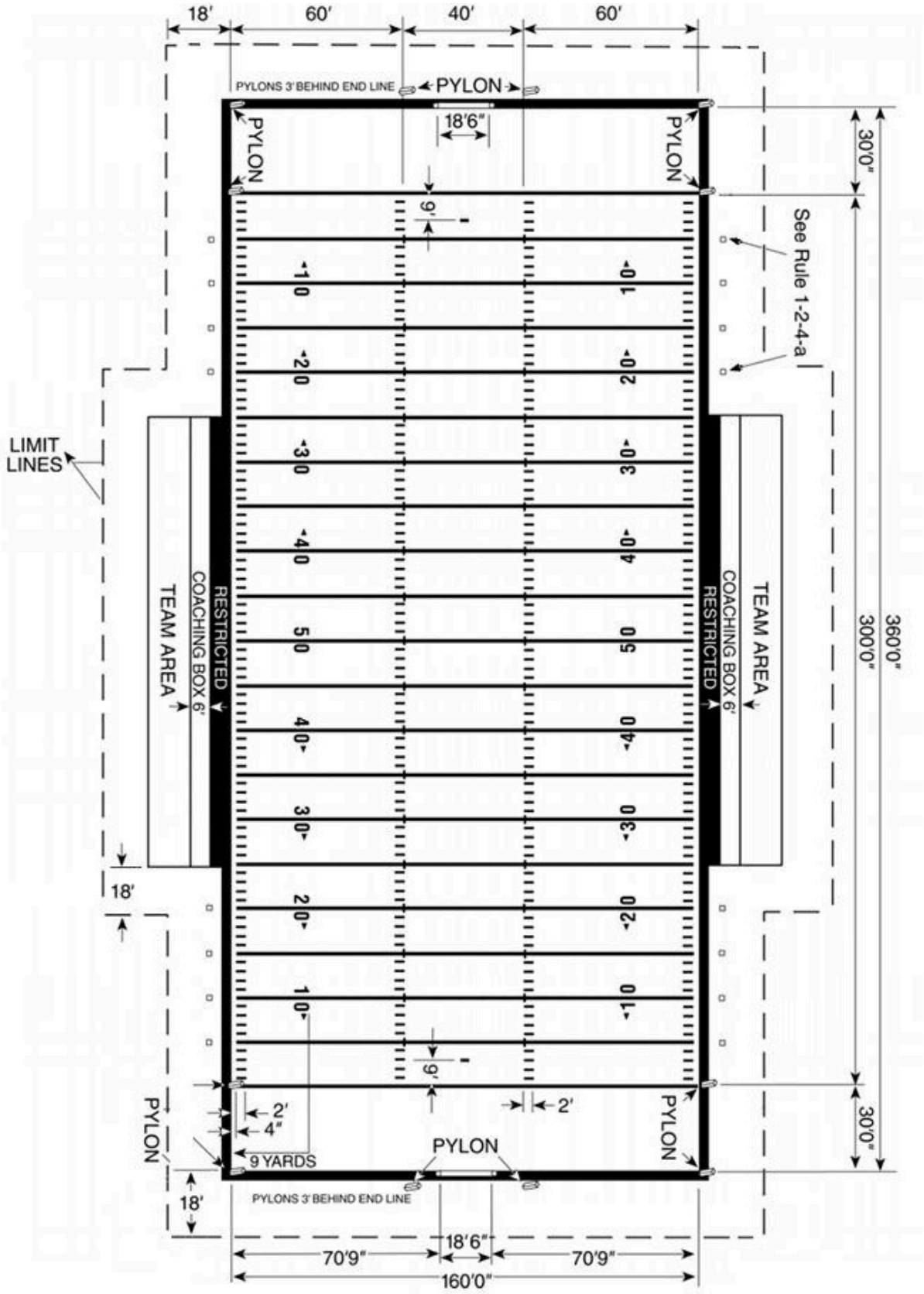


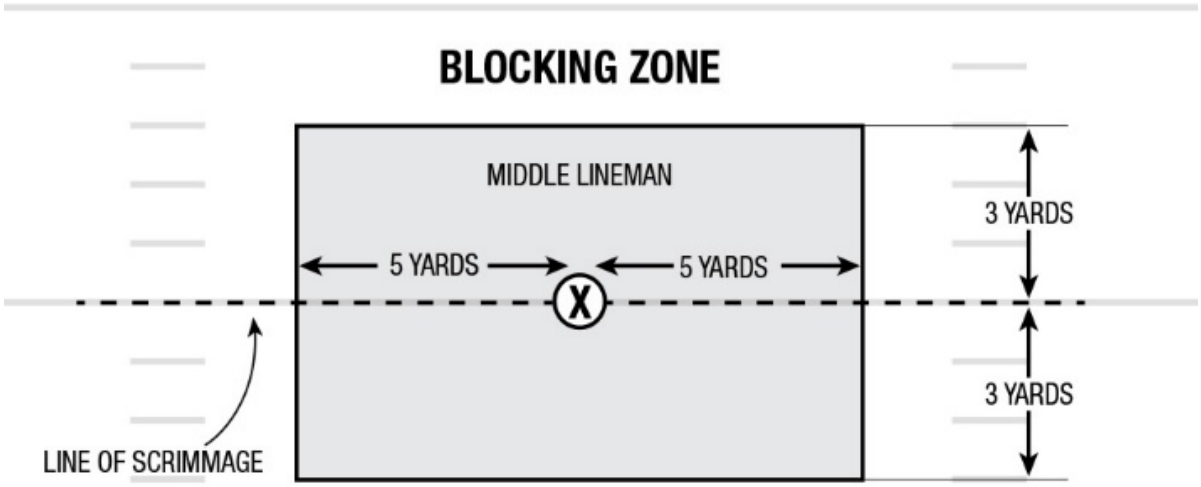
RECOMMENDED YARD-LINE NUMBERING

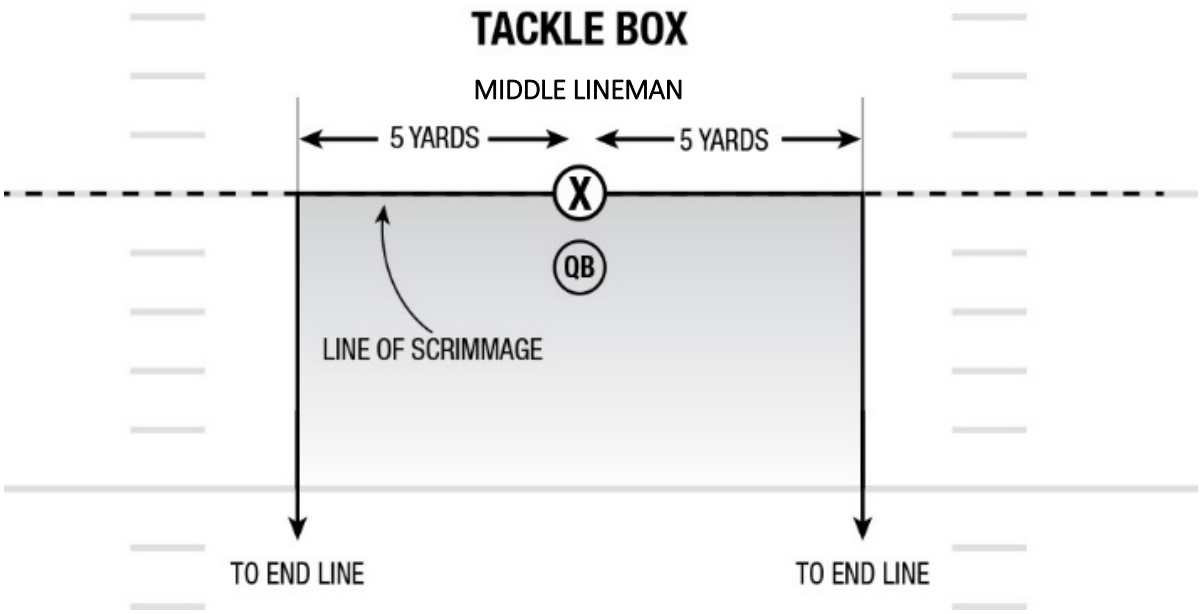


END ZONE DETAIL

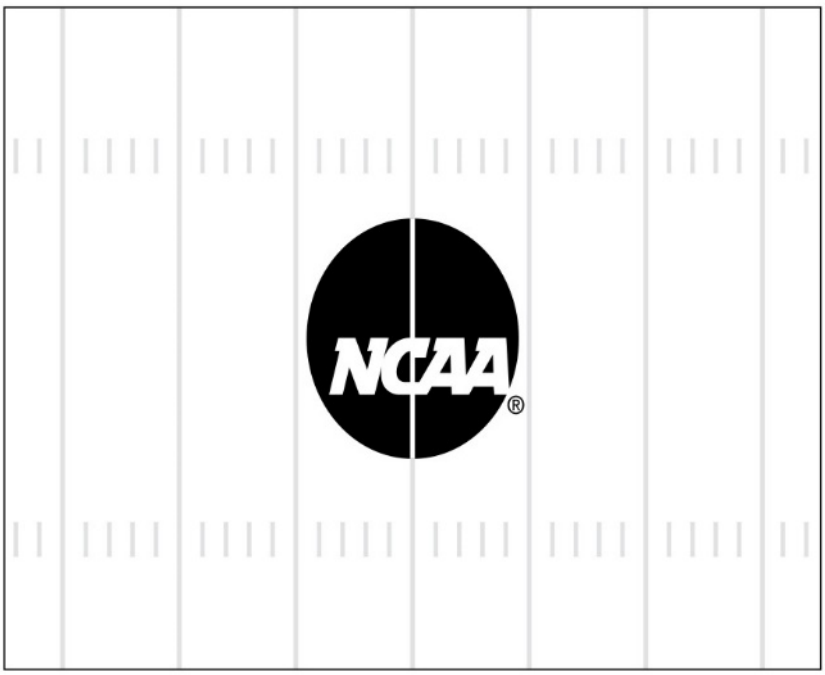
Important note: Although the diagram above shows the limit lines at 12', IFAF limit lines should normally be 18' from the sidelines/end lines (Rule 1-2-3-a).


18′
60′
40′
60′
PYLONS 3′ BEHIND END LINE
PYLON
18′6″
PYLON
PYLON
30′0″
9′
See Rule 1-2-4-a
LIMIT LINES
TEAM AREA
COACHING BOX 6′
RESTRICTED
RESTRICTED
COACHING BOX 6′
TEAM AREA
360′0″
300′0″
18′
PYLON
2′
4″
9 YARDS
9′
2′
PYLON
PYLON
30′0″
PYLONS 3′ BEHIND END LINE
18′
18′6″
70′9″
70′9″
160′0″


BLOCKING ZONE
MIDDLE LINEMAN
5 YARDS
5 YARDS
X
3 YARDS
3 YARDS
LINE OF SCRIMMAGE


TACKLE BOX
MIDDLE LINEMAN
5 YARDS
5 YARDS
X
QB
LINE OF SCRIMMAGE
TO END LINE
TO END LINE

PROPER PLACEMENT OF LOGO



Rule 1-2-1-f: Contrasting decorative markings are permissible within the sidelines and between the goal lines. However, yard lines, goal lines and side lines must not be hidden. The markings also may not touch or enclose the hash marks.

IMPERMISSIBLE PLACEMENT OF LOGO

Notes for groundsmen

These notes accompany the field diagram as a summary of requirements for the marking of the field. For full details, see Rule 1-2.

1. There is no such thing as a metric American football field. All measurements are in yards, feet and inches.

   1 yard = 3 feet = 36 inches = 91.44cm

   1 foot = 12 inches = 30.48cm

   1 inch = 2.54cm

   1 yard = 36 inches (91.44cm), but may be shortened to no less than 34.12 inches (86.67cm) only if necessary to fit a 100-yard field of play plus two 10-yard end zones within the available playing surface. If the length of the field is reduced in this way, all other field dimensions and markings stated in the rules must be reduced commensurately.
2. A full sized field is 360ft long and 160ft wide, consisting of two 10yd end zones and twenty 5yd grid segments. If there is insufficient length, it may be shortened to 330ft by taking two 5yd segments out of the middle (i.e. the 45yd line thus becomes the halfway line). If absolutely necessary, up to a further 18ft may be saved by reducing the size of both end zones to the minimum allowed 7yds. A legal field cannot therefore be marked if there is less than 104yds (312ft) between the goal posts.
3. Note that the width of the field is significantly less than for sports such as soccer, rugby or hockey and that it cannot be varied.
4. Measurements are made from the inside edge of the boundary lines. The entire width of the goal line shall be in the end zone.
5. Yard lines across the field at 5yd intervals between the goal lines (i.e. NOT in the end zones) are essential: they are relied upon for accurate measurement of the distance the ball is advanced.
6. The hash marks lines are 60ft from each sideline. (N.B. Some field diagrams show these to be 53ft 4in or 70ft 9in from the sidelines — those are not correct for British/international games.) Each hash mark should be 2ft long (i.e. from a point 60ft from the sideline to a point 58ft from the sideline) on each side of the field. The hash marks do NOT extend into the end zones.
7. Similar 2ft long lines should be marked starting 4in inside each sideline (between the goal lines). These should line up with the hash marks in the middle of the field to give a series of consistent reference points for aligning the ball.
8. There must be either numbers or marks 27ft from each sideline on every 10yd line (but not the 5yd lines). If numbers then it is the *top* of each number that is 27ft from the sideline. The proper size of the numbers is 6ft x 4ft but they can be smaller if necessary. If not numbers, a 1ft long mark should be made 27ft in from each sideline on each 10yd line.
9. There should be two (adjacent) boxes drawn outside each sideline, stretching from a point 25yds from each goal line. These boxes are shorter if segments are taken out of the middle of the field since the two end points of them are fixed in relation to the goal lines. Stretching from 6ft to 12ft outside the sideline is the *coaching box*. Stretching from 12ft as far as there is room for it is the *team area*. These are the areas in which coaches and substitutes must stay during play.

10. Outside the sidelines and end lines, there should be a set of dashed limit lines drawn, if possible, 18ft away from the field of play. This marks the boundary of the field, and all spectators, photographers, cheerleaders, etc. should be outside it.
11. If spectators are not confined to a particular area (e.g. the stands), then for reasons of safety there should be a rope or something similar that keeps them well behind the limit lines.
12. For safety reasons goal posts may not be inside the field. They must be on the end lines or, failing that, outside them. If the goal posts cannot be moved, the length of the field must be reduced.
13. The top of the crossbar should be 10ft from the ground. The uprights should be 18ft 6in between the insides of the uprights. The uprights should be at least 30ft high. (N.B. A standard rugby goal that has a 3m crossbar and uprights 5.6m apart is acceptable.) The posts must be padded with resilient material from the ground to a height of at least 6ft.
14. Soft flexible four-sided pylons 4in x 4in with an overall height of 18 inches, which may include a 2in space between the bottom of the pylon and the ground, are recommended. They should be red or orange in colour and placed at the inside corners of the eight intersections of the sidelines with the goal lines and end lines. The pylons marking the intersections of the end lines and inbounds lines extended should be placed 3ft outside the end lines.
15. All field dimension lines should be 4in in width with a white non-toxic material (Exception: sidelines and end lines may exceed 4in). If white is unsuitable, choose another contrasting colour.
16. Advertising or decorative markings on the field are permissible. In the end zone, they must not be closer than 4ft to any line unless in a contrasting colour. In the field of play, they must not obliterate any line.

Appendix E

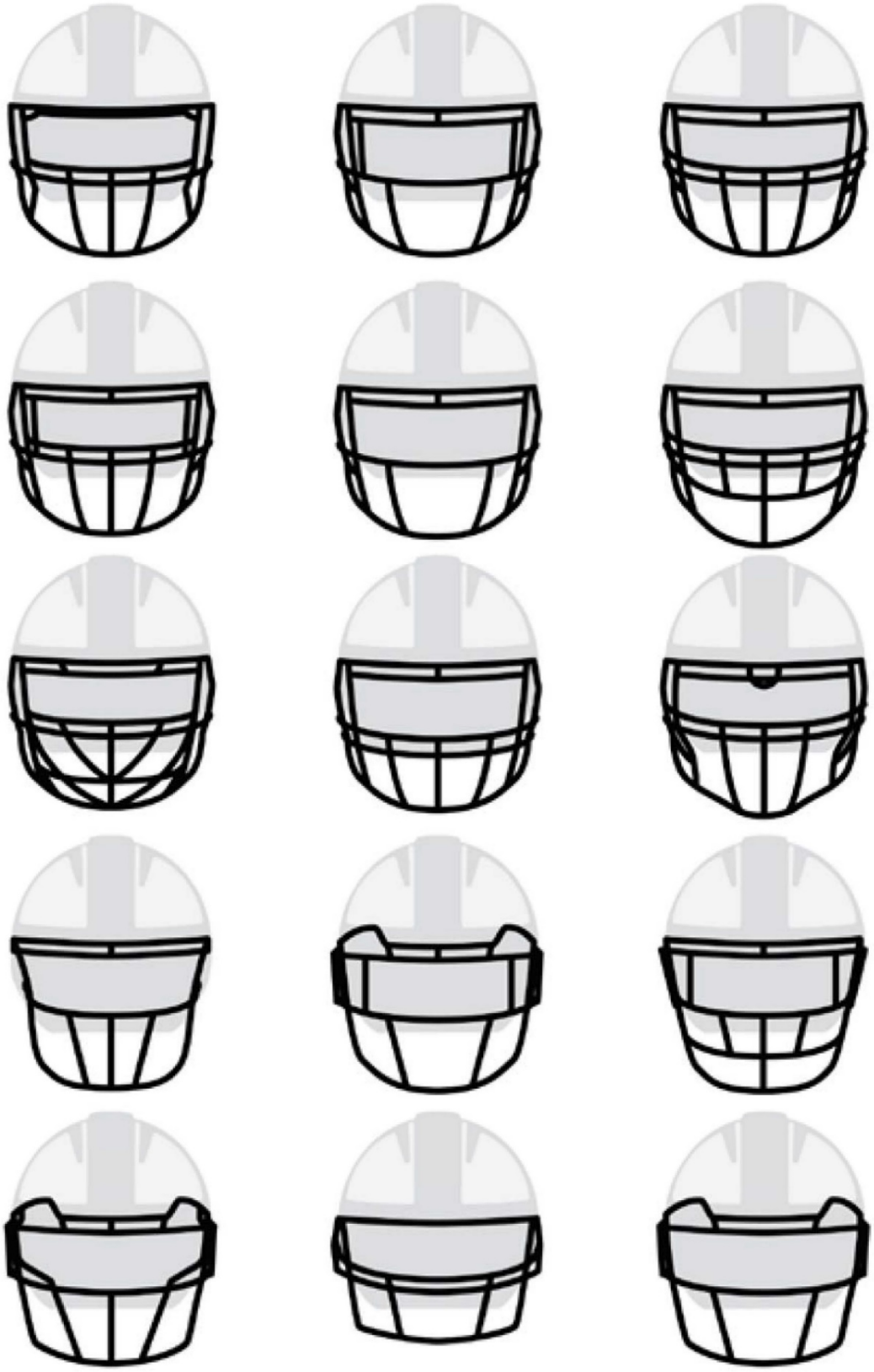
Equipment: Additional Details

1. Hard or unyielding substances are permitted, if covered, only to protect an injury.
2. Hand and arm protectors (covered casts or splints) are permitted only to protect a fracture or dislocation.
3. Thigh guards may not be made of any hard substances, unless all surfaces are covered with material such as closed-cell vinyl foam that is at least 1/4-inch thick on the outside surface and at least 3/8-inch thick on the inside surface and the overlaps of the edges.
4. Shin guards must be covered on both sides and all edges with closed-cell, slow-recovery foam padding at least 1/2-inch thick, or an alternate material of the same minimum thickness having similar physical properties.
5. Therapeutic or preventive knee braces should be worn under the pants and entirely covered from direct external exposure.
6. There may be no projection of metal or other hard substance from a player's person or clothing.
7. Shoe cleats must conform to the following specifications:
   (a) They may not be more than ½-inch in length (measured from tip of cleat to the shoe). (See below for an exception for detachable cleats.)
   (b) They may not be made of any material that burrs, chips or fractures.
   (c) They may not have abrasive surfaces or cutting edges.
   (d) Nondetachable cleats only may not be made of any metallic material.
   (e) Detachable cleats:
      (i) Must have an effective locking device.
      (ii) May not have concave sides.
      (iii) If conical they may not have flat free ends not parallel to their bases or less than 3/8-inch in diameter or rounded free ends having arcs greater than 7/16-inch.
      (iv) If oblong they may not have free ends not parallel with bases or that measure less than 1/4-inch by 3/4-inch.
      (v) If circular or ring shaped they must have rounded edges and a wall at least 3/16-inch thick.
      (vi) If steel-tipped they must contain low carbon steel of 1006 material, case hardened to .005-.008 depth and drawn to Rockwell hardness of approximately C55.

   NOTE: The distance in paragraph (a) for detachable cleats may exceed ½-inch if the cleat is attached to a 5/32-inch or less raised platform wider than the base of the cleat and extended across the width of the shoe to within 1/4-inch or less of the outer edges of the sole. A single toe cleat does not require a raised platform that extends across the width of the sole. The raised platform of the toe cleat is limited to 5/32-inch or less. The 5/32-inch or less is measured from the lowest point of the platform to the sole of the shoe.
8. The facemask must be constructed of nonbreakable material with rounded edges covered with resilient material designed to prevent chipping, burrs or an abrasiveness that would endanger players.

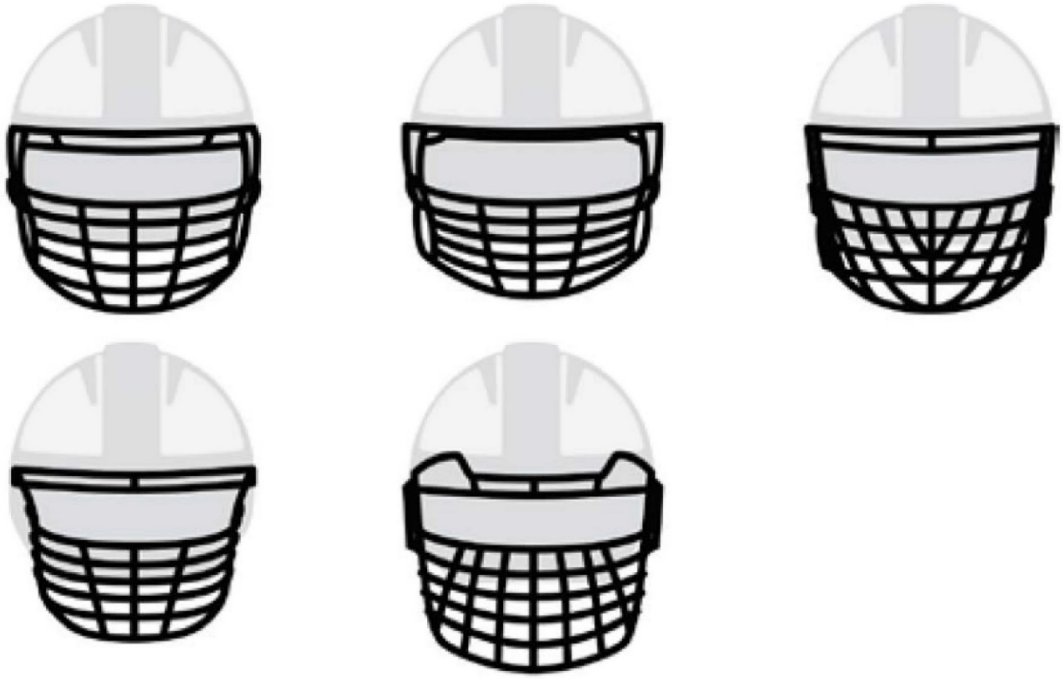
9. Shoulder pads may not have the leading edge of the epaulet rounded with a radius more than one-half the thickness of the material used.
10. No equipment that endangers other players may be worn. Artificial limbs are permitted provided:
    (a) An artificial limb must not give the wearer any advantage in competition.
    (b) If necessary, the artificial limb should be padded to rebound as a natural limb.
11. Insignia, logos, labels:
    (a) Uniforms and all other items of apparel (e.g. warm-ups, socks, headbands, T-shirts, wristbands, visors, hats or gloves) may bear only a single manufacturer's or distributor's normal label or trademark (regardless of the visibility of the label or trademark) not to exceed 2¼ square inches in area (i.e. rectangle, square, parallelogram) including any additional material (e.g. patch) surrounding the normal trademark or logo. See also Rule 1-4-6-d.
    (b) No sizing, garment-care or other non-logo labels shall be on the outside of the uniform.
    (c) Professional league logos are prohibited.

Examples of permissible facemasks

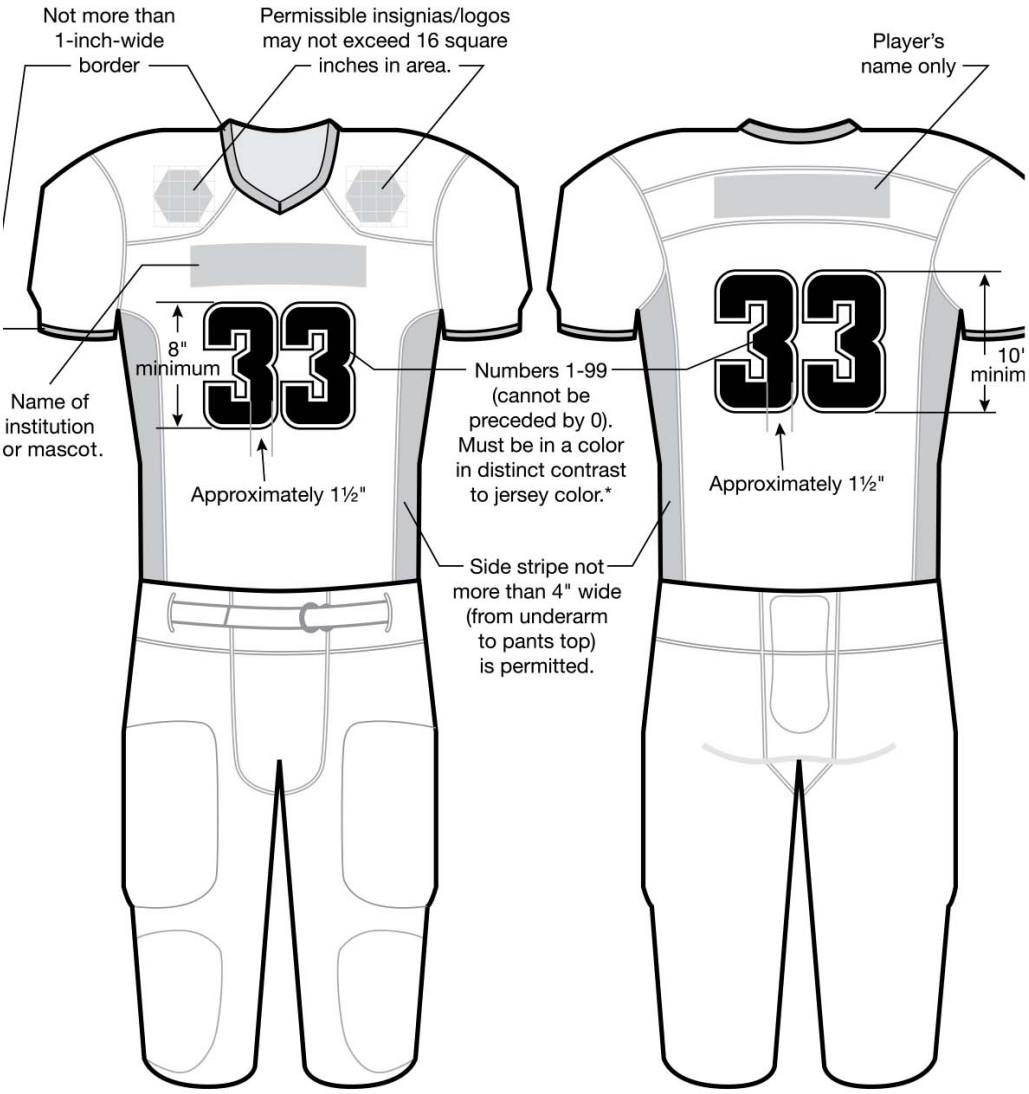


As a general principle, any facemask with four or fewer horizontal bars below the eyes is permissible.

Examples of overbuilt facemasks



As a general principle, any facemask with five or more horizontal bars below the eyes is not permissible. The exception is the facemask below - because of the larger gap between bars 2 and 3 and between 4 and 5, it is permissible.



* Numbering rules are intended to provide a clearly visible number for a variety of groups (e.g., coaches, media, fans, etc.). Therefore, numbers must be designed to be clearly visible from a press box in a variety of weather and lighting conditions.

BAFRA Terms and Conditions

These Terms and Conditions apply to the provision of BAFRA officials for all games and are included here only for the information of all BAFA members.

Definitions

1.1 Game Management – the game management authority (normally an authorised representative of the home team).

1.2 Match Official – an official assigned by BAFRA who officiates a game.

1.3 Referee – the referee or other Match Official responsible for liaison with Game Management.

1.4 Status of game – one of the following:

L	Competition regular season game
P	Competition playoff or bowl game
I	International game (i.e. against any overseas team)
F	Friendly game (i.e. none of the above)

Introduction

2.1 These terms and conditions apply to the assignment of BAFRA members to officiate American football games.

2.2 BAFRA officials are independent contractors and not employees of BAFRA. BAFRA and its agents accept no liability for the actions or inactions of its members other than as set out in these Terms and Conditions.

2.3 BAFRA operates an assigning service for the benefit of its members and teams. Competitions and teams will not seek officials from elsewhere for any game, except with the explicit approval of the BAFRA Directors or where BAFRA informs a team or competition that it cannot cover a game due to shortage of officials.

2.4 All teams and organisations under the auspices of BAFA will be provided with access to these terms and conditions.

Notification of fixtures

3.1 Game Management shall give BAFRA as much notice as possible of fixtures. Normally this shall be 28 days, but all competition regular season fixtures and dates for playoff fixtures must be notified to BAFRA 28 days before the first such fixture (e.g. the last day of February for a competition season starting at the beginning of April).

3.2 Game Management must return a completed Fixture Confirmation Form to BAFRA before they will be assigned any officials for regular season games. This requirement will be waived if the relevant competition provides BAFRA with all fixtures in an agreed and acceptable format.

3.3 Fixtures notified at less than 28 days notice will be accepted at BAFRA's discretion.

3.4 Notification of a fixture shall consist of:

- day, month and date;
- names of the participating teams;
- status of the game;
- venue, including directions where necessary;
- kickoff time
- name, address, email address and telephone number(s) of one or more authorised Game Management contacts.

3.5 Cancellation, or alteration of any of the details of a fixture, must be notified to BAFRA at the earliest opportunity. If

- the date is changed, or
- the venue is moved more than 20 miles, or
- the kickoff time is altered by more than 2 hours, or
- the status is changed, or
- any of the participating teams is changed, or
- BAFRA is notified less than 24 hours before the kickoff time (new or old, whichever is earlier)

then, at BAFRA's discretion, the change will be regarded as a cancellation (see §3.8). *Cancellation due to change of status will only be made if the fixture becomes a friendly and there are other non-friendly games lacking officials.*

3.6 BAFRA reserves the absolute right not to assign officials to fixtures involving any team that:

(i) owes BAFRA or any of its members any officiating fees, expenses or charges and the procedures specified in section 6.1 have been exhausted; *(debts between teams and BAFRA members incurred other than through officiating are specifically excluded from this)*

(ii) has players, coaching staff or other personnel who have assaulted or severely abused officials or who have obviously taken insufficient reasonable steps to prevent assaults or abuse;

(iii) has facilities or game management that are judged to be sub-standard;

(iv) fails when requested to satisfactorily explain the reasons for poor facilities or game management;

(v) fails when requested to provide adequate assurance that problems with facilities or game management will be rectified within a reasonable time;

(vi) is suspended from BAFA or a competition;

(vii) is in breach of these terms and conditions.

The above applies whether the team is at home or away.

If a team lodges an appeal with BAFA, and the BAFA Appeals Officer (or his deputy) informs BAFRA that *de facto* grounds for an appeal exist, then BAFRA will withhold action until the determination of the appeal or the expiration of 28 days from BAFRA's notification to the team, whichever is earlier.

3.7 BAFRA will notify Game Management at least 24 hours before kickoff time if it cannot or will not assign officials to a fixture. It is then Game Management's responsibility to notify all the participating teams. BAFRA will not be liable for any losses due to any party once such notice is given.

If less than 24 hours but more than 16 hours notice is given, BAFRA's liability will be limited to a cancellation fee of £100 (incl VAT).

If less than 16 hours notice is given, BAFRA's liability will be limited to £300 (incl VAT). This limit will also apply if the assigned officials do not attend the game for any reason due to the fault of BAFRA or its members, or if the game cannot start due solely to the presence of insufficient officials (see §4.4).

If BAFRA will not provide officials because the procedure in section 6.1 has been exhausted then BAFRA's liability will be limited to £1 (incl VAT) whatever the notice.

3.8 If BAFRA is notified of the cancellation of a fixture (or alteration of the details of the fixture which BAFRA treats as a cancellation) at less than 24 hours notice (i.e. later than

14:30 on Saturday for a Sunday 14.30 fixture), then Game Management will be held responsible for

- all officials' fees (unless the officials can be reassigned to another game),
- the officials' expenses (if they travel to the game),
- the BAFRA administration fee, and
- a £25 cancellation charge.

However, if game management notifies BAFRA more than 24 hours in advance that a game is "at risk" due to bad weather or unplayable field conditions, we will accept cancellation without charge at any time up to the time when the officials set off to travel to the game. (The Director of Operations will be able to advise game management what time that likely will be when they contact him with the warning. Depending on the location of the game and assigned officials, that may be early or late in the morning of the game.)

BAFRA will hold the appropriate competition responsible for the fees and expenses if these cannot be recovered from the Game Management and it can be shown that the competition knew or should have known of the cancellation or alteration.

3.9 Fixture notifications, alterations and cancellations must be made to the BAFRA Director of Operations or to his authorised representatives (see annex).

3.10 Fixture notifications, alterations and cancellations made by electronic communication (e.g. email or answering machine message) are only regarded as having being notified to BAFRA when an acknowledgement is made that the electronic communication was received. If no acknowledgement is received, it is Game Management's responsibility to contact BAFRA by other means. Changes made at less than 72 hours notice must be notified by telephone to a BAFRA officer.

3.11 BAFRA undertakes to communicate by telephone, email or fax with the nominated Game Management contact (or any one of them where more than one) and by first class post. Changes to the list of contacts must be notified to the BAFRA Director of Operations immediately they occur.

If no nominated Game Management contact can be reached then BAFRA will notify the appropriate competition office who will then be responsible for informing Game Management. BAFRA will accept no responsibility for the competition's failure to inform Game Management.

3.12 Because of hoax calls received in the past, BAFRA reserves the right to ignore notifications, alterations or cancellations not properly made by known representatives of teams. BAFRA will accept notifications, alterations or cancellations made on the behalf of teams by known representatives of competitions.

3.13 Due to a shortage of officials, on any given date there is a maximum number of games for which BAFRA can assign officials.

Where there are more fixtures than available crews, BAFRA (normally in consultation with the competition authority) will decide which games to cover and which not to cover. In determining priority for the assignment of officials, BAFRA may take into account factors such as:

- location of the game with respect to the location of its members
- standard of play and facilities (not necessarily related to the teams' division)
- whether the teams have assisted BAFRA's recruitment activities in the recent past

Assignment of officials

4.1 BAFRA reserves the right to solely determine the officials to be assigned to a game. No team, competition authority or BAFA shall have the right to demand or refuse the assignment of any member of BAFRA to any game.

4.2 All the officials for a game must be assigned by BAFRA. BAFRA officials shall not normally work alongside officials supplied from other sources, but may do so if approved on a game-by-game basis by the Director of Operations or his appointed representatives.

4.3 For each team there will be established the normal number of officials to be assigned to its games (see annex). This number may be different for regular season, playoff and bowl games. Where teams with differing numbers play each other, the higher of the teams' numbers will apply.

If fewer than the normal number are assigned to a game, then Game Management is only required to pay for those that are assigned. If BAFRA provides more than the normal number, then Game Management is only required to pay for the normal number. If a competition authority or team wishes BAFRA to assign more than the normal number of officials to a game, then the additional officials will be provided at the team or competition's expense, if available.

4.4 Under no circumstances may a game begin, nor continue if suspended, if the requirements of Rule 13-5-5 are not met.

Fees and expenses

5.1 The Game Management shall be responsible for the payment of all fees and expenses due to the match officials and to BAFRA.

5.2 Unless Game Management has agreed in advance to pay BAFRA all fees, the Referee will give Game Management an invoice indicating the correct amounts to be paid to each official and to BAFRA. Each Match Official shall be paid individually his match fee and his travelling expenses (unless BAFRA has agreed with Game Management that BAFRA will disburse the travelling expenses out of the administration fee). The invoice will indicate how the fee is to be divided among the Match Officials and/or BAFRA.

5.3 Cheques for match fees and expenses are to be made out to the individual officials. Cheques for the administration fee are to be made payable to ''BAFRA Ltd.''. Clubs who wish to issue only a single cheque must use payment means 5.4 (iii) below and incur the handling charge. A single cheque for all fees, expenses and charges may *not* be made out to an individual official.

5.4 There are four means by which Game Management can pay the Match Officials:

(i) By cash or cheque before the game. This is the preferred means of payment.

(ii) By cash or cheque after the game. The latest time by which all fees and expenses must be paid is 30 minutes after the final whistle. If not all payments have been made by this time, the officials shall leave the ground and Game Management will have to use means (iii) below and incur the handling charge.

(iii) Pre-payment by requesting an invoice from BAFRA finance and payment via BACS with the funds clearing into the BAFRA account prior to the game being held.

(iv) If the officials leave the ground after 30 minutes without being paid, or if Game Management otherwise elects not to pay the officials on the day of the game, a cheque made payable to ''BAFRA'' for the total amount of

fees,
+ expenses,
+ administration fee,
+ a £25 handling charge

must be sent to the BAFRA address on the invoice to arrive at the latest by first post 3 working days after the game (i.e. Wednesday if the game is played Friday, Saturday or Sunday). If the cheque does not arrive by then, BAFRA will regard the team as being in debt and will apply the procedure specified in section §6.1 according to the Game Management's guarantee category.

5.5 BAFRA designates each Game Management authority as being in one of three payment categories: A, B or C. These categories have the following significance relating to payment of officials:

A. Most Game Managements are in Category A and may use any of the means of payment specified in §5.4.

B. Unless paid to BAFRA in advance, Game Managements in Category B must pay match fees and expenses in cash, and must pay the officials by 60 minutes before kickoff time *at the latest*. The BAFRA administration fee may still be paid by cheque. If the officials have not been paid by 60 minutes before kickoff time the match will be declared cancelled but Game Management will still be liable for all fees, expenses and administration charges due.

C. At the discretion of the BAFRA Directors, Game Management in Category B that is again overdue in making or upholding payments to BAFRA or its members will be relegated to Category C. In Category C, Game Management will be subject to the same payment restrictions as Category B, but will in addition be required to deposit £250 with BAFRA in advance of any fixture notification. This deposit will be returned to Game Management after completion of all notified fixtures, including playoff games.

BAFRA will notify a Game Management in writing of any change in its Category. Game Management relegated to Category B or C is unlikely to be restored to a higher category until more than one season's record of proper payments is observed.

Debts to BAFRA or its members are not discharged until the money is cleared into a bank account. Postal orders are acceptable in place of cheques.

5.6 If a Match Official is delayed for whatever reason and is not present for the opening kickoff, he shall be paid half the appropriate game fee plus the entirety of his applicable travelling expenses.

If the Match Official is delayed and not present for the 2nd half kickoff, no game fee or travelling expenses will be paid.

If an assigned official attends a game but does not officiate any part of it, Game Management shall pay him no fee nor expenses.

N.B. The full BAFRA administration fee is always payable.

5.7 Game Management is liable for the officials' fees, expenses and the BAFRA administration fee (plus the £25 handling charge if they are not pre-paid or paid to the officials on the day) if any or all officials attend the notified venue and the fixture is cancelled or abandoned for any reason including but not limited to:

(i) failure to notify BAFRA of cancellation in time;

(ii) failure of a Category B team to pay the officials by 60 minutes before kickoff time;

(iii) unfit field or weather conditions;

(iv) lack of equipment and/or assistants including balls, chain set, ball persons and chain crew;

(v) non-arrival of a team or a team's refusal to play;

(vi) inadequate medical facilities;

(vii) player or crowd behaviour does not permit orderly conduct of the game;

(viii) once the game is started, if the number of officials drops below the minimum number due to illness or injury;

(ix) the Referee abandons the game for any other contingency not covered by the rules.

Game Management is not liable if the fixture cannot start solely because there are insufficient officials (see §4.4).

5.8 It is Game Management's responsibility to find the officials and to make sure they are paid in time. Officials should not have to "go looking" for Game Management.

5.9 Where the provision of overnight accommodation is agreed with a team, Game Management is responsible for paying all reasonable costs of evening meal and bed and breakfast accommodation. Where special transport provision has been made (e.g. sea ferry or airline flight), Game Management is responsible for paying all costs (including, for example, airline flights in lieu of a ferry crossing) in order to return the officials to their place of residence.

Game management debts

6.1 BAFRA designates each Game Management authority as being in one of three guarantee categories: Alpha, Beta or Gamma. Normally all teams in the same competition will be in the same guarantee category but a competition authority may, if it wishes, stipulate that some or all of its teams shall be in a lower category. These categories have the following significance relating to when BAFRA will refuse to cover a team's fixtures if a debt is incurred:

Alpha. If a Game Management authority is in this guarantee category, a 10 day period of grace will be extended. BAFRA will not withdraw its officials from the team during the period of grace. An invoice for the Game Management's debts (including the handling fee) will be sent to the competition authority. If the amount owed is paid to BAFRA within 10 days then BAFRA will regard the debt as cleared. If the amount owed is not paid then the team will not be assigned any officials and all the competition's other teams will become guarantee category Gamma.

Beta. As Category Alpha, except that the competition authority must deposit with BAFRA, in advance, a sum of money to be agreed. The deposit will be returned to the competition authority after completion of all notified fixtures including playoff games if all debts are cleared. The competition authority is still required to pay invoices within 10 days – otherwise the deposit will be retained until all debts are cleared, the team concerned will not be assigned any officials, and all the competition's teams will become category Gamma.

Gamma. No period of grace will be offered. The Game Management will not be assigned any officials until the debt is cleared, though normally BAFRA will cover the associated team's away games. If a Game Management is twice in debt in the same season, normally they will be reclassified as Category B (see §5.5) and required to pay in advance.

Feedback procedures

7.1 Teams that wish to complain about the standard of officiating at a game in which they participated are invited to write to the BAFRA Director of Training, enclosing full details and, preferably, a game video.

7.2 Information about officials provided to BAFRA by competition authorities or teams will be acted upon at BAFRA's discretion.

Match Category Codes

In order to identify its category, each game is allocated a 2-letter game category code. The first letter denotes the level of the game (senior, junior, etc.) and its rules (contact, double-touch, flag, passball, etc.). The second letter denotes the status of the game. The letter codes have the following meanings:

First letter:

S	Adult (senior) contact game
A	Adult flag game
Y	Youth/junior contact game
F	Youth/junior flag game
U	Student (university) game
O	Other game

Second letter:

F	Friendly
L	Competition (regular season game)
I	International
P	Playoff

So for example a senior regular season game would have category SL (S because it's senior, L because it's a league game). A friendly match between two junior flag teams would have category FF. ''International'' matches are all those involving overseas opposition visiting Britain and are categorised as SI, YI, etc. according to level.

Annex

The Annex to the Terms and Conditions lays out the scale of charges for fees and expenses and also shows the normal number of officials assigned for games in each competition. For a copy of the Annex please see the BAFRA website (www.bafra.info).

The names, email addresses and telephone numbers of the current BAFRA Directors and their assistants are also obtainable from the BAFRA website.

Index of Rules and Interpretations

10-second Runoff from Game Clock — Common Procedures (Delays/Clock Tactics) 93
10-second Runoff from Game Clock — Foul (Delays/Clock Tactics) 92
Access to Officials (Miscellaneous) 192
Administration and Enforcement (The Ball) 49
After the Ball is Snapped (Backward Pass and Fumble) 128
Age groups (Status of BAFA games) 195
All Become Eligible (Scrimmage Kicks) 113
Approved Rulings and Official's Signals 58
At Rest (Backward Pass and Fumble) 128
Authority to impose sanctions (Sanctions) 193
BAFA game (Status of BAFA games) 194
Ball Dead in End Zone (Free Kicks) 110
Ball Declared Dead (Ball in Play – Dead Ball) 99
Ball Ready for Play (Ball in Play – Dead Ball) 101
Basic Spot (Spots) 71
Batting a Backward Pass in Flight (Batting and Kicking) 168
Batting a Loose Ball (Batting and Kicking) 167
Batting Ball in Possession (Batting and Kicking) 168
Batting (Fumble, Muff, Batting and Touching the Ball; Blocking a Kick) 63
Behind the Neutral Zone (Scrimmage Kicks) 112
Belongs To (Catch, Recovery, Possession) 60
Below Waist (Blocking) 59
Between Downs (Down, Between Downs and Loss of Down) 61
Beyond the Neutral Zone (Scrimmage Kicks) 112
Blind-side block (Blocking) 59
Blind-side block (Personal Fouls) 158
Blocking a Scrimmage Kick (Fumble, Muff, Batting and Touching the Ball; Blocking a Kick) 64
Blocking Below the Waist (Personal Fouls) 151
Blocking (Blocking) 59
Blocking in the Back (Blocking, Use of Hands or Arms) 167
Block in the Back (Blocking) 59
Boundary Lines (Lines) 64
Catchable Forward Pass (Passes) 68
Catch, Interception, Recovery (Catch, Recovery, Possession) 60
Catch or Recovery by Kicking Team (Scrimmage Kicks) 114
Catch or Recovery by Receiving Team (Scrimmage Kicks) 114
Caught or Recovered (Backward Pass and Fumble) 127
Ceremonies (Miscellaneous) 193
Changing Rooms (Changing Facilities) 185
Charged Team Timeouts (Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock) 87
Chop Block (Blocking) 59
Chop Blocking (Personal Fouls) 154
Clipping 61
Clipping (Personal Fouls) 150
Coaches' Certification (Players and Playing Equipment) 55

Coaches' Phones (Players and Playing Equipment) 57
Competition Notification (Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games) 192
Complete Pass (Forward Pass) 131
Concussion protocol (Medical Provision) 185
Contact Against an Opponent Out of the Play (Personal Fouls) 155
Contact Against the Snapper (Personal Fouls) 156
Contacting an Official (Unsportsmanlike Conduct Fouls) 163
Continued Participation Without Helmet (Personal Fouls) 158
Continuity of Downs Broken (A Series: Started, Broken, Renewed) 104
Controlled scrimmage (Status of BAFA games) 194
Criteria for reversing an on-field ruling (Procedures) 182
Crosses Neutral Zone (Passes) 68
Dead Ball Becomes Alive (Ball in Play – Dead Ball) 97
Dead-Ball Fouls (Penalties Completed) 171
Dead-Ball Spot (Spots) 70
Dead Ball (The Ball: Live, Dead, Loose, Ready For Play) 58
Dead Where Caught (Fair Catch) 119
Defenseless player (Team and Player Designations) 73
Defensive Linemen on Place Kicks (Scrimmage Kicks) 116
Defensive Team Requirements (The Scrimmage) 126
Definition of coach (Team and Player Designations) 74
Delaying the Start of a Half (Delays/Clock Tactics) 90
Determining the Enforcement Spot and the Basic Spot (Enforcement Procedures) 173
Dimensions and Markings (The Field) 42
Disqualified players and coaches (Unsportsmanlike Conduct Fouls) 163
Disqualified Player (Team and Player Designations) 73
Down (Down, Between Downs and Loss of Down) 61
Drop Kick (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 65
During Live Ball (Backward Pass and Fumble) 127
Eligibility Gained or Regained (Forward Pass) 131
Eligibility Lost by Going Out of Bounds (Forward Pass) 131
Eligibility to Block (Free Kicks) 111
Eligibility to Touch Legal Forward Pass (Forward Pass) 130
Encroachment (Encroachment and Offside) 67
End Lines (Lines) 64
End Zones (Field Areas) 75
Enforcement Spots (Enforcement Procedures) 172
Enforcement Spot (Spots) 70
Equipment and personnel (Procedures) 182
Explictly reviewable fouls (Scope of the video judge) 181
Extension of Periods (Playing Time and Intermissions) 81
Extra Periods (Start of Each Period) 77
Fair Catch (Fair Catch) 62
Field Goal Attempt (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 66
Field of Play (Field Areas) 75
Field Surface (The Field) 48
Fighting 169, 75
First and Third Periods (Start of Each Period) 77
Flagrant Personal Foul (Foul and Violation) 63
Flagrant Personal Fouls (Personal Fouls) 148

Forced Touching Disregarded (Free Kicks) 109
Forced Touching Disregarded (Scrimmage Kicks) 113
Forfeited Games (Value of Scores) 139
Forward and Backward Pass (Passes) 67
Forward, Beyond (Forward, Beyond and Forward Progress) 62
Forward Passer (Team and Player Designations) 72
Forward Pass Play (Play Classification) 74
Forward Progress (A Series: Started, Broken, Renewed) 103
Forward Progress (Forward, Beyond and Forward Progress) 62
Foul After Change of Team Possession (Down and Possession After a Penalty) 105
Foul Against Kicker (Free Kicks) 110
Foul Before Change of Team Possession (Down and Possession After a Penalty) 105
Foul Between Downs (Down and Possession After a Penalty) 105
Foul Between Series (Down and Possession After a Penalty) 106
Foul During Free Kick Down (Down and Possession After a Penalty) 105
Foul (Foul and Violation) 63
Foul Not Called (Flagrant Fouls) 169
Fouls After a Try (Try Down) 143
Fouls by Both Teams (Down and Possession After a Penalty) 106
Fouls By Kicking Team (Free Kicks) 110
Fouls By Kicking Team (Scrimmage Kicks) 116
Fouls by Team A During Kicks (Enforcement Procedures) 176
Fouls During a Try After a Change of Team Possession (Try Down) 143
Fouls During a Try Before a Change of Team Possession (Try Down) 142
Fouls During or After a Touchdown, Field Goal or Try (Enforcement Procedures) 176
Frame (of the Body) (Blocking) 59
Free-blocking zone (Blocking) 59
Free Kick at Rest (Free Kicks) 110
Free Kick Caught or Recovered (Free Kicks) 110
Free Kick Formation (Free Kicks) 107
Free Kick (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 66
Free Kick Play (Play Classification) 74
Fumble (Fumble, Muff, Batting and Touching the Ball; Blocking a Kick) 63
Game Administration and Sideline Interference (Unsportsmanlike Conduct Fouls) 163
Game Clock (Timing Devices) 74
Game Management (Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games) 190
Game Officials (General Provisions) 41
Game Supervision (Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games) 191
General Principle (Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games) 190
Goal Lines and Pylons (Lines) 64
Goal Lines (General Provisions) 41
Goals (The Field) 45
Half-Distance Enforcement Procedures (Enforcement Procedures) 178
Handing the Ball 65
Handing the Ball Forward (The Scrimmage) 127
Hash Marks (Lines) 64
Held Ball Out of Bounds (Out of Bounds) 101
Helmet and Face Mask Fouls (Personal Fouls) 153
Helmet Comes Off — Timeout (Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock) 89
Holding and Use of Hands or Arms: Defense (Blocking, Use of Hands or Arms) 166

Holding and Use of Hands or Arms: Offense (Blocking, Use of Hands or Arms) 165
Horse Collar Tackle (Personal Fouls) 156
How and When Completed (Penalties Completed) 170
How Scored (Field Goal) 144
How Scored (Safety) 145
How Scored (Touchdown) 139
How Scored (Try Down) 140
Huddle 65
Hurdling 65
Hurdling (Personal Fouls) 156
Illegal Block or Contact (Fair Catch) 121
Illegal Contact and Pass Interference (Forward Pass) 133
Illegal Delay of the Game (Delays/Clock Tactics) 91
Illegal equipment (Players and Playing Equipment) 54
Illegal Forward Pass (Forward Pass) 129
Illegally Kicking a Ball (Batting and Kicking) 168
Illegal Touching (Forward Pass) 137
Illegal Wedge Formation (Free Kicks) 110
Inbounds Spot (Spots) 70
Incomplete Pass (Forward Pass) 133
Ineligible Receiver Downfield (Forward Pass) 137
Information provision (Procedures) 183
Initial Impetus (Responsibility and Impetus) 147
Initiating review (Procedures) 182
Injured players (Scope of the video judge) 182
Injury Timeout (Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock) 87
Instructions to Stadium Game Clock Operators (Stadium Clocks) 187
Instructions to Stadium Play Clock Operators (Stadium Clocks) 187
Interference with Opportunity (Opportunity to Catch a Kick) 117
Interfering for or Helping the Ball Carrier or Passer (Blocking, Use of Hands or Arms) 164
Interval Fouls (Penalties Completed) 172
Invalid Signal (Fair Catch) 62
Invalid Signals: Catch or Recovery (Fair Catch) 120
Jersey Design, Colour and Numerals (Players and Playing Equipment) 52
Jurisdiction 179
Kick After Safety (Safety) 146
Kicker and Holder (Team and Player Designations) 71
Kicking Team (Free Kick Out of Bounds) 111
Kicking the Ball; Legal and Illegal Kicks (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 65
Kickoff (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 66
Late Hit, Action Out of Bounds (Personal Fouls) 153
Legal and Illegal Kicks (Scrimmage Kicks) 115
Legal Forward Pass (Forward Pass) 129
Legal Substitutions (Substitutions) 94
Length of Periods and Intermissions (Playing Time and Intermissions) 79
Length of Timeouts (Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock) 89
Leverage and Leaping (Personal Fouls) 155
Liaison with Game Personnel (Game Personnel) 189
Licensed coach (Status of BAFA games) 195
Licensed official (Status of BAFA games) 195

Limit Lines (The Field) 44
Lineman and Back (Team and Player Designations) 71
Line-to-Gain and Down Indicators (The Field) 47
Line to Gain (A Series: Started, Broken, Renewed) 103
Live Ball Becomes Dead (Ball in Play – Dead Ball) 97
Live-Ball – Dead-Ball Fouls (Penalties Completed) 171
Live-Ball Fouls by the Same Team (Penalties Completed) 170
Live Ball (The Ball: Live, Dead, Loose, Ready For Play) 58
Loose Ball Out of Bounds (Out of Bounds) 102
Loose Ball (The Ball: Live, Dead, Loose, Ready For Play) 58
Loose Behind the Goal Line (Scrimmage Kicks) 115
Loss of down (Down, Between Downs and Loss of Down) 62
Mandatory and Illegal Equipment Enforcement (Players and Playing Equipment) 55
Mandatory equipment (Players and Playing Equipment) 51
Markers or Obstructions (The Field) 47
Marking Balls (The Ball) 50
Marking Boundary Areas (The Field) 44
Medical Requirement Administration (Medical Provision) 185
Minimum Medical Requirements (Medical Provision) 184
Minimum Standards for Game Clocks (Stadium Clocks) 186
Minimum Standards for Play Clocks (Stadium Clocks) 186
More than eleven players on the field (Substitutions) 95
Muff (Fumble, Muff, Batting and Touching the Ball; Blocking a Kick) 63
Next Play (Field Goal) 144
Next Play (Try Down) 143
Nine-Yard Marks (Lines) 65
No Advance (Fair Catch) 119
No Tackling (Fair Catch) 121
Offensive and Defensive Teams (Team and Player Designations) 71
Offensive Team Requirements — At the Snap (The Scrimmage) 124
Offensive Team Requirements — Prior to the Snap (The Scrimmage) 123
Officials' Assistants (Game Personnel) 188
Offsetting Fouls (Penalties Completed) 170
Offside on a free kick play (Encroachment and Offside) 67
Offside on a scrimmage play (Encroachment and Offside) 67
Opportunity to Score (Try Down) 141
Optional equipment (Players and Playing Equipment) 53
Out of Bounds at Forward Point (Out of Bounds) 102
Out of Bounds (Backward Pass and Fumble) 128
Out of Bounds Behind Goal Line (Scrimmage Kicks) 114
Out of Bounds Between Goal Lines or at Rest Inbounds (Scrimmage Kicks) 114
Out of Bounds Player (Scrimmage Kicks) 116
Out-of-Bounds Spot (Spots) 70
Passing (Passes) 67
Pass Interference: Summary (Forward Pass) 136
Penalty Declined (Down and Possession After a Penalty) 105
Penalty Resulting in New Series (Down and Possession After a Penalty) 105
Period between games: officials (Status of BAFA games) 196
Period between games: teams (Status of BAFA games) 195
Personal Foul (Foul and Violation) 63

Persons Subject to the Rules (General Provisions) 41
Philosophy (Philosophy and rationale) 180
Place Kick (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 65
Planned Loose Ball (The Scrimmage) 127
Play-Clock Count (Ball in Play – Dead Ball) 101
Play Clock (Timing Devices) 74
Player Ejection (Flagrant Fouls) 169
Player not on roster (Roster form breaches) 194
Player Out of Bounds and In Bounds (Team and Player Designations) 73
Player Out of Bounds (Free Kicks) 111
Player Out of Bounds (Out of Bounds) 101
Players' Numbering (Players and Playing Equipment) 51
Player (Team and Player Designations) 72
Player Vacancy (Team and Player Designations) 73
Playing Enclosure (Field Areas) 75
Playing games (Status of BAFA games) 195
Playing Surface (Field Areas) 75
Possession (Catch, Recovery, Possession) 60
Possession Series (Series and Possession Series) 69
Possible sanctions (Sanctions) 193
Postscrimmage Kick Enforcement (Enforcement Procedures) 175
Postscrimmage Kick Spot (Spots) 71
Previous Spot (Spots) 70
Procedure for Delaying the Start of a Game (Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games) 191
Procedure for Suspending the Game (Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games) 192
Procedures for Operating Game Clocks (Stadium Clocks) 186
Procedures for Operating Play Clocks (Stadium Clocks) 187
Prohibited Field Equipment (Players and Playing Equipment) 56
Prohibited Signal Devices (Players and Playing Equipment) 56
Public Address Announcers (Miscellaneous) 193
Punt (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 65
Pylons (The Field) 46
Rationale (Philosophy and rationale) 180
Receiving Team (Free Kick Out of Bounds) 111
Recommended Numbering (Players and Playing Equipment) 50
Referee microphone (Players and Playing Equipment) 57
Referee's Notification (Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock) 89
Removing persons from the playing enclosure (Unsportsmanlike Conduct Fouls) 164
Replaced Player (Team and Player Designations) 73
Requesting a review (Scope of the video judge) 180
Responsibilities 179
Responsibility (Responsibility and Impetus) 147
Restraining Lines (Free Kicks) 107
Restraining Lines (Lines) 64
Result of the Play (Play Classification) 75
Return Kick (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 66
Reviewable plays (Scope of the video judge) 181
Roughing or Running into Kicker or Holder (Personal Fouls) 156

Roughing the Passer (Personal Fouls) 153
Rules Decisions Final (Down and Possession After a Penalty) 106
Runner and Ball Carrier (Team and Player Designations) 72
Running Play and Run (Play Classification) 74
Scoring Plays (Value of Scores) 139
Scrimmage Down (Scrimmage) 68
Scrimmage Kick Formation (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 66
Scrimmage Kick (Kicks; Kicking the Ball) 66
Scrimmage Kick Play (Play Classification) 74
Scrimmage Line (Scrimmage) 68
Second and Fourth Periods (Start of Each Period) 77
Security and Access (Changing Facilities) 185
Series (Series and Possession Series) 69
Shift 69
Shift and False Start (The Scrimmage) 122
Sidelines (Lines) 64
Side Zone (Field Areas) 75
Simultaneous Catch or Recovery (Catch, Recovery, Possession) 61
Simultaneous with Snap (Penalties Completed) 170
Snap After a Touchback (Touchback) 147
Snapper (Team and Player Designations) 72
Snapping the Ball 69
Special Enforcement of Post-Possession Fouls (Enforcement Procedures) 178
Specifications: Mandatory Equipment (Players and Playing Equipment) 51
Specifications (The Ball) 48
Spot of the Foul (Spots) 70
Spot Where Kick Ends (Spots) 70
Spot Where Run Ends (Spots) 70
Squad Member (Team and Player Designations) 73
Starting and Stopping the Clock (Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock) 83
Starting with a Snap (The Scrimmage) 122
Stewards (Game Personnel) 189
Striking Fouls and Tripping (Personal Fouls) 148
Substitute (Team and Player Designations) 72
Substitution Procedures (Substitutions) 94
Succeeding Spot (Spots) 70
Suspending the game (Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock) 86
Tackle Box 76
Targeting 76
Targeting and Making Forcible Contact to Head or Neck Area of a Defenseless Player (Personal Fouls) 149
Targeting and Making Forcible Contact With the Crown of the Helmet (Personal Fouls) 149
Team Area and Coaching Box (The Field) 44
Team Arrival (Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games) 190
Team B personal foul during legal forward pass play (Forward Pass) 137
Team Captains (General Provisions) 41
Teams A and B (Team and Player Designations) 71
Teams Subject to the Rules (General Provisions) 42
Terms and Conditions 227
The Field (Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games) 190

The Field (Field Areas) 75
The Game (General Provisions) 41
The Neutral Zone 67
Timeout (Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock) 83
Timing Adjustments (Playing Time and Intermissions) 80
Timing Devices (Playing Time and Intermissions) 81
Touching and Recovery of a Free Kick; Illegal Touching (Free Kicks) 109
Touching (Fumble, Muff, Batting and Touching the Ball; Blocking a Kick) 63
Touching Ground On or Behind Goal Line (Scrimmage Kicks) 114
Unfair Acts (Unsportsmanlike Conduct Fouls) 162
Unfair Clock Tactics (Delays/Clock Tactics) 91
Unfair Tactics (Unsportsmanlike Conduct Fouls) 161
Unsportsmanlike Acts (Unsportsmanlike Conduct Fouls) 158
Use of Hands or Arms by Defense: Passing Downs (Blocking, Use of Hands or Arms) 166
Valid Signal (Fair Catch) 62
Violation (Foul and Violation) 63
Violation Timeouts (Timeouts: Starting and Stopping the Clock) 88
Water Carriers (Game Personnel) 189
Weather (Cancellation, Suspension and Abandonment of Games) 191
When Ball is Ready for Play (The Ball: Live, Dead, Loose, Ready For Play) 58
When Declared (Touchback) 146
When to Award Series (A Series: Started, Broken, Renewed) 103
Who May Block (Blocking, Use of Hands or Arms) 164
Winning Team and Final Score (General Provisions) 41
Yard Lines (Lines) 64